

AMERICA'S COUNTERATTACK FORCE

**III CORPS TACSOP JUNE 2002
PHANTOM FURY FH REG 525-30**

HOW III CORPS FIGHTS

Corrected Copy
Military Operations
Phantom Fury
III Corps and Fort Hood Mobilization
Tactical Standing Operating Procedure (TACSOP)

History. This supersedes III Corps and Fort Hood Regulation 525-30 dated 1 June 2001. This is the only volume to Fort Hood Regulation 525-30. This corrected copy incorporates change 1 and corrects the signature block for the Chief of Staff and corrects the publication number in the History element.

Summary. This regulation prescribes policy, assigns responsibility, and standardizes recurring operational routines for the conduct of sustained tactical operations by organic and supporting organizational elements throughout III Corps.

Applicability. This regulation applies to units and activities assigned, attached, or conducting training or residing on Fort Hood as tenants.

Supplementation. Supplementation of this regulation is prohibited except upon approval of the III Corps and Fort Hood ACofS, G3.

Changes. Changes to this regulation are not official unless authenticated by the Directorate of Information Management (DOIM).

Suggested Improvements. The proponent of this regulation is the ACofS, G3. Send comments and suggested improvements to the Commander, III Corps and Fort Hood, ATTN: AFZF-GT-PO, Fort Hood, Texas 76544-5000.

For the commander:

STEPHEN M. SPEAKES
BG, USA
Chief of Staff

Official:



JOSEPH J. FRAZIER
LTC, SC
DOIM

DISTRIBUTION:
IAW FH FORM 1853; S



III CORPS TACTICAL SOP

TABLE OF CONTENTS



- **PART A – “HOW III CORPS FIGHTS”**
 - A.1 AMERICA’S COUNTEROFFENSIVE FORCE (p. 7)
 - A.2 FULL SPECTRUM OPERATIONS (p. 12)
- **PART B – BATTLE COMMAND**
 - B.1 PRINCIPLES OF BATTLE COMMAND (p. 17)
 - B.2 COMMAND POST FUNCTIONS / RESPONSIBILITIES / OPERATIONS (p. 22)
 - B.2.1 COMMAND GROUP
 - B.2.2 TAC CP
 - B.2.3 MAIN CP
 - B.2.4 REAR CP
 - B.2.5 ASSAULT CP
 - B.2.6 FORWARD CP
 - B.2.7 SANCTUARY CP
 - B.3 TAC COMMAND POST (p. 31)
 - B.3.1 FUNCTIONS
 - B.3.2 ORGANIZATION
 - B.3.3 OPERATIONS
 - B.3.4 BATTLEFIELD FUNCTIONAL AREA OPERATIONS
 - B.4 MAIN COMMAND POST (p. 48)
 - B.4.1 FUNCTIONS
 - B.4.2 ORGANIZATION
 - B.4.3 OPERATIONS
 - B.4.4 BATTLEFIELD FUNCTIONAL AREA OPERATIONS
 - B.5 REAR COMMAND POST (p. 70)
 - B.5.1 FUNCTIONS
 - B.5.2 ORGANIZATION
 - B.5.3 OPERATIONS
 - B.5.4 BATTLEFIELD FUNCTIONAL AREA OPERATIONS
 - B.6 ASSAULT COMMAND POST (p. 118)
 - B.7 FORWARD COMMAND POST (p. 119)
 - B.8 SANCTUARY CP (p. 120)
 - B.9 PLANS AND ORDERS (p. 121)
 - B.9.1 ORDERS
 - B.9.2 FRAGOs
 - B.9.3 STANDARD GRAPHICS
 - B.9.4 PRODUCTION AND DISSEMINATION OF PLANS AND ORDERS
 - B.9.5 CONPLAN DEVELOPMENT
 - B.10 COMMAND AND CONTROL (“HOW THE CORPS EXECUTES C2”) (p. 134)
 - B.10.1 HOW THE CORPS COMMUNICATES
 - B.10.2 SUCCESSION OF COMMAND



III CORPS TACTICAL SOP

TABLE OF CONTENTS



- PART C – BATTLEFIELD FUNCTIONAL AREA OPERATIONS
 - C.1 INTELLIGENCE / SURVEILLANCE / RECONNAISSANCE (p. 142)
 - C.2 MANEUVER (p. 180)
 - C.2.1 TACTICAL MOVEMENT (p. 182)
 - C.2.2 OPERATIONS (p. 189)
 - » C.2.2.1 COMMAND POST DISPLACEMENT
 - » C.2.2.2. III CORPS BATTLE RHYTHM
 - » C.2.2.3 BATTLE UPDATE BRIEF
 - » C.2.2.4 III CORPS REPORTS / INFORMATION REQUIRMENTS
 - » C.2.2.5 TACTICAL OPERATION REHEARSALS
 - » C.2.2.6 LIAISON OFFICER/NCO RESPONSIBILITIES
 - » C.2.2.7 CG's SITUATION UPDATE TO HIGHER HQ
 - C.3 FIRE SUPPORT (p. 244)
 - C.3.0.1 TAC FSE (p. 247)
 - » C.3.0.1.1 ORGANIZATION
 - » C.3.0.1.2 FUNCTIONS
 - » C.3.0.1.3 OPERATIONS
 - » C.3.0.1.4 ADP
 - C.3.0.2 MAIN FSE (p. 252)
 - » C.3.0.2.1 ORGANIZATION
 - » C.3.0.2.2 FUNCTIONS
 - » C.3.0.2.3 OPERATIONS
 - » C.3.0.2.4 ADP
 - C.3.0.3 FSE PLANNER (p. 256)
 - C.3.0.4 ASSAULT CP (p. 258)
 - C.3.0.5 REAR FSE (p. 259)
 - » C.3.0.5.1 ORGANIZATION
 - » C.3.0.5.2 FUNCTIONS
 - » C.3.0.5.3 OPERATIONS
 - » C.3.0.5.4 ADP
 - C.3.0.6 BATTLE DRILLS (p. 263)
 - » C.3.0.6.1 CLEARANCE OF FIRES
 - » C.3.0.6.2 FSCM AND TARGET MANAGEMENT
 - » C.3.0.6.3 KILLBOX MANAGEMENT
 - » C.3.0.6.4 ATACMS MISSIONS
 - » C.3.0.6.5 TIME SENSITIVE SURFACE TARGETS (TSST)
 - C.3.0.7 REFERENCES (p. 270)
 - » C.3.0.7.1 III CORPS FSE TACSOP TABLE OF CONTENTS
 - » C.3.0.7.2 CFC PUBLICATIONS LISTING
 - C.3.1 SHAPING OPERATIONS (p. 272)
 - C.3.2 AIR SUPPORT (p. 294)
 - C.3.3 ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (p. 309)



III CORPS TACTICAL SOP

TABLE OF CONTENTS



- **PART C – BATTLEFIELD FUNCTIONAL AREA OPERATIONS (Continued)**
 - C.4 AIR DEFENSE (p. 321)
 - C.4.1 UNIT AIR AND MISSILE DEFENSE (AMD) CHECKLIST
 - C.4.2 CORPS AIR DEFENSE OFFICER RESPONSIBILITIES
 - C.4.3 AIR DEFENSE ELEMENT (ADE) RESPONSIBILITIES
 - C.4.4 AMD OPERATIONS
 - C.5 MOBILITY, COUNTER-MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY (p. 329)
 - C.5.1 HOW ENGINEERS FIGHT
 - » C.5.1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES
 - » C.5.1.2 RECONNAISSANCE & INTELLIGENCE
 - » C.5.1.3 RIVER CROSSING OPERATIONS
 - » C.5.1.4 OBSTACLE AND DENIAL OPERATIONS
 - » C.5.1.5 MAPPING, CHARTING, AND GEODESY PROCEDURES
 - » C.5.1.6 FACILITIES / ENVIRONMENTAL OPERATIONS
 - C.5.2 – BATTLE COMMAND
 - » C.5.2.1 COMMAND POST FUNCTIONS / RESPONSIBILITIES / OPERATIONS
 - » C.5.2.2 COMMAND AND CONTROL (HOW ENGINEERS EXECUTE C2)
 - C.6 SERVICE AND SUPPORT (p. 347)
- **PART D – ENABLING OPERATIONS**
 - D.1 NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE (p. 393)
 - D.2 MILITARY POLICE (p. 410)
 - D.3 INFORMATION OPERATIONS (p. 426)
 - D.4 CIVIL MILITARY OPERATIONS (p. 432)
 - D.5 PUBLIC AFFAIRS (p. 441)
 - D.6 SPECIAL OPERATIONS (p. 444)
 - D.7 ROE (p. 447)
- **PART E – REPORTS**



III CORPS TACTICAL SOP



Supporting Documents

- **III CORPS TACTICAL COMMAND POST (TAC CP) STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURE (SOP) MARCH 2002**
- **III CORPS MAIN COMMAND POST (MCP) STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURE (SOP) TBP 2002**
- **III CORPS REAR COMMAND POST (RCP) STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURE (SOP) TBP 2002**
- **III CORPS TACTICAL MOVEMENT STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURE (SOP) JUNE 2002 [FM 525-30-1](#)**



G3 PLANS

A.1

AMERICA'S COUNTEROFFENSIVE FORCE



Traditional Roles of Corps

FM 100-15, Corps Operations



“Today’s corps is the central point on the battlefield where the Commander synchronizes combat power to achieve tactical and operational advantage over the enemy.”

COMMAND & CONTROL RELATIONSHIPS

Normally part of a larger force

UNIFIED COMMAND CINC

Can be a JTF/ARFOR HQ

JOINT TASK FORCE

Can be an ARFOR/JFLCC HQ

XXX
ARFOR/JFLCC

CRITICAL CORPUS ROLES

- PLANNING AND CONDUCTING OPERATIONS WITH OTHER ELEMENTS OF THE **JOINT FORCE** TO ACHIEVE CAMPAIGN OBJECTIVES
- INTEGRATING **CS AND CSS** UNITS FROM OTHER SERVICES
- COLLECTING **INTELLIGENCE**, ANTICIPATING ENEMY ACTIVITIES/INTENTIONS, AND PLANNING FUTURE ACTIONS
- PLANNING AND CONDUCTING SIMULTANEOUS **OPERATIONS IN DEPTH**
- NOMINATING TARGETS FOR NUCLEAR WEAPONS EMPLOYMENT IN SUPPORT OF CAMPAIGN OBJECTIVES
- PLANNING AND CONDUCTING EFFECTIVE **DECEPTION OPERATIONS** ACCORDING TO HIGHER HQ DECEPTION PLAN FM

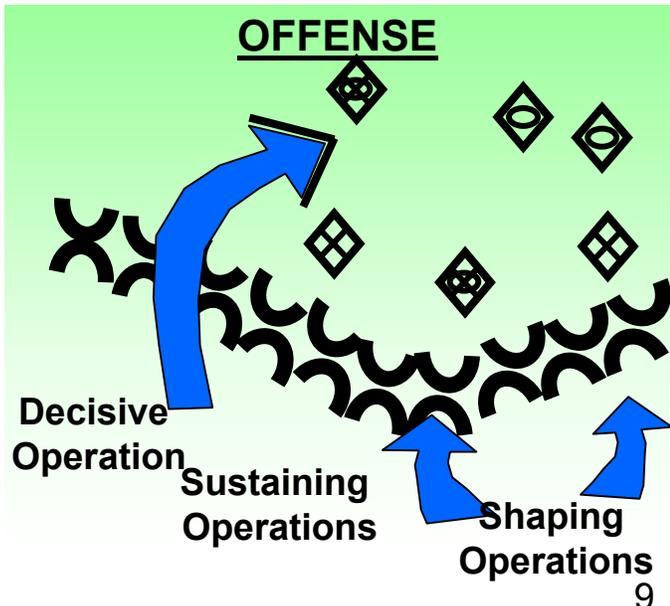
100-15 (OCT 96)

COLD WAR

- ✓ Decisive Operations
Optimized for Defense
- ✓ Doctrine: Deep / Close / Rear
- ✓ WARSAW Pact Focused
- ✓ Forward Deployed / CONUS Reinforcement
- ✓ Capabilities Centered Around the Big 5:
 - Abrams
 - Bradley
 - MLRS
 - Apache
 - Blackhawk

CURRENT

- ✓ Decisive Operations Optimized for Offense
- ✓ Doctrine: Decisive / Shaping / Sustaining
- ✓ MTW Adaptable to SSC / SASO
- ✓ Decisive CONUS Based / Contingency Containment FWD Deployed
- ✓ Capabilities Centered on Recapitalization of the Big 5 and Modernized Systems:
 - M1A2SEP / M2A3BFV
 - Crusader
 - Longbow / Comanche
 - Wolverine / Grizzly
 - C4ISR / Digitization

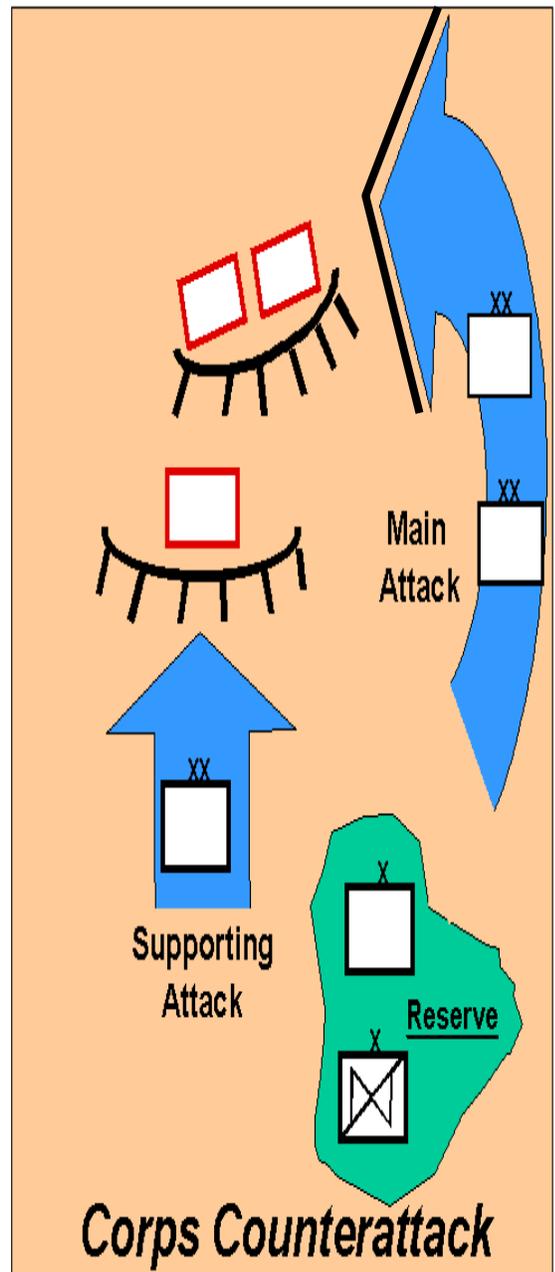


DECISIVE OPERATIONS conclusively determine the outcome of major operations, battles, and engagements

FM 3-0, *Operations*

OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS seize, retain and exploit the initiative to defeat the enemy ***DECISIVELY.***

- ✓ Combined Mass Effects to Seize the Initiative
- ✓ Deny Enemy Freedom of Maneuver
- ✓ Disrupt Source of Strength
- ✓ Creates Conditions for Operational and Tactical Success





CG's Guidance



A corps' primary task is to maneuver divisions to positions of advantage to enable their success in the close fight.

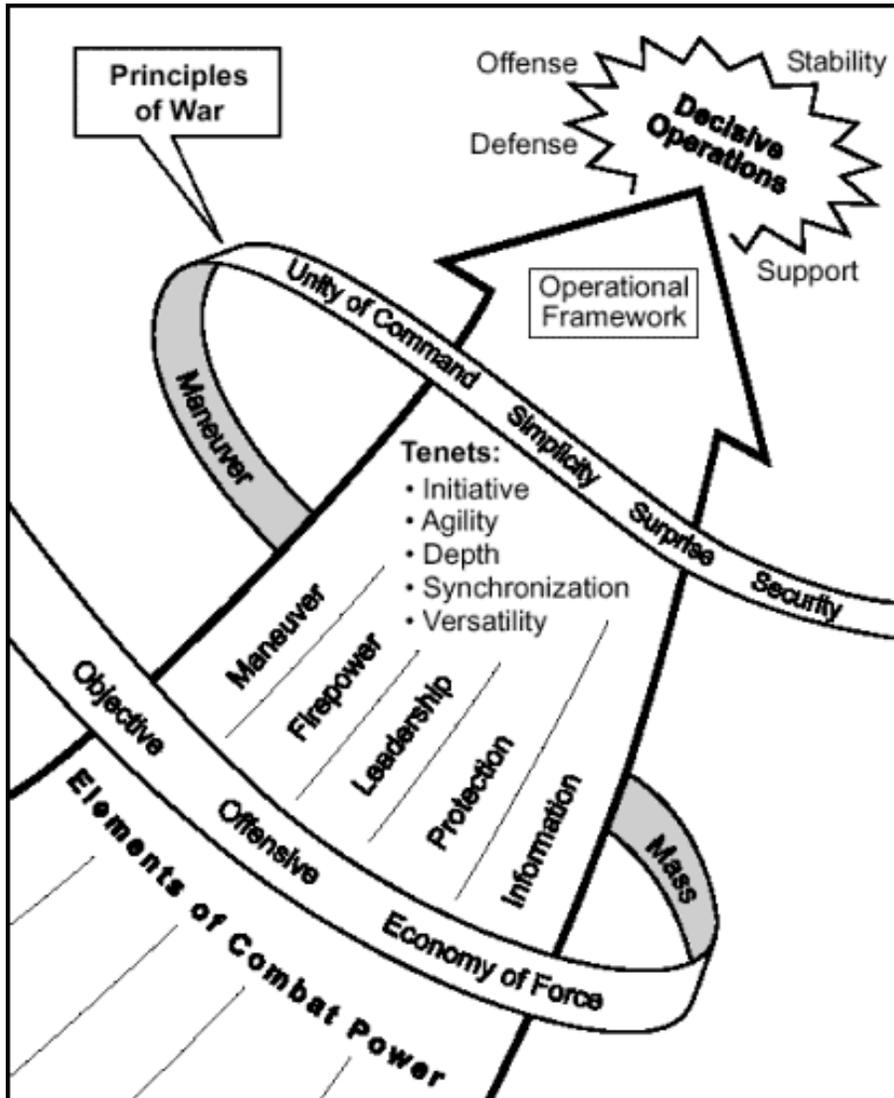


G3 PLANS

A.2

FULL SPECTRUM OPERATIONS

FULL SPECTRUM OPERATIONS



Foundations of full spectrum operations:

- fundamentals
 - ❖ elements of combat power
 - ❖ principles of war
 - ❖ tenets of Army operations
 - ❖ operational framework
- battle command
- conduct



FULL SPECTRUM OPERATIONS



Asymmetry:

- **concerns dissimilarities in organization, equipment, doctrine, capabilities, and values between armed forces**
- **tends to decay over time as adversaries adapt**
- **seeks to avoid enemy strengths and concentrate comparative advantages against relative weaknesses**



FULL SPECTRUM OPERATIONS



Today's Threats

Will attack our weakness:

- ❖ TPFDL Flow
- ❖ APOD/Es & SPOD/Es
- ❖ ISBs
- ❖ Take time away from decision makers

Have Access to:

- ❖ Television
- ❖ Internet
- ❖ Cell Phones
- ❖ Encryption
- ❖ Radio
- ❖ Computer Nets
- ❖ Imagery
- ❖ HUMINT

Asymmetrical:

- ❖ Criminal Families
- ❖ Drug Families
- ❖ Urban-Centric
- ❖ Transnational Crime
- ❖ IO
- ❖ WMD
- ❖ Terrorism
- ❖ PSYOPs

Industrial/Info Age:

- ❖ Conventional
- ❖ Rogue
- ❖ Hybrid

See our Sanctuary as:

Fair Game/
Home & External

Adaptive, Cunning, & Learning Opponents



FULL SPECTRUM OPERATIONS



The Contemporary Operating Environment (COE) is a wider spectrum of operations, with increased unpredictability and a more complex range of operating environments *and adversaries that:*

- are **WATCHING, LEARNING and ADAPTING**
- place force projection operations at risk
- can accept - not losing - as a strategic goal
- are **modernizing** in light of late 20th Century lessons
- will change from conventional operations when threatened and pursue an asymmetric strategy
- can counter with sufficient mass and technology to inflict highly visible and embarrassing losses



G3 TACOPS

B.1

PRINCIPLES OF BATTLE COMMAND



PART B

BATTLE COMMAND

- **PRINCIPLES OF BATTLE COMMAND**
- **COMMAND POST FUNCTIONS / RESPONSIBILITIES / OPERATIONS**
- **PLANS AND ORDERS**
- **COMMAND AND CONTROL**



PRINCIPLES OF BATTLE COMMAND



- Battle command is the exercise of command in operations against a hostile, thinking enemy. It applies the leadership elements of combat power to operations.
- Commanders, assisted by the staff, visualize the operation, describe it in terms of intent and guidance, and direct the actions of subordinates within their intent.
- They directly influence operations by their personal presence supported by their command and control system.

FM 3-0 Operations



PRINCIPLES OF BATTLE COMMAND



Command and Control

- **Once Commander gains Command of all elements of combat power...must have the ability to Command and Control their employment**
- **Commander must exercise Command of the Battle Forward at the Point of Decision**
 - **Share the Risks**
 - **Must be able to visualize the battle**
 - **Communicate**
 - **Pull the trigger**

**Commander Must Have a C2 Platform to
Accomplish This**

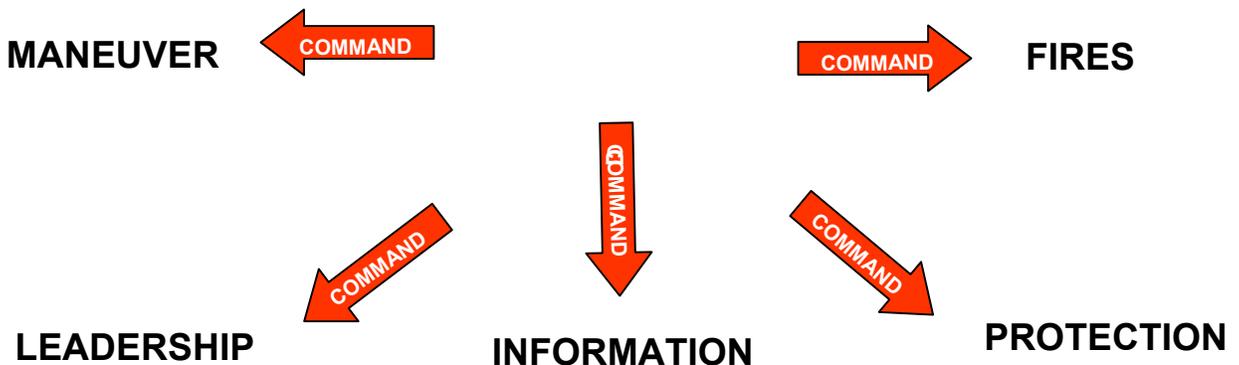


PRINCIPLES OF BATTLE COMMAND



- **Battle Command = Command of Battle**
 - Commander must command both Maneuver and Fires
 - Commander must command all elements of Combat Power
 - Empowers Commander to Synchronize all elements of CBT Power / BOS
 - Empowers Commanders to Mass the Effects of the forces they command!

**Unifying the Effort Across the
Elements of Combat Power**





G3 TACOPS

B.2

COMMAND POST FUNCTIONS/ RESPONSIBILITIES/ OPERATIONS



III CORPS COMMAND POSTS



- TAC CP controls and synchronizes close battle up to 24 hours out. Prepares and executes FRAGOs and orders for the close battle.
- Main CP conducts shaping operations and planning 24-96 hours out. Monitors close battle for its impact on future operations.
- Rear CP Synchronize logistical, rear area and terrain management in the Corps area.



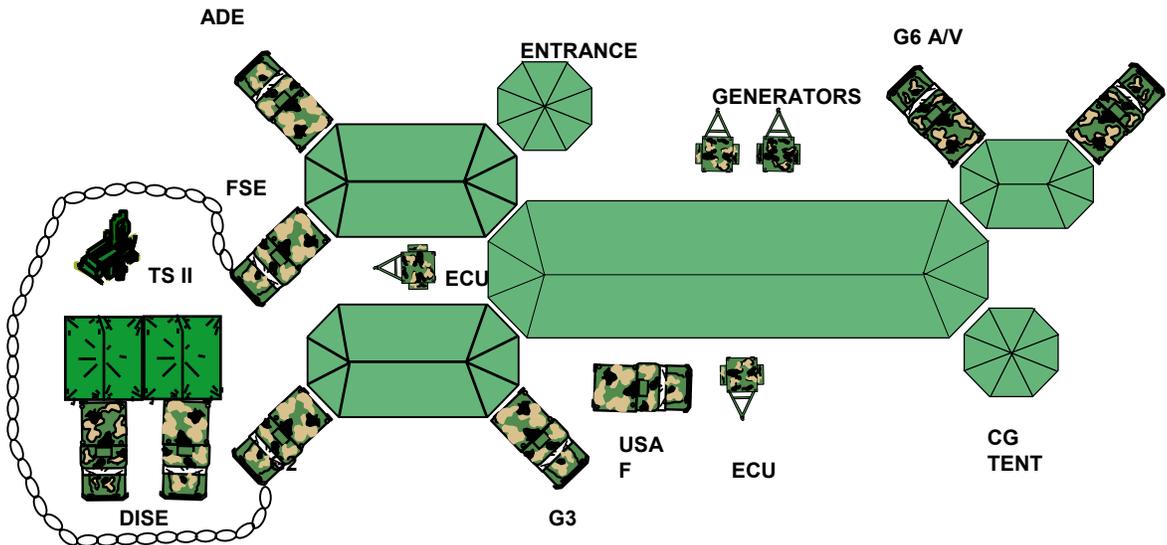
III CORPS COMMAND POSTS



- Battle Command on the Move provides the Corps Commander ability to position himself well forward on the battlefield to lead and influence the close fight.
- Assault CP is a single CP that controls the close fight and has the ability to conduct shaping operations and planning through a reach back capability.
- Sanctuary CP provides planning and intelligence analysis from a safe haven.

COMMAND POST FUNCTIONS

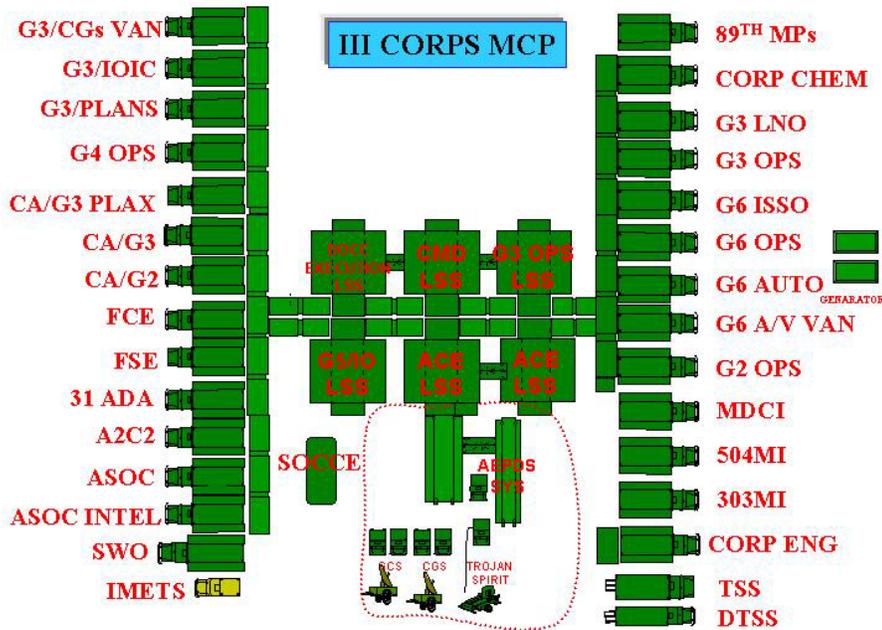
TACTICAL COMMAND POST



- COMMANDS / CONTROLS / SYNCHRONIZES CORPS CLOSE BATTLE (UP TO 24HRS OUT)
- MONITORS THE EXECUTION OF CORPS PLANS
- MONITORS SHAPING AND REAR OPERATIONS FOR EFFECTS ON CLOSE OPERATIONS
- ISSUES WARNING ORDERS, FRAGO_s IN SUPPORT OF CLOSE OPERATIONS
- MAINTAIN CURRENT CLOSE OPERATION SITUATION (STATUS AND CAPABILITIES OF FRIENDLY UNITS)
- SUSTAIN INFO FLOW (DISSEMINATE DECISIONS, PROVIDE PARALLEL ANALYSIS OF INFO)
- ORGANIZED INTO SINGLE MULTI-FUNCTIONAL COHESIVE CELL
- POSITIONED FORWARD
- CONTROLLED BY G3

COMMAND POST FUNCTIONS

MAIN COMMAND POST

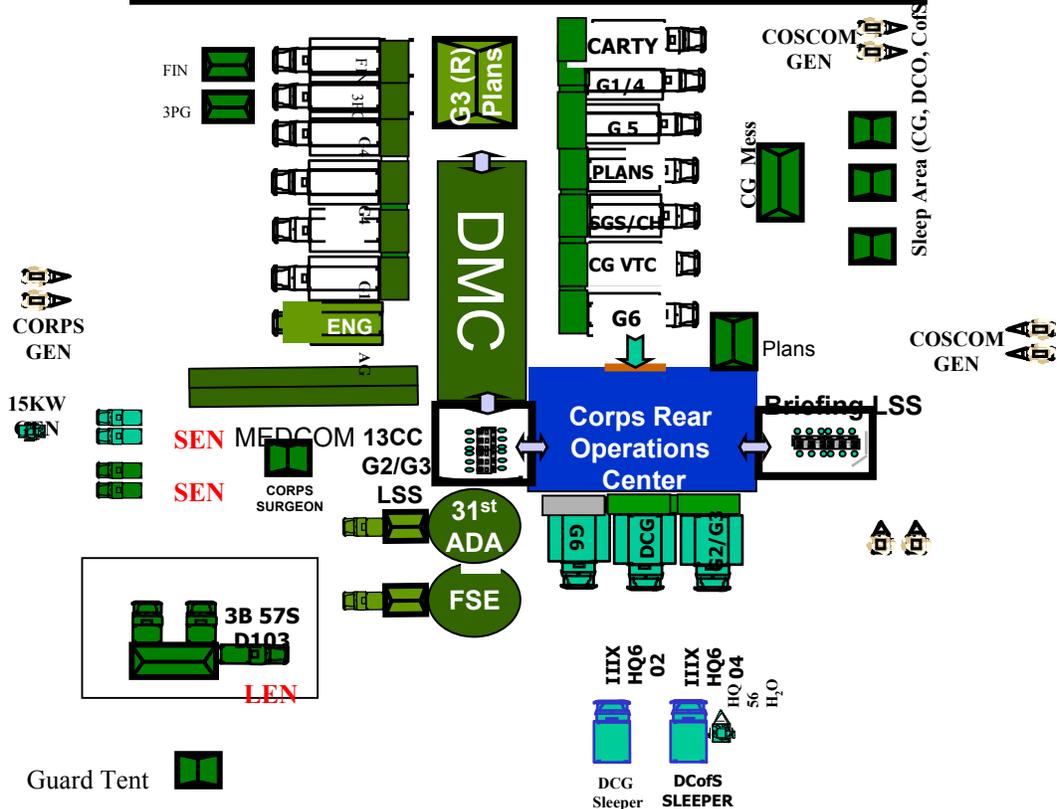


6

- MISSION: ON ORDER, DEPLOY AND ESTABLISH A COMMAND POST FOR III CORPUS IN ORDER TO PROVIDE COMMAND, CONTROL, AND COMMUNICATIONS FOR THE CORPUS
- SYNCHRONIZE CORPUS OPERATIONS
- CONDUCT AND SYNCHRONIZE SHAPING OPERATIONS
- PLAN FUTURE OPERATIONS (24-96 HOURS OUT)
 - CLOSE, SHAPING, AND REAR
- ALLOCATE RESOURCES
- MAINTAINS LIAISON WITH HIGHER AND ADJACENT COMMANDS
- ALTERNATE TAC CP
- ORGANIZED BY CELL
- POSITIONED NEAR IN FORWARD AREA OF CORPUS REAR
- CONTROLLED BY CHIEF OF STAFF
- MUST BE ABLE TO DISPLACE WHILE MAINTAINING ALL ITS FUNCTIONS

COMMAND POST FUNCTIONS

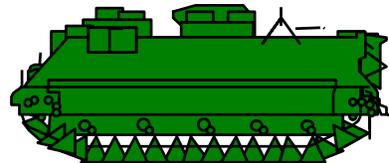
REAR COMMAND POST



- COMMANDS / CONTROLS / MONITORS THE REAR BATTLE
- FIGHTS THE REAR AREA / SUSTAINING BATTLE
- ORGANIZED INTO THREE CELLS
 - DCG C2 CELL
 - FORCE PROTECTION CELL
 - REAR SUSTAINMENT CELL
- DCG (US), DEP CS FIGHT FROM THE REAR CP
- MONITORS CLOSE, FUTURE OPERATIONS FOR EFFECTS ON REAR OPERATIONS
- ISSUES WARNING ORDERS, FRAGOs IN SUPPORT OF REAR OPERATIONS
- MAINTAIN CURRENT CLOSE OPERATION SITUATION (STATUS AND CAPABILITIES OF FRIENDLY UNITS)
- NORMALLY POSITIONED NEAR 13TH COSCOM TLOC
- CONTROLLED BY DCG (US)G3

COMMAND POST FUNCTIONS

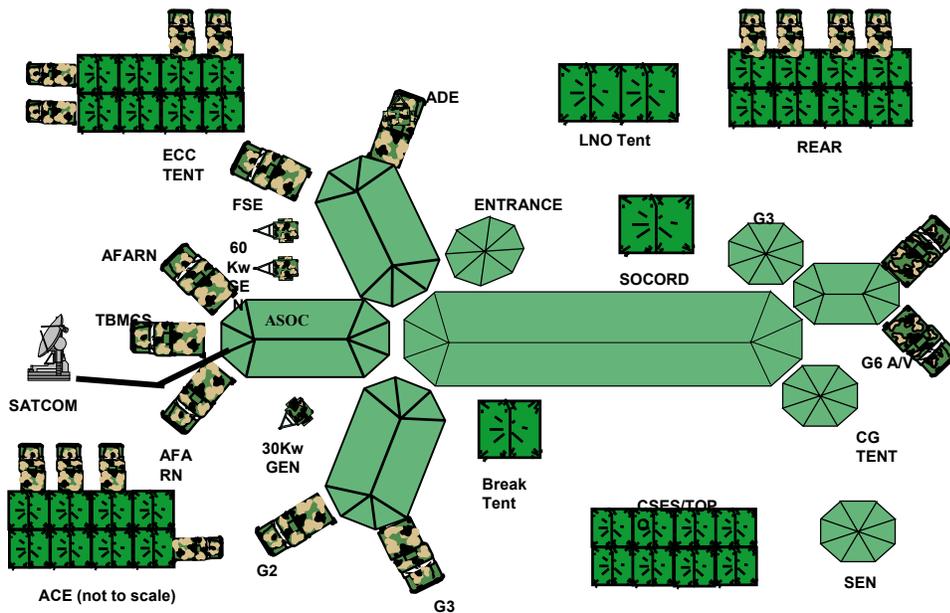
BATTLE COMMAND ON THE MOVE



- **COMMANDER / SMALL BATTLE STAFF**
 - MANEUVER REP
 - INTELLIGENCE REP
 - FIRES REP
- **PROVIDES LEADERSHIP**
 - INFLUENCE OPERATIONS
 - MAKE RAPID DECISIONS
- **LOCATED AT CRITICAL SPOT ON THE BATTLEFIELD**
- **MONITOR AND TRACK CBT & CBT SPT UNITS**
- **LIMITED CP CAPABILITY**
 - EQUIPPED WITH KEY ABCS SYSTEMS
- **IT IS SMALL, MOBILE**
 - **GROUND PLATFORM: M113x2, LAVx2, 1 M1 PLT w/ M2 or 1 M2 PLT w/ M1**
 - **AERIAL PLATFORM TO FACILITATE COMMAND AND CONTROL ALSO INCLUDED**

COMMAND POST FUNCTIONS

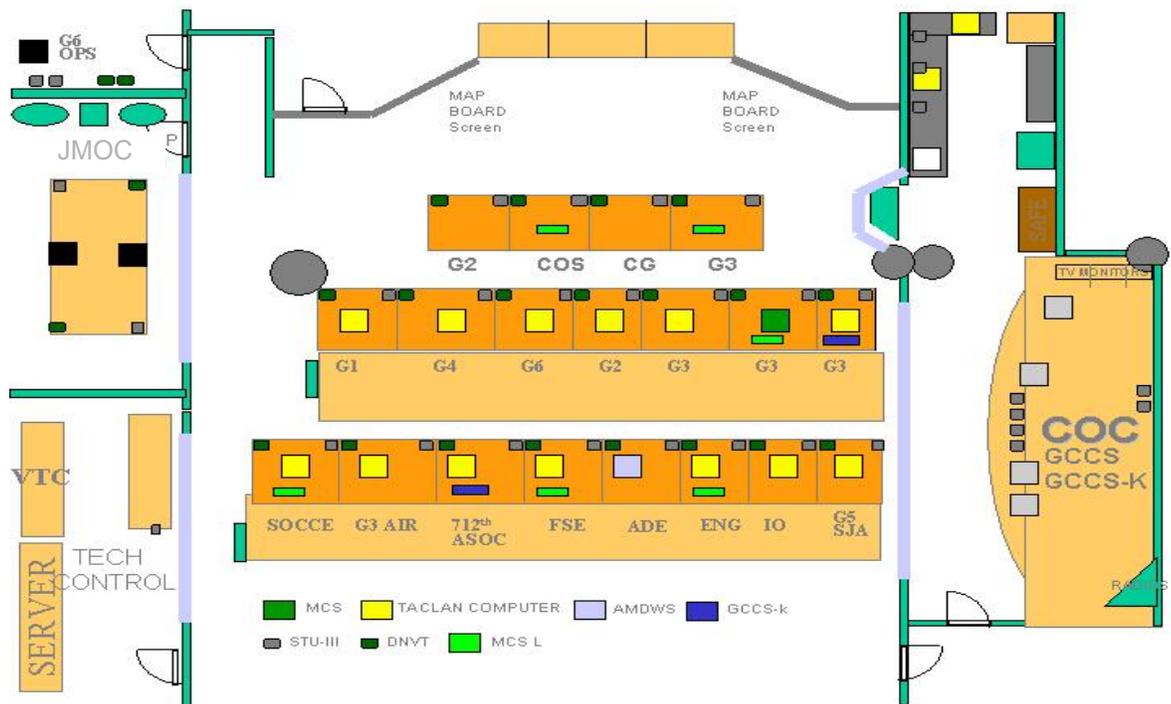
ASSAULT CP



- FORWARD DEPLOYED
- MODULAR...TAILORED TO SPECIFIC MISSION REQUIREMENTS
 - PLANS
 - ACE
 - ECC
 - ASOG
- CAPABILITY TO INTERFACE WITH JOINT PLATFORMS / HQ
- SERVES AS C2 LINK BETWEEN CORPS AND JTF
- EXTENSIVE USE OF REACHBACK CAPABILITIES
- PERFORMS ALL FUNCTIONS OF TAC CP
- PERFORMS CRITICAL COMMAND FUNCTIONS FOR SPECIAL PURPOSES
- DEVELOPS COAs FOR FUTURE OPERATIONS
- CONTROL COUNTER-FIRE OPERATIONS
- COORDINATES COMBAT AVIATION EMPLOYMENT WITH FIRE SUPPORT OPERATIONS
- CAN PERFORM FUNCTIONS OF MAIN CP FOR LIMITED PERIODS OF TIME

COMMAND POST FUNCTIONS

SANCTUARY CP



- OPERATES FROM SAFE HAVEN
- CAN BE TAILORED TO SPECIFIC MISSION REQUIREMENTS
 - JTF
 - ARFOR
 - CRISIS OPS
 - GCC
 - DEPLOYMENTS
- CAPABILITY TO INTERFACE WITH JOINT PLATFORMS / HQ
- PROVIDES EXTENSIVE REACHBACK CAPABILITIES FOR ASSAULT CP
- PERFORMS CRITICAL COMMAND FUNCTIONS FOR SPECIAL PURPOSES



G3 TACOPS

B.3

TACTICAL COMMAND POST



TACTICAL COMMAND POST



- **FUNCTIONS**
- **CONFIGURATION**
- **OPERATION**
- **BATTLEFIELD FUNCTIONAL AREA**
 - **G3 OPERATIONS**
 - **INTELLIGENCE**
 - **FIRE SUPPORT**
 - **TACP / AVN**
 - **AIR DEFENSE**
 - **ENGINEER**
 - **CHEMICAL**
 - **SJA**
 - **G6 / SIGNAL ELEMENT**

**REFERENCE III CORPS TACTICAL COMMAND POST (TAC CP)
STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURE (SOP) MARCH 2002**



TACTICAL COMMAND POST



FUNCTIONS

- To command and control corps close operations
- To monitor the execution of corps plans
- To synchronize combat, CS, and CSS in support of close operations
- To issue warning orders and FRAGOs in support of close operations
- To maintain current close operations situation information
- To assess the current tactical situation
- To assess the status and capabilities of friendly forces
- To monitor the status of CS and CSS in close operations
- To update CS and CSS requirements of close operations
- To provide close operations situation information to the main CP, subordinate MSCs and higher headquarters
- To monitor shaping operations for effects on close operations
- To monitor rear operations for effects on close operations
- To plan for local security of the tactical CP



TACTICAL COMMAND POST



ORGANIZATION

- **ORGANIZED INTO THREE MODULES**
 - Tactical Operations Center
 - Provides a survivable, mobile, and secure area where the CG and G3 can command, control, and monitor the corps close battle
 - The tactical operations center consists of one multi-functional cell with 10 sub-cells:
 - Command Group
 - G2 Cell
 - G3 Cell
 - Fire Support Cell
 - TACP/AVN Cell
 - Engineer Cell
 - Air Defense Cell
 - Chemical Cell
 - SJA Cell
 - G6/Signal Cell
 - Signal Support Area
 - Manned by elements of the 3rd Signal Brigade
 - Function:
 - Set up signal equipment
 - Provide MSE communications connectivity
 - Self-sufficient for power
 - Life Support Area
 - Consists of HHC, III Corps and Phantom Command vehicles, a mess area, and a sleeping area
 - Potable water (5 gallons per assigned soldier per day)
 - Maintenance support
 - » Power generators
 - » ECUs
 - » Wheeled vehicles
 - » SINCGARS radios and related equipment
 - Limited medical support



TACTICAL COMMAND POST



G3 OPS PERSONNEL

G3

DAY SHIFT

G3 (O6)
CHIEF OF OPS (O6)
OPERATIONS OFF (O4)
ASST. OPERATIONS OFF (O3)
OPS SERGEANT (E8)
MAP/SYSTEM NCO (E6)
SYSTEM NCO (E5)
MCS OPERATOR (E4)
RTO (E4)
LOG/ADMIN SPEC (E4)
GCCS OPERATOR (E4)

NIGHT SHIFT

DCG (US)
CHIEF OF TACOPS (O5)
OPERATIONS OFF (O4)
ASST. OPERATIONS OFF (O3)
OPS SERGEANT (E6)
MAP/SYSTEM NCO (E5)
SYSTEM NCO (E5)
MCS OPERATOR (E4)
RTO (E4)
LOG/ADMIN SPEC (E4)
GCCS OPERATOR (E4)

CMD GRP

CG
AIDE-DE-CAMP

DCG (US)
AIDE-DE-CAMP



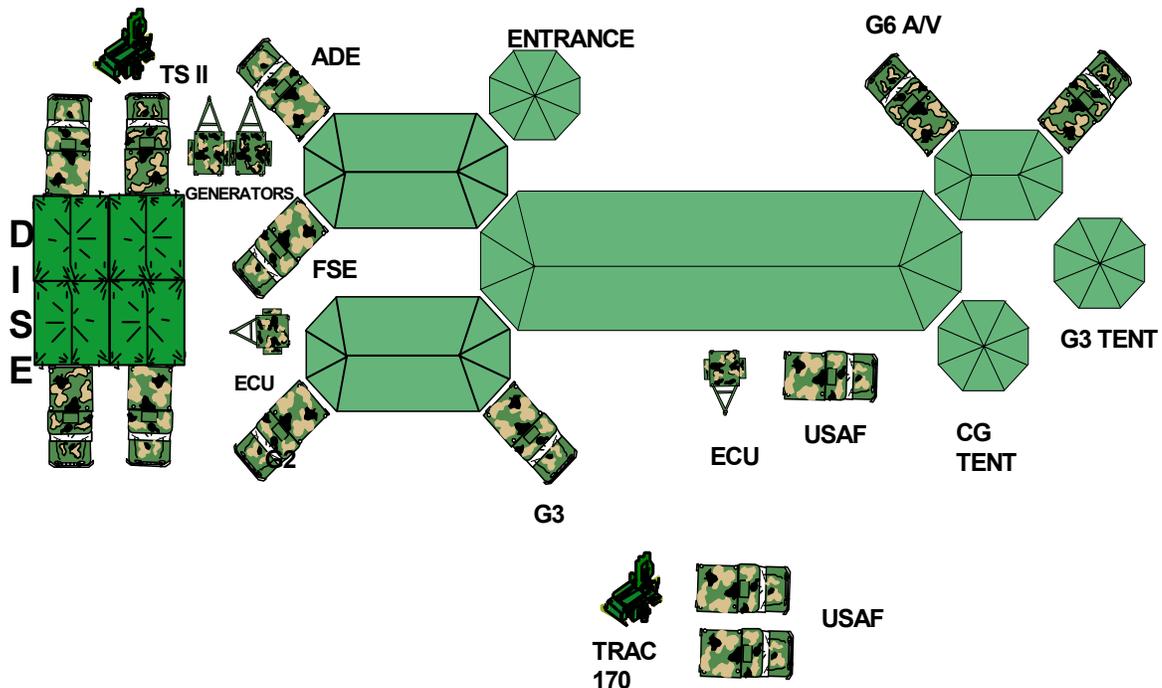
TACTICAL COMMAND POST



CONFIGURATION

- The TAC is a HMMWV and DRASH based command post, designed for rapid deployment by aircraft. The vehicles that make up the tactical operations center and signal support area of the TAC are depicted below. When required, the configuration is modified to re-configure the TAC as an Assault CP or Forward CP by deleting or adding vehicles.

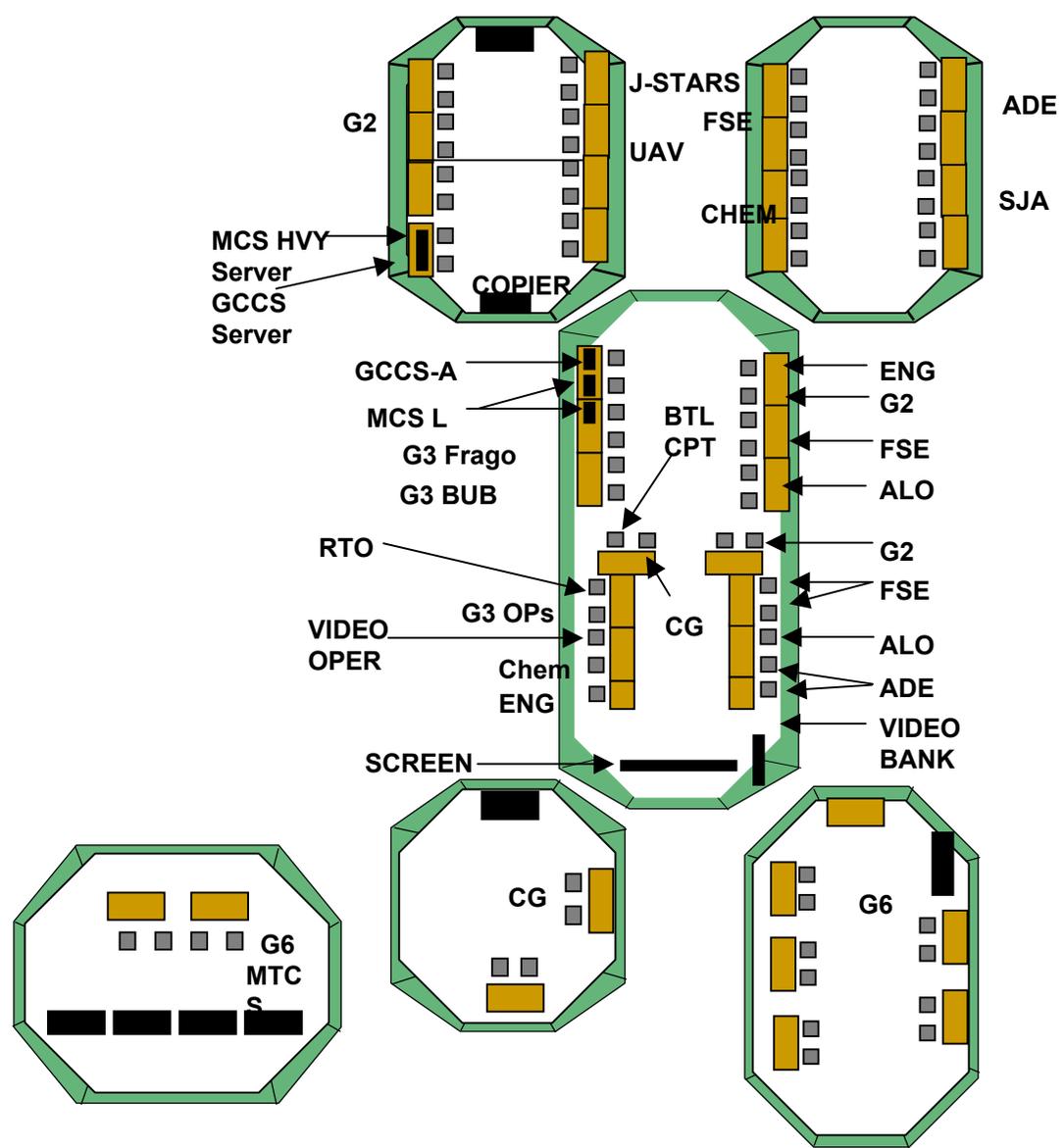
Standard TAC CP Configuration



TACTICAL COMMAND POST

ATTCS SYSTEMS

TAC CP ATCCS Architecture





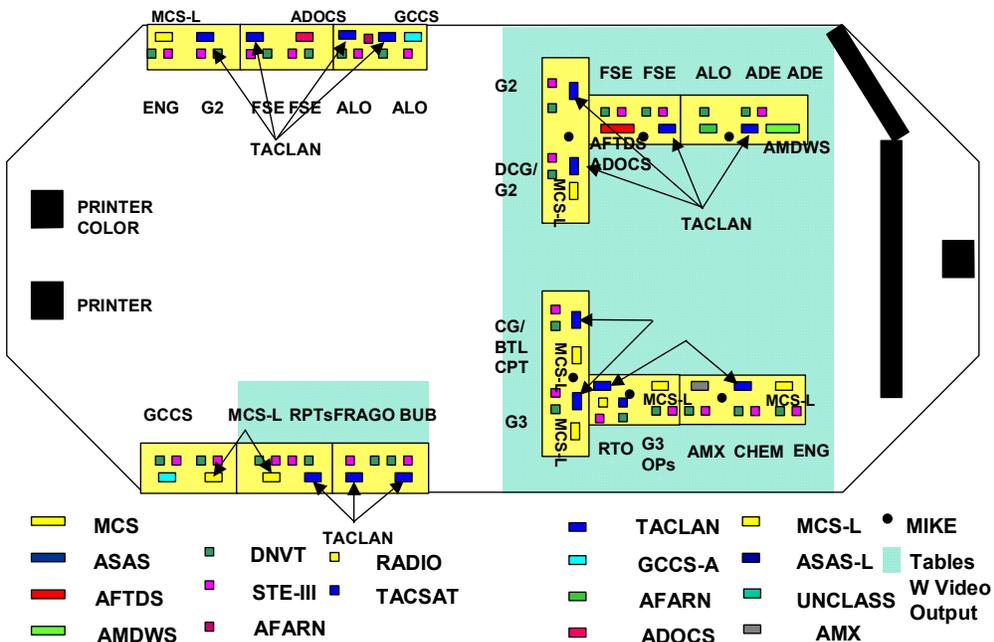
TACTICAL COMMAND POST



ATTCS SYSTEMS

- The TAC is equipped with various communications and ATCCS systems that enable it to communicate with higher, subordinate, and adjacent headquarters. MSE is the communications backbone of the corps. The TAC is also configured with TACSAT. The TAC is equipped with ATCCS systems (MCS, ASAS, AFATDS, and AMDWS) that allow it to communicate digitally to higher, lower, and adjacent headquarters. Additionally, the TAC is equipped with the Global Command and Control System-Army (GCCS-A) and Global Command and Control System – Korea (GCCS-K, used only in Korea).

TAC CP PIT



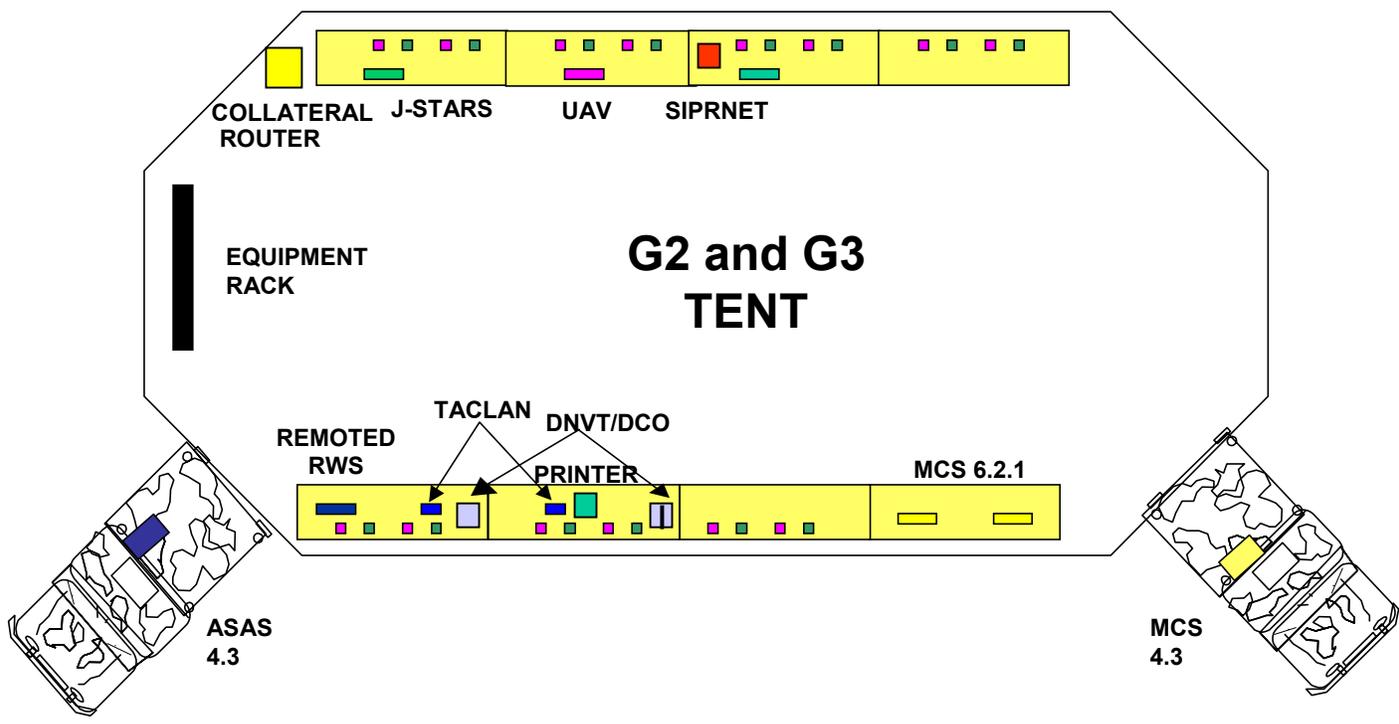


TACTICAL COMMAND POST



ATTCS SYSTEMS

G2 / G3 Back Tent Configuration 4.3 & 6.2.1



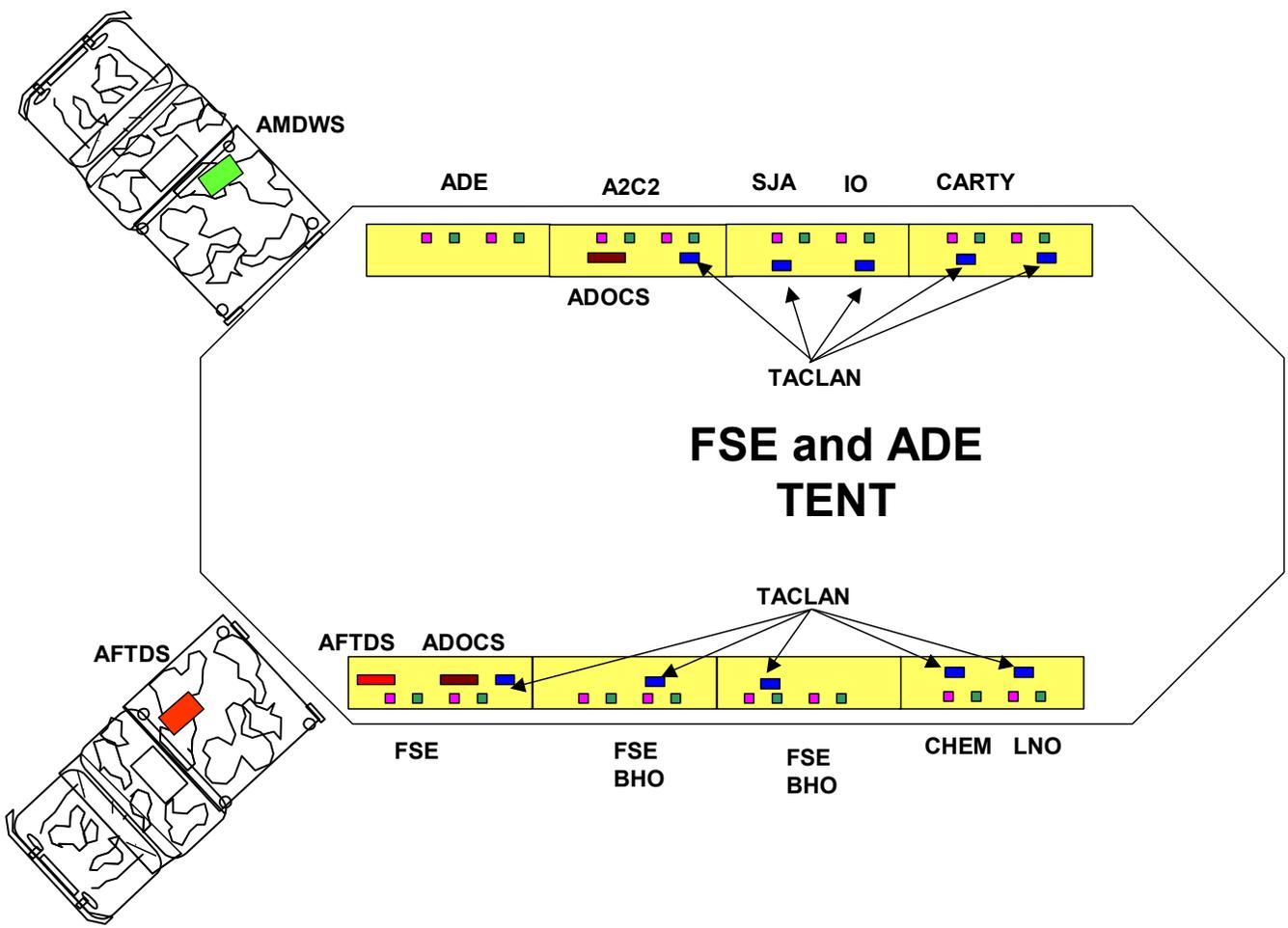


TACTICAL COMMAND POST



ATTCS SYSTEMS

FSE / ADE Back Tent Configuration



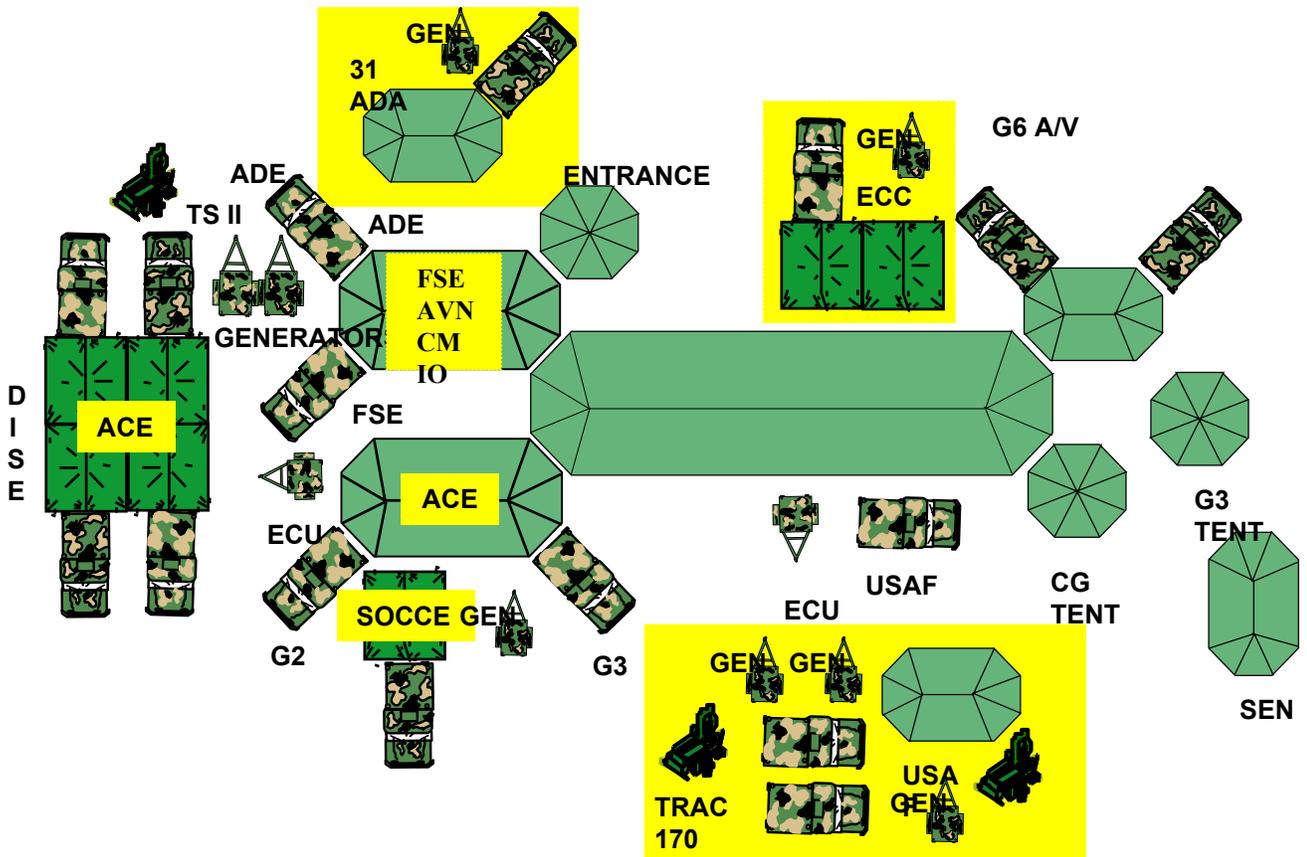


TACTICAL COMMAND POST



CONFIGURATION

TAC CP After Main BHO

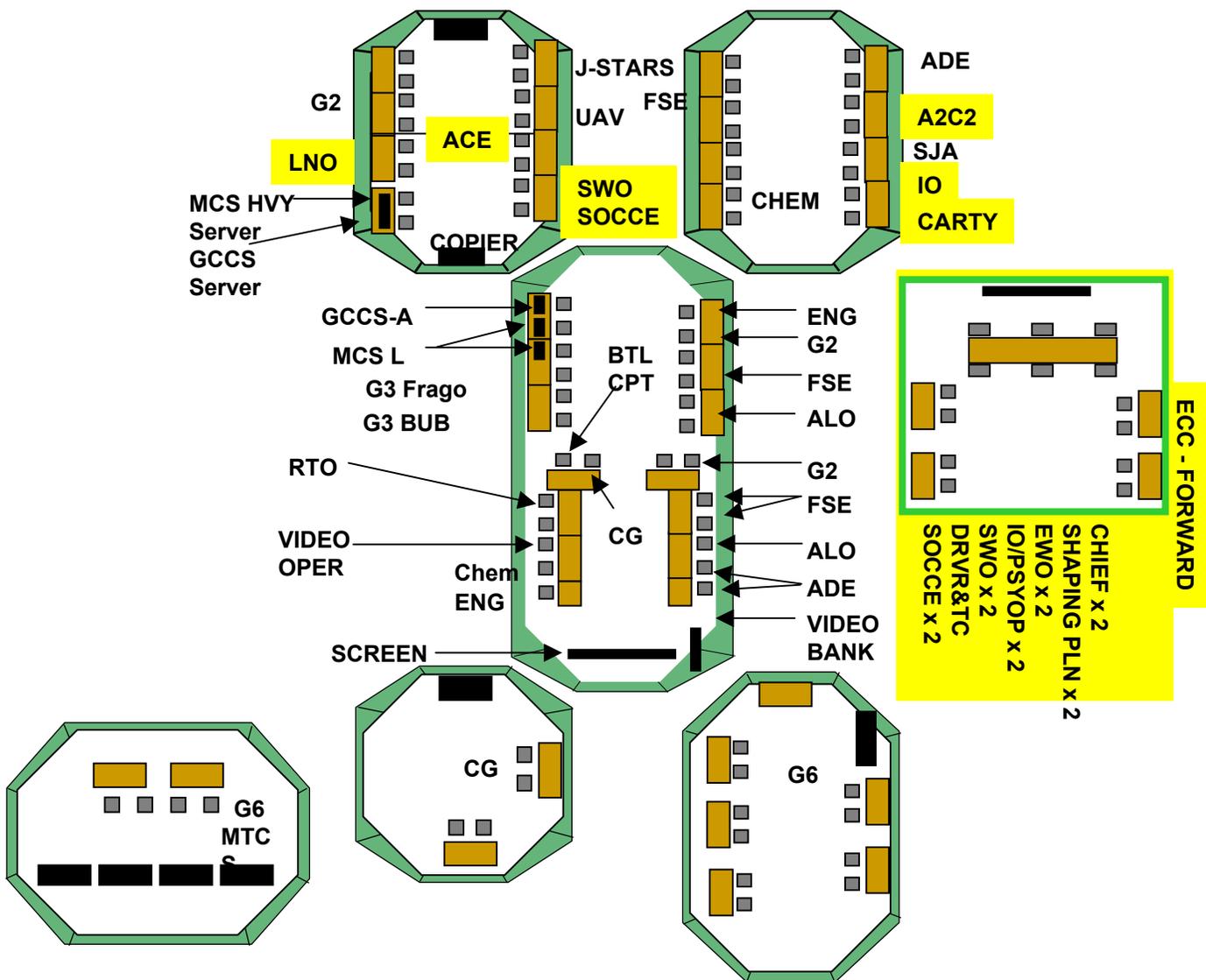




TACTICAL COMMAND POST

ATTCS SYSTEMS

TAC CP ATCCS Architecture w/MAIN CP BHO



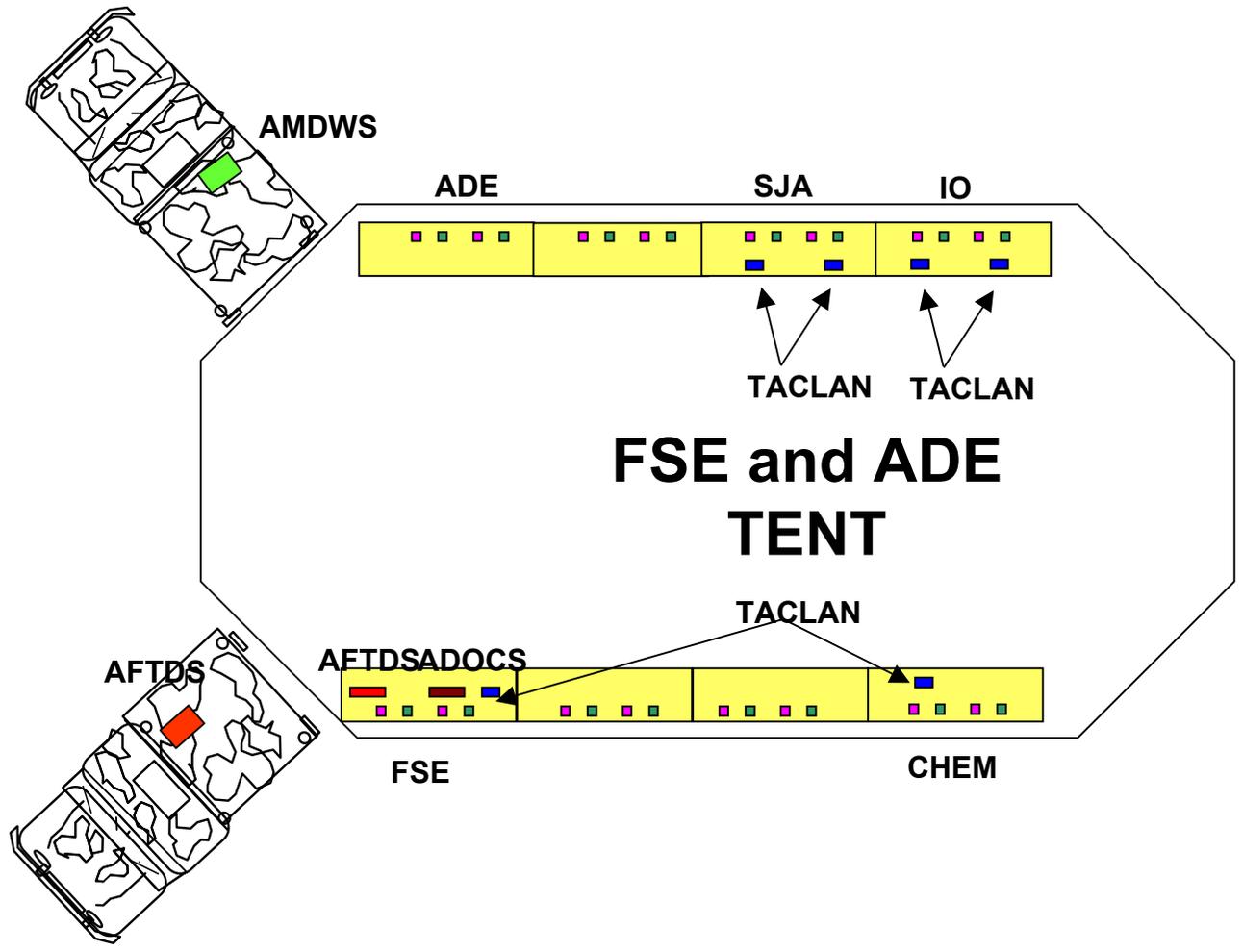


TACTICAL COMMAND POST



ATTCS SYSTEMS

FSE / ADE Back Tent Configuration w/Main CP BHO



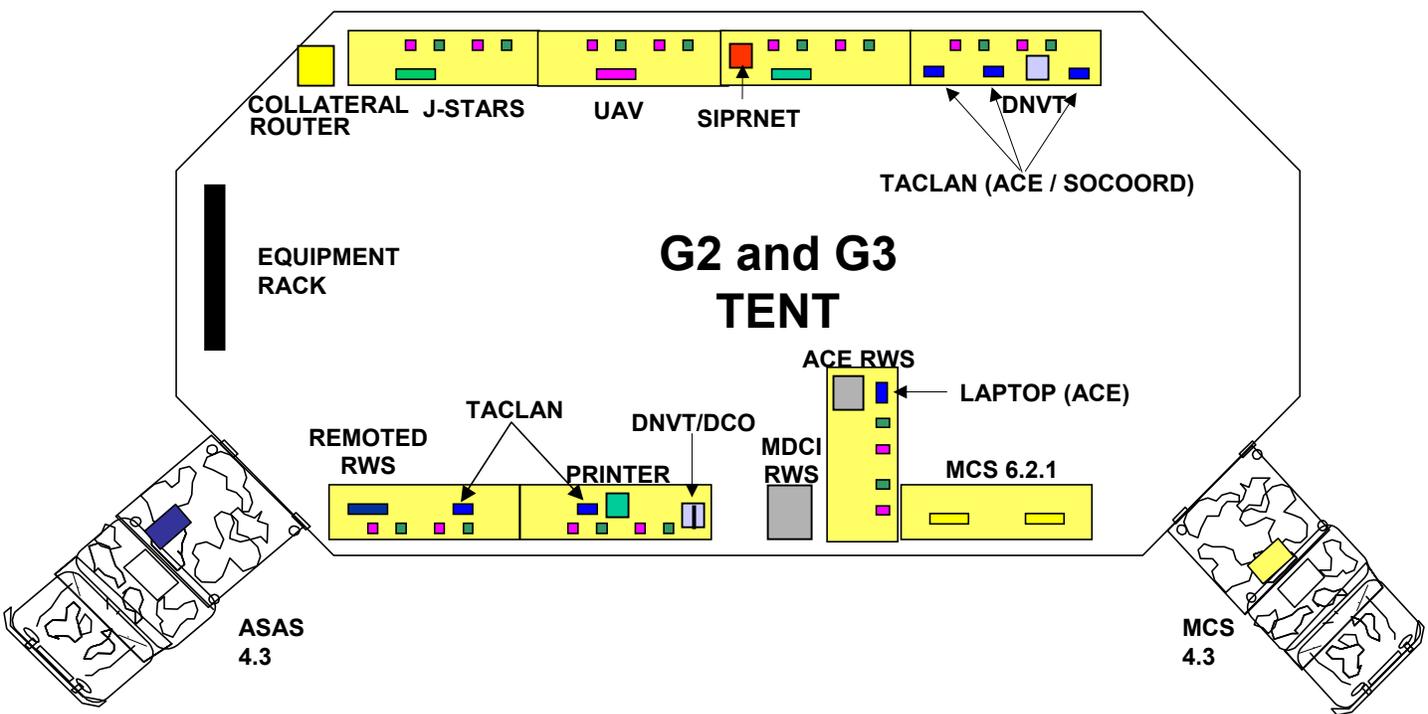


TACTICAL COMMAND POST



ATTCS SYSTEMS

G2 / G3 Back Tent Configuration w/Main CP BHO





TACTICAL COMMAND POST



TACTICAL OPERATIONS

- The Tactical Operations Cell is the hub from which all other cells operate within the TAC CP. The responsibility for the overall operation of the command post lies within the cell and is executed through the Chief of Operations, the Chief of TACOPS, Operations Sergeant Major, and the Senior Operations Sergeant.
- Functions:
 - Executes responsibility for the operation of the TAC CP
 - Executes responsibility for the overall synchronization and coordination of assets supporting the corps' close fight
 - Assessing the current tactical situation
 - Issuing FRAGOs for close operations in conjunction with the Main CP
 - Coordinating Army aviation employment for close operations
 - Coordinating for close air support for close operations
 - Assessing the status and capability of friendly forces
 - Coordinating NBC and smoke operations for close operations
 - Providing close operations situation information to the current operations cell of the Main CP, subordinate MSCs and higher headquarters
 - March ordering and displacing the TAC CP
 - Monitoring the execution of the corps plan
 - Updating the combat, CS, and CSS requirement to support close operations
 - Monitoring shaping operations for the effects on close operations
 - Monitoring rear operations for the effects on close operations
 - Planning for the local security of the TAC CP
 - Preparing and sending required reports to higher headquarters
 - Preparing and orchestrating the Commander's Battle Update Brief



TACTICAL COMMAND POST



STAFF HUDDLE FORMAT (1 OF 2)

USED TO ENSURE ALL MEMBERS OF THE TAC ARE
AWARE OF THE CURRENT TACTICAL SITUATION

NORMALLY SCHEDULED EVERY 2-4 HOURS
(SITUATION DEPENDENT)

- **G3 Battle Captain:**
 - Friendly Situation (unit locations, disposition, combat power, significant actions)
 - Significant Actions: Next 12 hours

- **G2:**
 - Enemy Situation
 - Expected Significant Actions: Next 12 hours

- **FSCOORD:**
 - Friendly Situation (location of FA BDEs, combat power by BDE)
 - Current organization for combat, planned changes
 - Current Fire Support Coordination measures
 - Location of Radars, Radar Coverage
 - Significant Actions: Next 12 hours
 - Ammunition concerns (if applicable)
 - Status of Shaping Attacks (if applicable)

- **ALO:**
 - Available CAS
 - Planned AI, X-int



TACTICAL COMMAND POST



STAFF HUDDLE FORMAT (2 OF 2)

- **Air Defense:**
 - Air Defense Coverage
 - TBMs last 12 hours
- **Engineer:**
 - Status of Bridges
 - Location and status of engineer bridging assets
 - Scatterable Mine status (Gator, Air Volcano)
 - Location of Engineer Work Line
- **Chemical:**
 - Significant Actions: (past 12 hours)
 - Indicators of potential WMD strikes
 - Location / Status of Decon assets / sites
- **SJA:**
 - ROE (changes if applicable)
- **G3 Operations Comments**
- **G3 Comments**
- **DCG Comments**



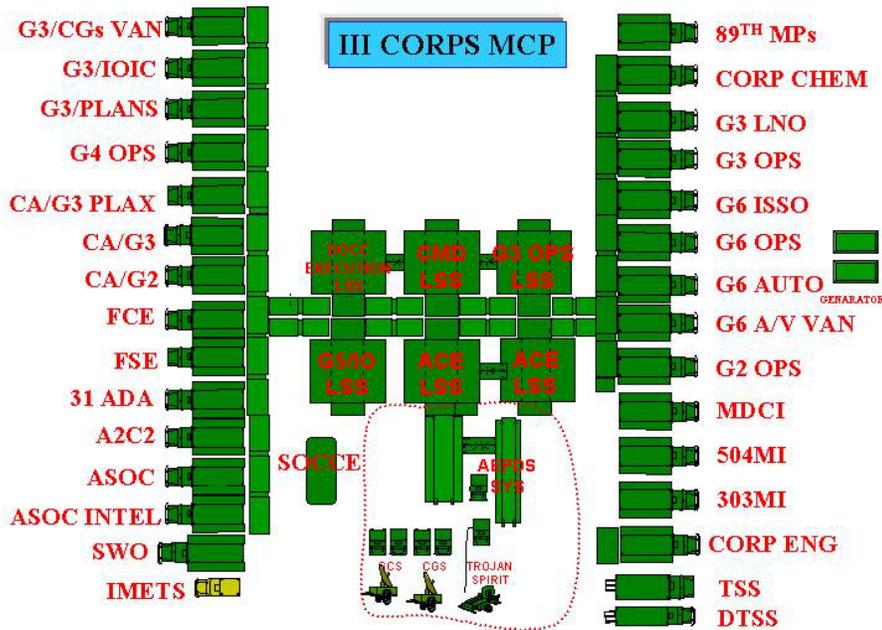
G3 CUROPS

B.4

MAIN COMMAND POST

COMMAND POST FUNCTIONS

MAIN COMMAND POST



6

- MISSION: ON ORDER, DEPLOY AND ESTABLISH A COMMAND POST FOR III CORPUS IN ORDER TO PROVIDE COMMAND, CONTROL, AND COMMUNICATIONS FOR THE CORPUS
- SYNCHRONIZE CORPUS OPERATIONS
- CONDUCT AND SYNCHRONIZE SHAPING OPERATIONS
- PLAN FUTURE OPERATIONS (24-72 HOURS OUT)
 - CLOSE, SHAPING AND REAR
- ALLOCATE RESOURCES
- MAINTAINS LIAISON WITH HIGHER AND ADJACENT COMMANDS
- ALTERNATE TAC CP
- ORGANIZED BY CELL
- POSITIONED NEAR IN FORWARD AREA OF CORPUS REAR
- CONTROLLED BY CHIEF OF STAFF
- MUST BE ABLE TO DISPLACE WHILE MAINTAINING ALL ITS FUNCTIONS
- CONTROLS TACTICAL MOVEMENT PRIOR TO ESTABLISHMENT OF REAR CP



MAIN COMMAND POST



- **PURPOSE**
- **FUNCTIONS**
- **CONFIGURATION**
- **OPERATION**
- **BATTLEFIELD FUNCTIONAL AREA**
 - **OPERATIONS**
 - **INTELLIGENCE**
 - **FIRE SUPPORT**
 - **A2C2**
 - **PLANS**



MAIN COMMAND POST

Purpose



- Focus of effort between Plans and TAC
 - Plans 72-120 hours
 - TAC 0-24+hours
 - MCP 24+-72 hours = Future Ops
- 24 hour Future Operations FRAGO Production Cycle
 - 6 hour Development
 - WARNO at N+1 (24-72 hour assessment slide or CONPLAN)
 - Draft FRAGO at N+6
 - 12 hour Staffing
 - N+6-N+7 distribute electronically to MSCs and Command Posts (TAC/REAR) with telephonic confirmation of receipt
 - N+18 receive confirmation / issues from MSCs and CPs (VTC/email/telephonic)
 - 6 hour Final Production
 - N+24 transmit/ post final FRAGO
- Timeline is flexible
- Gives MSCs 48 hours to implement (meets 1/3-2/3 rule). Frago becomes hand-off to TAC for BPTs/On Orders issues.



MAIN COMMAND POST

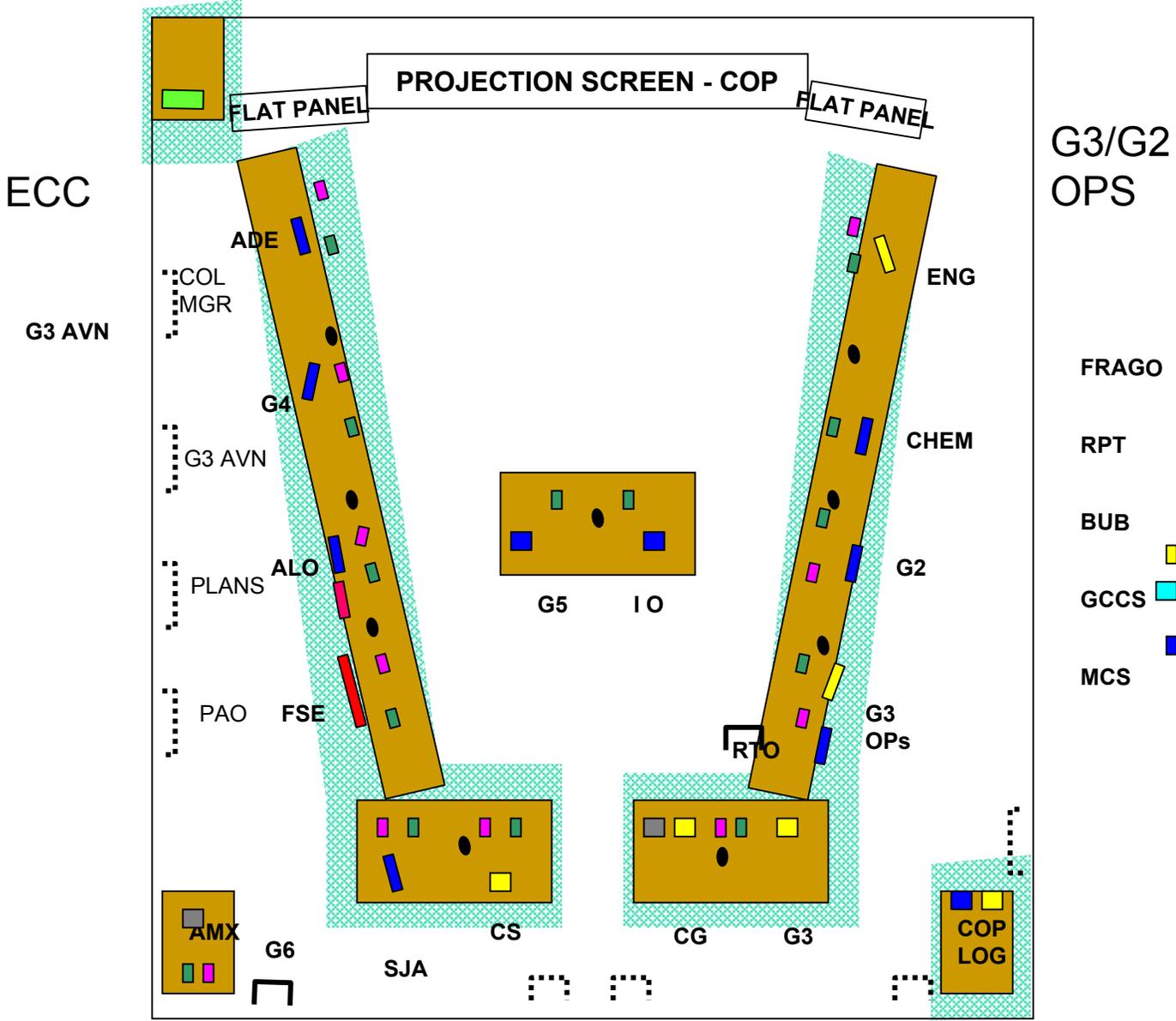


FUNCTIONS

- SYNCHRONIZE CORPS OPERATIONS
- CONDUCT AND SYNCHRONIZE SHAPING OPERATIONS
- PLAN FUTURE OPERATIONS (CLOSE, SHAPING, AND REAR) 24-72 HOURS OUT
- CONDUCT FUTURE PLANNING 72-120 HOURS OUT
- ALLOCATE RESOURCES
- ALTERNATE TAC CP
- ORGANIZED BY CELL
- POSITIONED NEAR IN FORWARD AREA OF CORPS REAR
- CONTROLLED BY CHIEF OF STAFF
- MUST BE ABLE TO DISPLACE WHILE MAINTAINING ALL ITS FUNCTIONS
- COMMAND AND CONTROL CORPS TACTICAL MOVEMENTS PRIOR TO ESTABLISHMENT OF CORPS REAR CP, AND AS OTHERWISE DIRECTED
- CONDUCT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT



C2 LSS Configuration



- AMX** (Grey rectangle)
- AMDWS** (Green rectangle)
- AFTDS** (Red rectangle)
- DNVT** (Green rectangle)
- RADIO** (Yellow rectangle)
- TACSAT** (Blue rectangle)
- GCCS-A** (Cyan rectangle)
- AFARN** (Green rectangle)
- MCS-L** (Yellow rectangle)
- ADOCS** (Pink rectangle)
- AMX** (Grey rectangle)
- FRAGO** (Yellow rectangle)
- RPT** (Cyan rectangle)
- BUB** (Blue rectangle)
- GCCS** (Cyan rectangle)
- MCS** (Blue rectangle)
- MIKE** (black circle)
- Tables W Video Output** (dotted pattern)



III Corps BDA Process



INPUTS

Close

- Maneuver MSC BDASUM
 - 1CD, 3ACR, 45ID, 49AD

Shaping

- Unobserved fires (CARTY)
- Pilot reports / gun camera
 - CAS / AI / XINT
 - 6 CAV
- Intelligence collection
 - UAV and other imagery
 - SIGINT
 - LRS / SOF
- Higher and adjacent command assessments

Rear

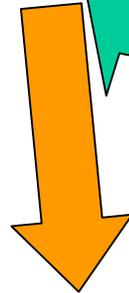
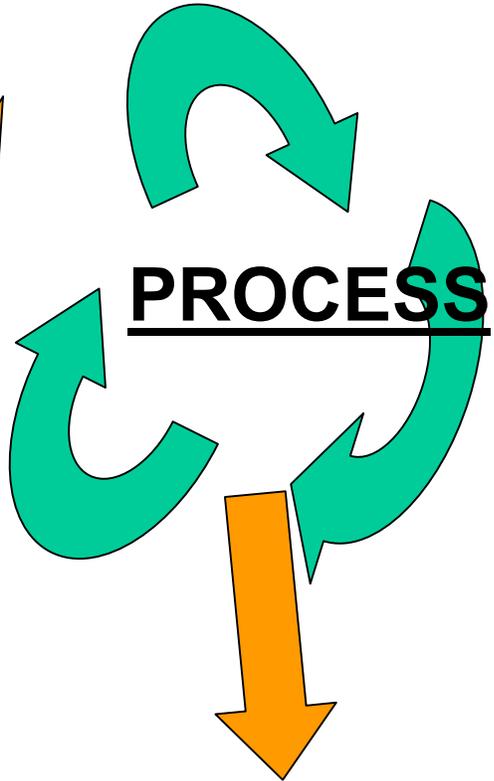
- SALUTE (Corps G2 Rear)

Air & SSM

- Assessments (JFACC, 31 ADA)

Facility

- SALUTE (LRS, SOF, observers)
- Imagery
- Assessments (Theater / national)



OUTPUTS

- III Corps BDASUM
 - Spreadsheet: combat systems by unit & select facilities status
 - Unit combat power / capabilities chart
- MDCISUM: SPF / CDO
- Enemy COAs adjusted for capabilities / combat power



Combat Power Tracking



- Inputs:
 - Every 4 hours receive unit reports
 - Monitor VTC battle
- Actions:
 - Determine reason for unit amber/black
 - Develop projection for fix with Rear CP, BOS reps, and MSC CP
 - Include analysis in 24-48 and 48-72 hour assessments
 - Prioritize and monitor actions until fixed
- Outputs:
 - Detailed, comprehensive staff assessments
 - Prioritization of assets based on expected future operations
 - Rolling Display (Mirrors TAC)



Responsibilities Matrix



		TAC	MAIN	REAR
FRAGOs				
	Draft	0-24hrs	24-72hrs	all Rear AO
	Review	0-24hrs	24-72hrs	all Rear AO
	Approve	0-24hrs	24-72hrs	all Rear AO
	Number	Yes	No	No
	Post	Yes	Yes	Yes
REPORTS				
	Draft	Yes		
	Review	Yes		
	Approve	Yes		
	Forward	Yes		
Graphics				
Current				
	Develops	Yes		
	Implements	Yes		
Future Ops				
	Develops		Yes	
	Implements	Yes		
Future Plans				
	Develops		Yes	
	Implements	Yes		
Rear Area				
	Develops			Yes
	Implements			Yes
IIIC BUB				
	Develops Input	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Collates Slides	Yes	No	No
	Emcees BUB	Yes	No	No
8A BUB				
	Develops Input	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Collates Slides	No	Yes	No
	Emcees BUB	No	No	No
ISR				
	Plans	No	Yes	Yes (RAO)
	Monitors execution	Yes	Yes	Yes
MCS-L COP				
	Controls/Updates	Yes	No	No
	Monitors	Yes	Yes	Yes
GCCS-A				
	Administrator	No	No	No
	Operators	Yes	Yes	Yes



ISR Responsibilities



- Inputs:
 - Future Ops Assessment
- Actions:
 - Develop/Recommend CCIR (PIR)
 - Develop NAIs
 - Resource NAIs
- Outputs:
 - ISR Plan as part of Future Ops FRAGO



FUTURE OPS FRAGO

Timeline



- 24 hour Cycle
 - 6 hour Development
 - WARNO at N+1 (24-72 hour assessment slide or CONPLAN)
 - Draft FRAGO at N+6
 - 12 hour Staffing
 - N+6-N+7 distribute electronically to MSCs and Command Posts (TAC/REAR) with telephonic confirmation of receipt
 - N+18 receive confirmation / issues from MSCs and CPs (VTC??/email/telephonic)
 - 6 hour Final Production
 - N+24 transmit/ post final FRAGO
- Timeline is flexible



Battle Tracking Procedures



- Battle Tracking
 - Aides
 - Digital – MCS-Lite, AFATDS, AMDWS, ADOCS
 - Audio – Speed Dial DNVTs
 - Video – VTC
 - BDA Assessment
 - Shaping Attack BDA
 - Overall BDA
 - CBT PWR Tracking
 - CCIR Tracking
 - Standard Update to CofS/CG
- Products Production
 - BUBs
 - Reports
 - FRAGOs
 - Rolling Information Display



MAIN COMMAND POST



ORGANIZATION

- **ORGANIZED INTO THREE MODULES**
 - **Tactical Operations Center**
 - Provides a survivable, mobile, and secure area where the CofS and G3 Ops can command, control, and monitor corps operations
 - The tactical operations center consists of one multi-functional C2 LSS and individual section LSS's :
 - Command Group
 - G2 Cell
 - G3 Ops Cell
 - Fire Support Cell
 - TACP/AVN Cell
 - Engineer Cell
 - Air Defense Cell
 - Chemical Cell
 - SJA Cell
 - G6/Signal Cell
 - Air Support Ops Cell
 - Information Ops Cell
 - SOCOORD Cell
 - G1/G4 Plans Cell
 - Analysis & Control Element
 - Effects Coordination Cell
 - **Signal Support Area**
 - Manned by elements of the 3rd Signal Brigade
 - Function:
 - Set up signal equipment
 - Provide MSE communications connectivity
 - Self-sufficient for power



MAIN COMMAND POST



ORGANIZATION

- **THREE MODULES (Continued)**
 - Life Support Area
 - Consists of HHC, III Corps and Phantom Command vehicles, a mess area, and a sleeping area
 - Potable water (5 gallons per assigned soldier per day)
 - Maintenance support
 - » Power generators
 - » ECUs
 - » Wheeled vehicles
 - » SINCGARS radios and related equipment
 - Limited medical support



MAIN COMMAND POST



G3 OPS PERSONNEL

G3

DAY SHIFT

CHIEF OF CUROPS (O5)
OPERATIONS OFF (O4)
FRAGO WRITER (O4)
OPS SERGEANT (E7)
COP NCO (E7)
LOG NCO (E5)
MCS OPERATOR (E4)
RTO (E4)
GCCS OPERATOR (E4)

NIGHT SHIFT

CHIEF OF CONOPS (O5)
OPERATIONS OFF (O4)
FRAGO WRITER (O4)
OPS SERGEANT (E8)
COP NCO (E7)
LOG NCO (E5)
MCS OPERATOR (E4)
RTO (E4)
GCCS OPERATOR (E4)

G3 SGM serves as MCP NCOIC, is not on a shift.

CMD GRP

CofS
AIDE-DE-CAMP

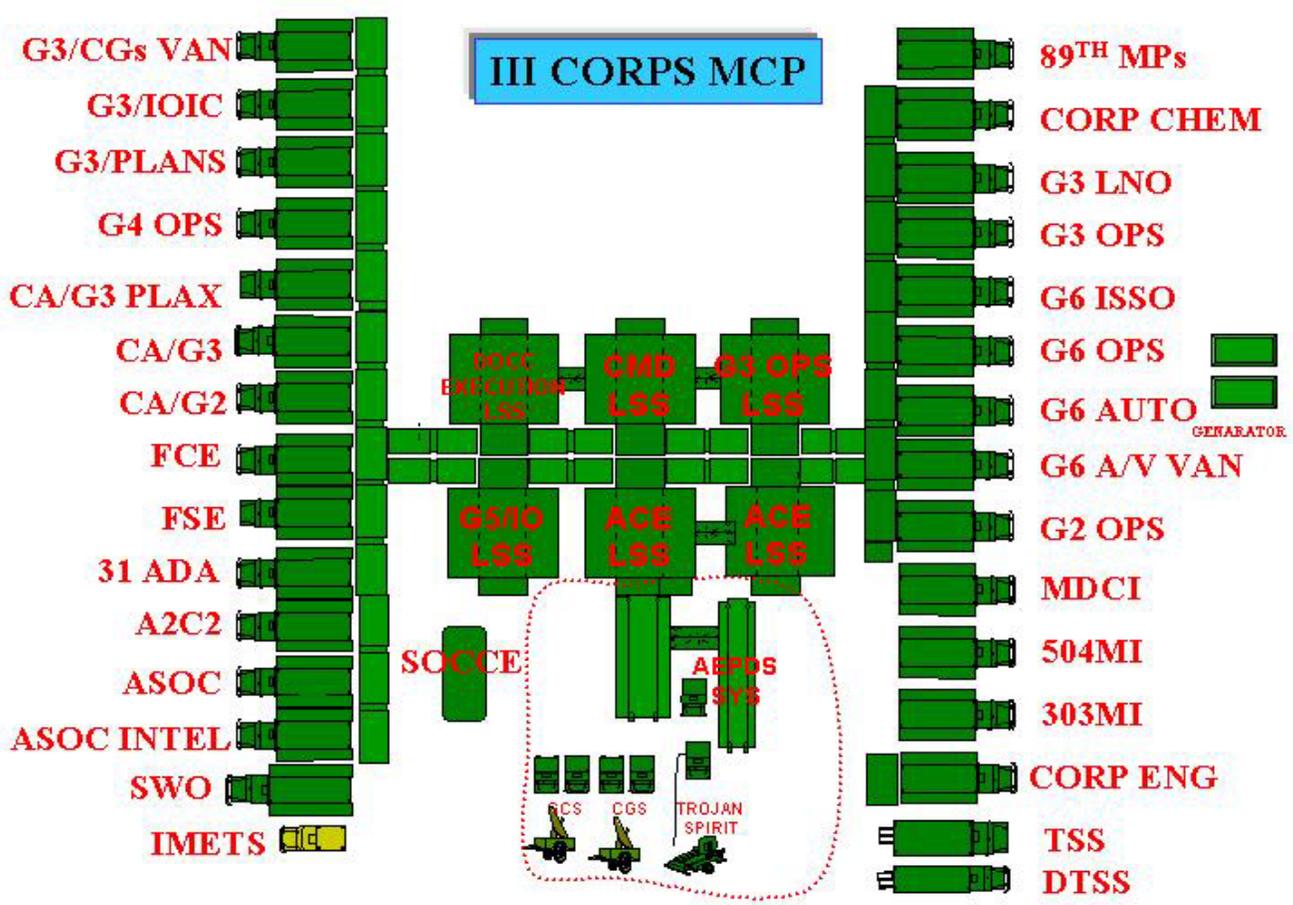
G3 DIR Plans (O6)



MAIN COMMAND POST

CONFIGURATION

- The MCP is a LSS Trailer based command post. The vehicles that make up the tactical operations center and signal support area of the MCP are depicted below. When required, the MCP serves as the TAC, with key leaders from the TAC relocating to the MCP to execute battle command of the Corps close fight.





MAIN COMMAND POST



ATTCS SYSTEMS

MAIN CP
ATCCS Architecture

TBP



MAIN COMMAND POST



ATTCS SYSTEMS

- The MCP is equipped with various communications and ATCCS systems that enable it to communicate with higher, subordinate, and adjacent headquarters. MSE is the communications backbone of the corps. The MCP is also configured with TACSAT. The MCP is equipped with ATCCS systems (MCS, ASAS, AFATDS, and AMDWS) that allow it to communicate digitally to higher, lower, and adjacent headquarters. Additionally, the MCP is equipped with the Global Command and Control System-Army (GCCS-A) and Global Command and Control System – Korea (GCCS-K, used only in Korea).



MAIN COMMAND POST



TACTICAL OPERATIONS

- The C2 LSS is the hub from which all other cells operate within the MAIN CP. The responsibility for the overall operation of the command post lies within the C2 LSS and is executed through the Chief of CUROPS, Chief of CONOPS, G3 Sergeant Major, and the Senior Operations Sergeant. Receives key leaders from the TAC CP when the TAC CP is displacing.
- Functions:
 - Executes responsibility for the operation of the MAIN CP
 - Executes responsibility for the overall synchronization and coordination of assets supporting the corps' fight (Shaping, Close and Rear)
 - Monitoring the current tactical situation
 - Plan, coordinate future operations (24-72 hours out)
 - Issuing FRAGOs for Corps operations in conjunction with the TAC CP
 - Coordinating with the ECC for employment of Army aviation for shaping operations
 - Coordinating with the ECC for air interdiction support for shaping operations
 - Assessing the status and capability of friendly forces
 - Coordinating NBC and smoke operations
 - Providing shaping operations situation information to the current operations cell of the TAC CP, subordinate MSCs and higher headquarters
 - March ordering and displacing the MAIN CP
 - Executing Battle Command over the execution of the corps plan
 - Updating the combat, CS, and CSS requirement to support Corps operations
 - Executing shaping operations to shape future close operations
 - Monitoring rear operations for the effects on Corps operations
 - Planning for the local security of the MAIN CP
 - Preparing and sending required reports to higher headquarters
 - Preparing and orchestrating the Commander's Battle Update Brief



MAIN COMMAND POST



STAFF HUDDLE FORMAT (1 OF 2)

USED TO ENSURE ALL MEMBERS OF THE MAIN CP ARE
AWARE OF THE CURRENT TACTICAL SITUATION

NORMALLY SCHEDULED EVERY 4-8 HOURS
(SITUATION DEPENDENT)

- **G3 Ops Officer:**
 - Friendly Situation (unit locations, disposition, combat power, significant actions)
 - Significant Actions: Next 24-48 hours

- **G2 Ops Officer:**
 - Enemy Situation
 - Expected Significant Actions: Next 24-48 hours

- **FSCOORD:**
 - Friendly Situation (location of FA BDEs, combat power by BDE)
 - Current organization for combat, planned changes
 - Current Fire Support Coordination measures
 - Location of Radars, Radar Coverage
 - Significant Actions: Next 24-48 hours
 - Ammunition concerns (if applicable)
 - Status of Shaping Attacks (if applicable)

- **ALO:**
 - Available CAS
 - Planned AI, X-int



MAIN COMMAND POST



STAFF HUDDLE FORMAT (2 OF 2)

- **Air Defense:**
 - Air Defense Coverage next 24-48 hours
 - TBMs last 12 hours
- **Engineer:**
 - Status of Bridges
 - Location and status of engineer bridging assets
 - Scatterable Mine status (Gator, Air Volcano)
 - Location of Engineer Work Line next 24-48 hours
- **Chemical:**
 - Significant Actions: (past 12 hours)
 - Indicators of potential WMD strikes
 - Location / Status of Decon assets / sites
- **SJA:**
 - ROE (changes if applicable)
- **G5:**
 - Significant Actions: (past 12 hours)
 - Current Location of displaced civilians
- **IO:**
 - Significant Actions: (past 12 hours)
 - Results of IO Working Group next 24-48 hours
- **G3 Operations Comments**
- **CofS Comments**



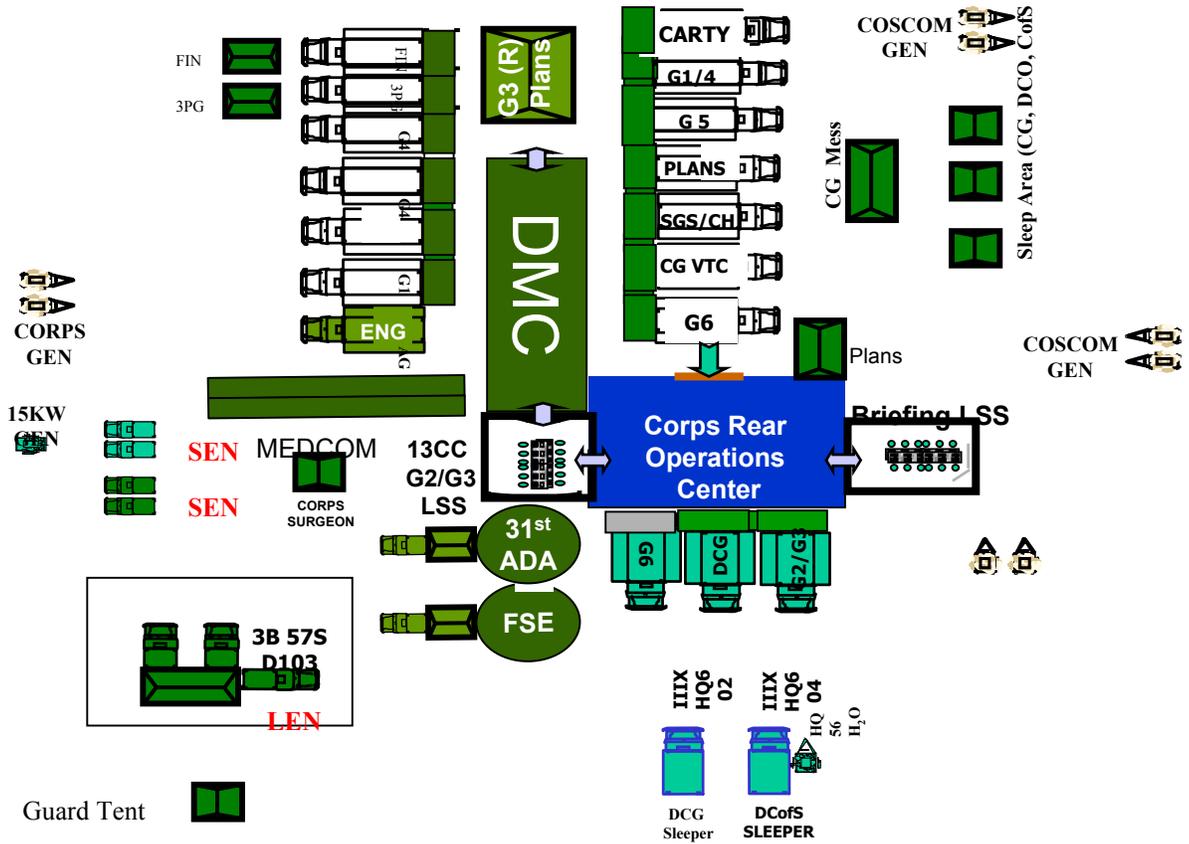
G4

B.5

REAR COMMAND
POST

B.5 REAR COMMAND POST

REAR COMMAND POST



- COMMANDS / CONTROLS / MONITORS THE REAR BATTLE
- FIGHTS THE REAR AREA / SUSTAINING BATTLE
- ORGANIZED INTO THREE CELLS
 - DCG C2 CELL
 - FORCE PROTECTION CELL
 - REAR SUSTAINMENT CELL
- DCG (US), DEP CS FIGHT FROM THE REAR CP
- MONITORS CLOSE, FUTURE OPERATIONS FOR EFFECTS ON REAR OPERATIONS
- ISSUES WARNING ORDERS, FRAGOs IN SUPPORT OF REAR OPERATIONS
- MAINTAIN CURRENT CLOSE OPERATION SITUATION (STATUS AND CAPABILITIES OF FRIENDLY UNITS)
- NORMALLY POSITIONED NEAR 13TH COSCOM TLOC
- CONTROLLED BY DCG (US)G3



REAR COMMAND POST



- **FUNCTIONS** **B.5.1**
- **ORGANIZATION** **B.5.2**
- **OPERATION** **B.5.3**
- **BATTLEFIELD FUNCTIONAL AREA**
B.5.4
 - G3 OPERATIONS
 - INTELLIGENCE
 - FIRE SUPPORT
 - CORPS G1/AG
 - CORPS G4
 - CORPS G5/CIV AFFAIRS
 - AIR DEFENSE
 - ENGINEER
 - CORPS SURGEON
 - CHAPLAIN
 - CHEMICAL
 - STAFF JUDGE ADVOCATE
 - INSPECTOR GENERAL
 - G6 / SIGNAL ELEMENT
 - 89TH MP LNO

**REFERENCE III CORPS REAR COMMAND POST (RCP)
STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURE (SOP) TBP 2002**



REAR COMMAND POST



FUNCTIONS

- To analyze the rear operations situation for its impact on current and future operations.
- To plan and control reconstitution.
- To plan for the assumption of TAC CP and MAIN CP functions.
- To plan and conduct rear security operations.
- To complete and continually update intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) of the rear area.
- To gather and disseminate early warning of enemy activities in the corps rear area (for example, air attacks, NBC activities).
- To request the commitment of the tactical combat force (TCF) to defeat Level III threats beyond the abilities of the response forces.
- To coordinate TCF operations.
- To ensure responsive fire support for both response forces and TCF.
- To integrate available host nation (HN) forces into the rear security plan.
- To synchronize combat, combat support, and combat service support in support of rear security operations.
- To plan and control terrain management in the corps' rear area, with the G3.
- To prepare plans for and control of reconstitution efforts, with the Sustainment Cell.
- To monitor current close and shaping operations situation information.
- To direct, control and designate areas of responsibility for subordinate rear area operations centers (RAOCs).
- To monitor movement within the CRA and MSR status forward.
- To direct area damage control activities within the CRA.
- To collect, analyze and provide CSS situation information.
- To monitor personnel, finance, and logistic operations.
- Coordinate personnel / Human Resource issues with Theater Army and Multinational Agencies as required
- Unit Strength Accounting (G1/AG)
- Replacement Operations (G1/AG)
- Casualty Reporting (G1/AG)



REAR COMMAND POST



FUNCTIONS Cont.

- Personnel Service / Administrative Support (G1/AG)
- Morale Support (G1/AG/Corps Chaplain)
- Health Services (G1/Corps Surgeon)
- Religious Ministries (G1/Corps Chaplain)
- Civilian Personnel Management (G1/G5)
- Pay Services (G1/3D FIN GRP)
- Legal Services (G1/SJA)
- Inspect General Services (G1/IG)
- To recommend the positioning of CSS units in the rear area to best support the overall corps operation.
- To identify key CSS units and activities that require priority protection.
- To plan and, in coordination with the corps movement control center's (CMCC) highway traffic division, control administrative movements.
- To designate main supply routes (MSR) and alternate MSRs.
- To establish priorities for administrative movements.
- To plan and control combat health support (CHS) operations.
- To collect, analyze, and provide religious support information.
- To coordinate and reroute administrative movements so as not to conflict with tactical movements.
- To help plan and control tactical movements in the rear area (with the help of the CMCC's highway traffic division in deconflicting the moves.)
- To monitor incoming augmentation units (force tracking).
- To maintain civil affairs status and control civil affairs operations.
- To provide full spectrum legal support to rear area operations.
- To coordinate corps public affairs support.
- To coordinate corps HN and/or logistic civil augmentation program (LOGCAP).
- To support reconstitution efforts as directed.
- To coordinate tactical airlift, with the help of the CMCC's plans, programs, and operations division, which validates and commits aviation assets allocated for logistic support.



REAR COMMAND POST



ORGANIZATION

ORGANIZED INTO THREE CELLS

DCG C2 Cell (Jump TOC). The DCG C2 Cell (Jump TOC) functions are to provide command, control, communications, and intelligence to the REAR CP. It is composed of the following cells:

- Command Group
- G2 Cell
- G3 Cell
- Air Defense Cell
- G6/Signal Cell

Force Protection Cell. The Force Protection Cell's functions are to provide intelligence support, plan and conduct rear security operations, terrain management, movement within the Corps Rear Area (CRA), and monitor sustainment. The Force Protection Cell's main function is synchronized by the 142d ROC with the help of the following cells:

- Fire Support Cell
- Engineer Cell
- Chemical Cell
- Air Defense Cell
- 89th MP LNO

REAR Sustainment Cell. The Sustainment Cell's function is to collect, analyze, and provide Combat Service Support (CSS) situation information, analysis, and courses of action. These functions are provided by the following cells:

- Corps G1/AG Cell
- Corps G4 Cell
- CARTY G1/G4 Cell
- Corps Surgeon Cell
- Corps Chaplain Cell
- Corps Staff Judge Advocate Cell
- Corps Inspector General
- Corps G5 Cell



REAR COMMAND POST



PERSONNEL

CMD GRP

DEP COS
OPS SGT
EXECUTIVE ADMIN ASST
RCP SGM

DEP CORPS COMMANDER
AIDE-DE-CAMP
DRIVER

G3

DAY SHIFT

OPS OFFICER
OPS NCO
FSE OPS OFF
CTD OP

NIGHT SHIFT

OPS OFFICER
OPS NCO
FSE OPS NCO
CTD OP

REAR COMMAND POST

CONFIGURATION

- Standard Configuration (REAR CP): The standard configuration (Figure 1) is utilized when the Corps employs its three command posts during tactical operations. This is the most common CP configuration. In this configuration, the REAR CP has all its assigned elements and is able to perform all of its assigned duties. In the standard configuration, the III Corps G6/Signal Cell provides communications for the REAR CP DCG C2 Cell (Jump TOC) only. The 13th COSCOM G6 provides communications for the Force Protection Cell and Sustainment Cell of the REAR CP.

Standard RCP Configuration

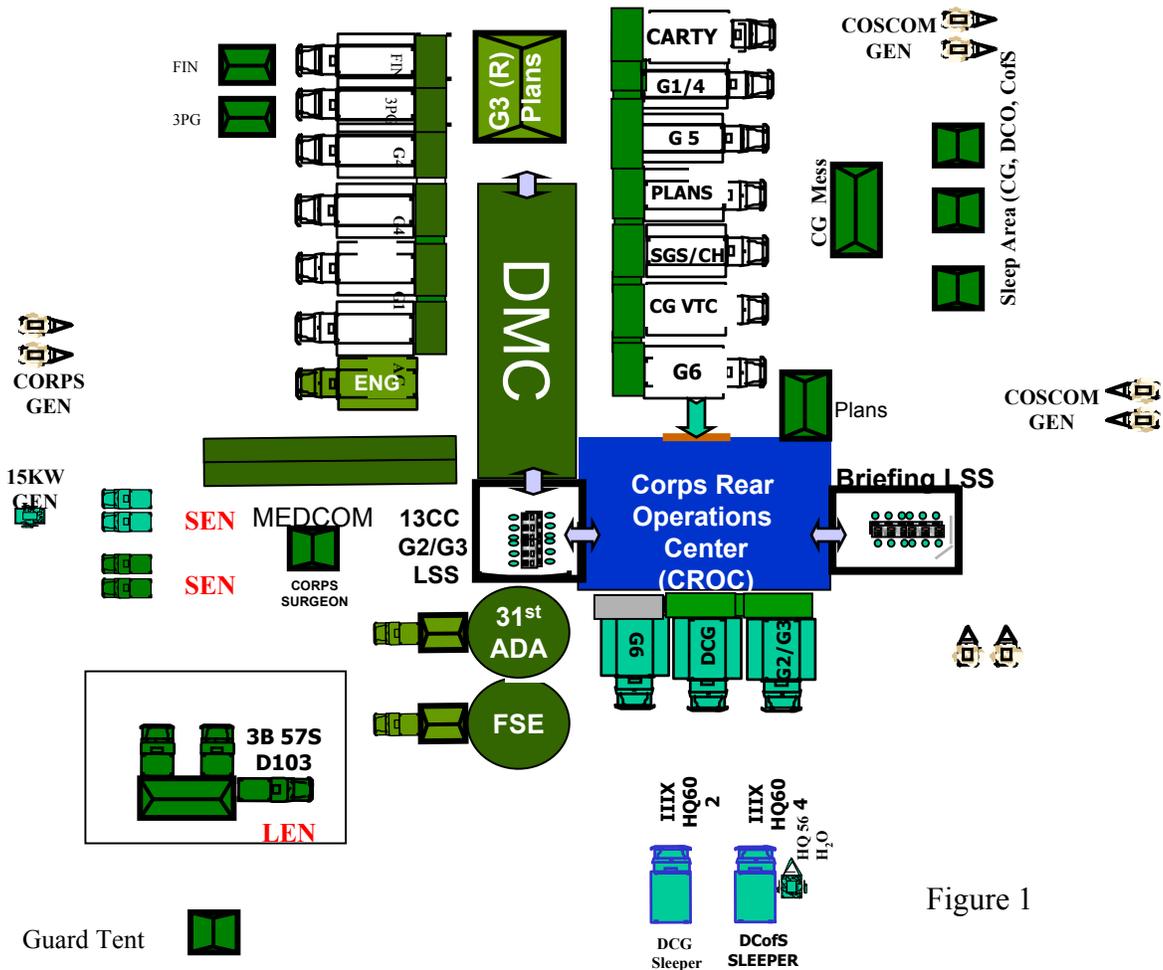


Figure 1

CONFIGURATION Cont.

- DCG C2 Jump TOC: The DCG C2 Jump TOC command post configuration (Figure 2) is utilized when the corps has the requirement to rapidly deploy a command post with the capability to control corps level operations such as a river crossing or other missions directed by the CG, III Corps. The DCG C2 Jump TOC detaches and deploys forward, while Force Protection and Sustainment cells remain in place.

DCG C2 Jump TOC Configuration

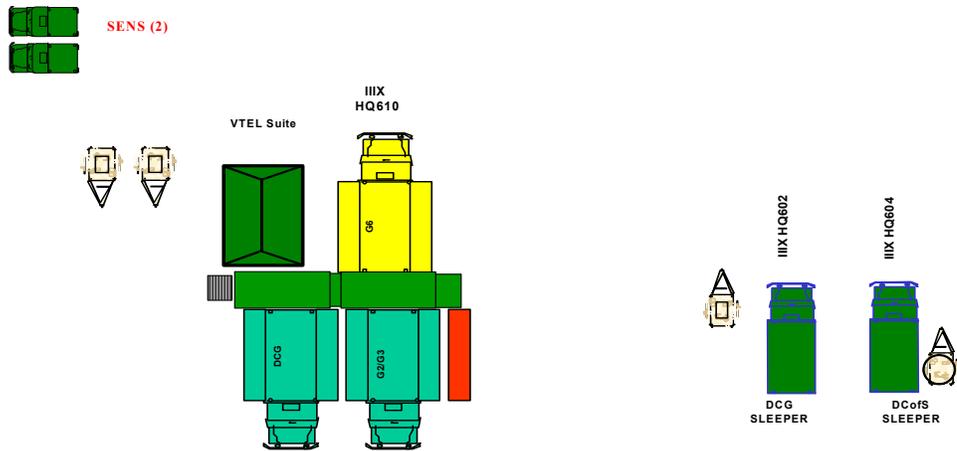
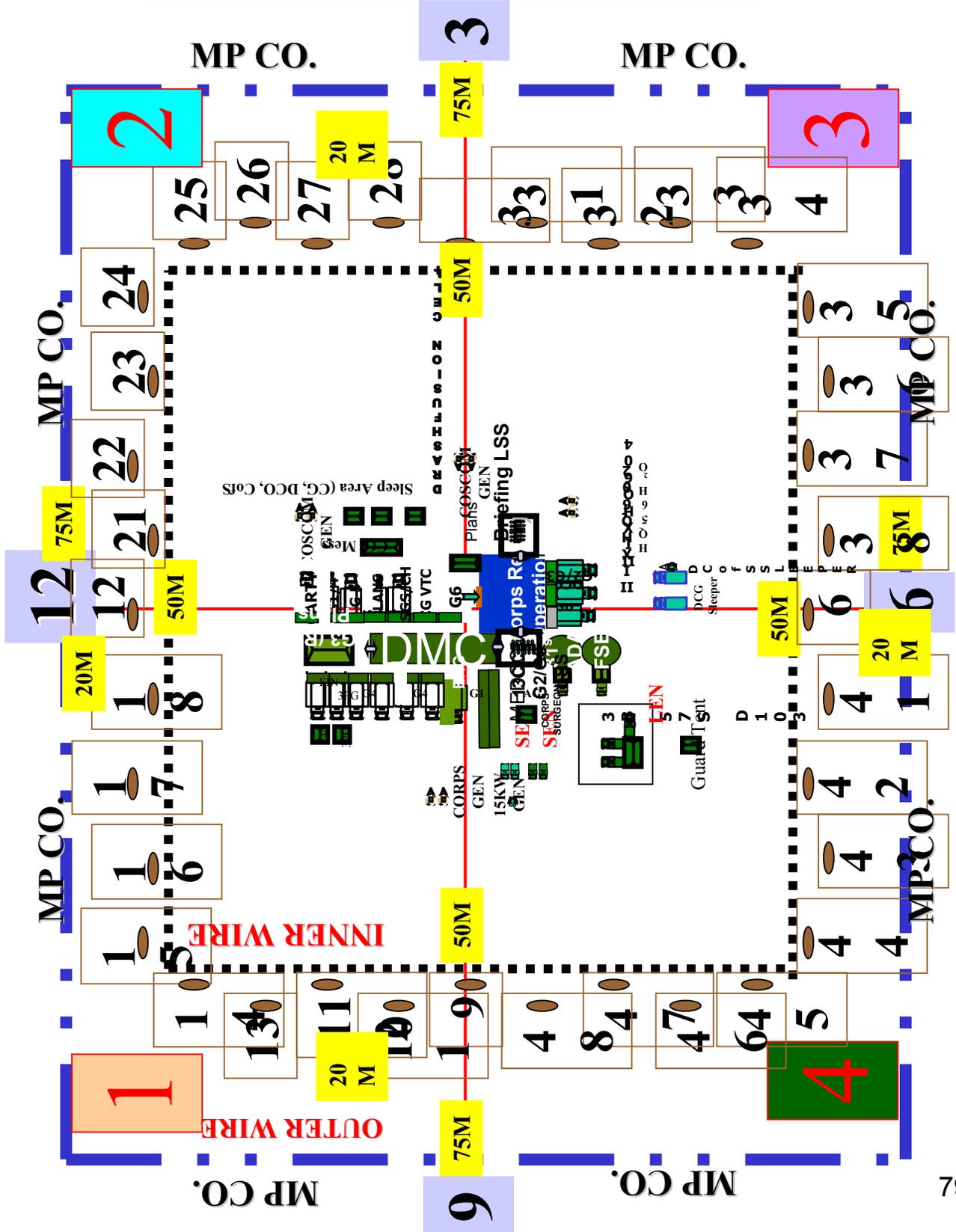


Figure 2



REAR COMMAND POST

Basic Security Plan





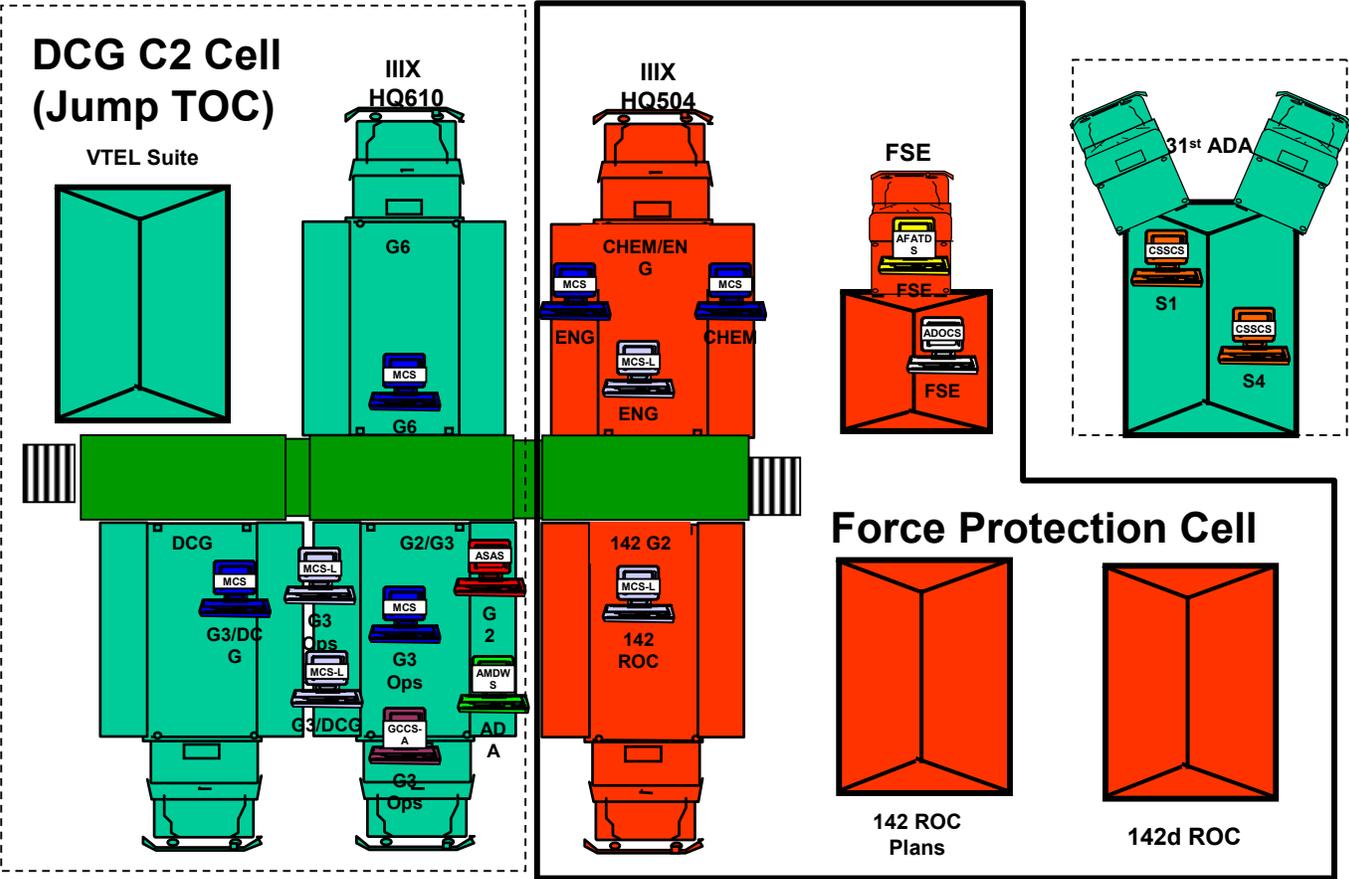
REAR COMMAND POST



ATCCS SYSTEMS

RCP ATCCS Architecture

The REAR CP is equipped with Army Tactical Command and Control Systems (ATCCS) which allow it to communicate digitally to higher, lower, and adjacent headquarters (MCS, AFATDS, AMDWS, ASAS, CSSCS, and CSSTSS). Additionally, the REAR CP is equipped with the Global Command and Control System-Army (GCCS-A) and Global Command and Control System-Korea (GCCS-K) (GCCS-K is used only in the Korean Theater) which allows it to communicate to higher headquarters digitally.



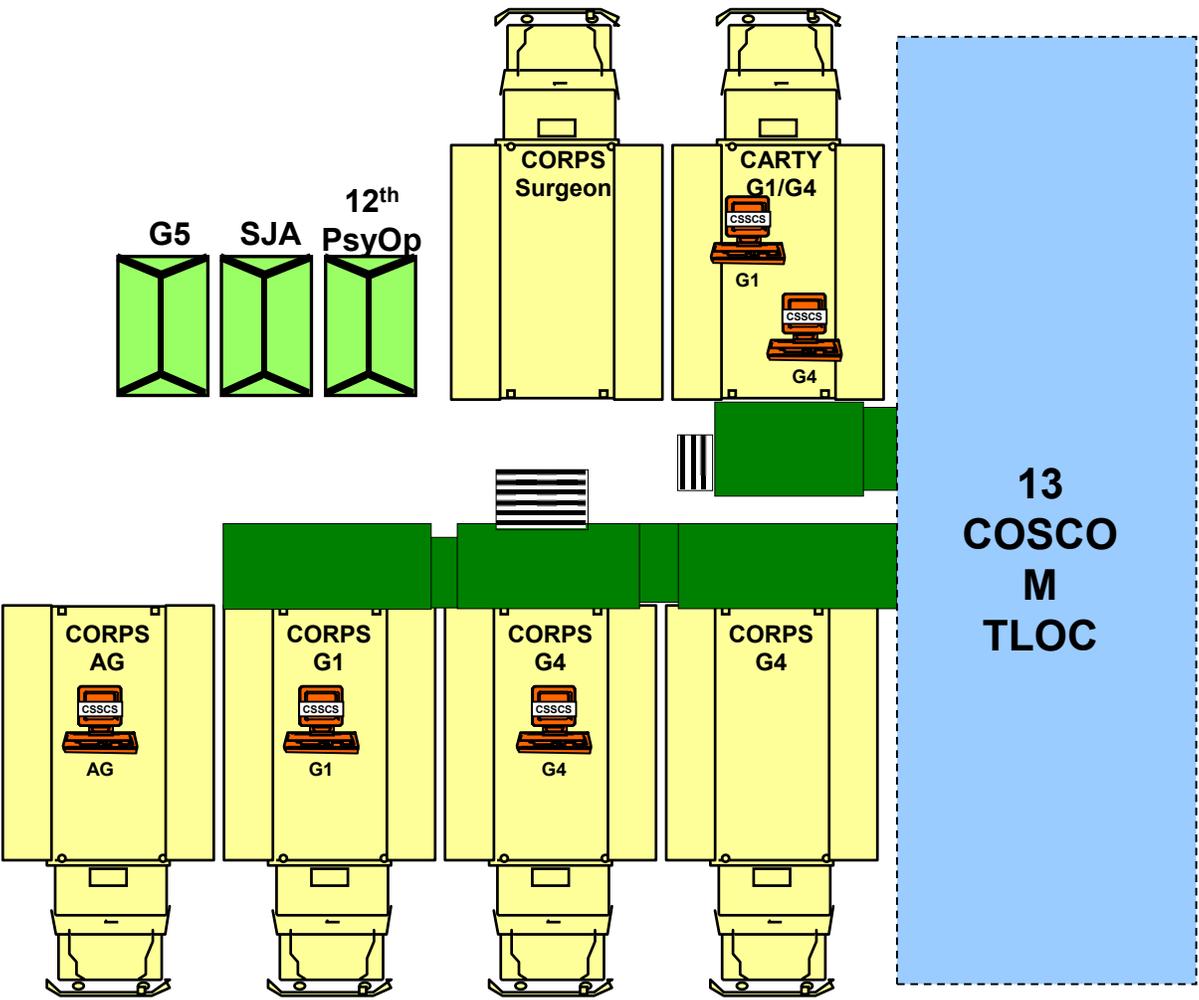


REAR COMMAND POST



ATCCS SYSTEMS Cont.

RCP ATCCS Architecture





REAR COMMAND POST C4I ASSETS IN CORPS REAR



	MCS LITE (4)	ASAS (2)	AMDWS (1)	AFATDS (1)	ADOCS (1)	CSSCS (10)	VTC (3)	ILAN (15)	TACLAN (85)	DNVT (89)	FM (4)	S/C TACSAT (8)
DCG VAN	/	/	/	/	/	/	1 (1)	/	/	2 (2)	/	/
DCG SLEEPER VAN	/	/	/	/	/	/	/	0 (1)	/	0 (1)	/	/
DCofS SLEEPER VAN	/	/	/	/	/	/	/	0 (1)	/	0 (1)	/	/
G2/G3 VAN	/	/	/	/	/	/	/	/	/	/	1 (1)	/
G6 VAN	/	/	/	/	/	/	/	1 (1)	4 (4)	2 (2)	/	/
C-REAR OPS CTR	2 (2)	1 (1)	1 (1)	1 (1)	1 (1)	/	0 (1)	/	14 (16)	14 (16)	1 (1)	1 (1)
TLOC	1 (1)	1 (1)	/	/	/	8 (10)	1 (1)	12 (12)	0 (60)	0 (60)	2 (2)	2 (2)
G1/G4	/	/	/	/	/	4 (5)	/	7 (7)	6 (6)	/	/	/
ENG/CHEM	1 (1)	/	/	/	/	/	/	/	1 (1)	1 (1)	/	/



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS

- The Deputy Commanding General (DCG) will exercise command of the Corps Sustainment Area. III Corps conducts sustaining operations with a Corps Sustainment Area Command. It consists of the DCG, Rear CP staff, Corps Rear Operations Center (C-ROC), Rear Area Operations Centers (RAOCs), and units with specified sustainment area missions (13th COSCOM subordinate commanders, Level II threat response forces (RF), Level III tactical combat force (TCF), bases and base clusters. Unless otherwise established by the DCG, the Corps Support Group commanders will exercise command and control of subordinate areas of operation (AO) in the III Corps Sustainment Area with RAOCs in direct support to facilitate this mission. The Corps Sustainment Area Commander (DCG) and subordinate commanders in the CSA coordinate operations to defeat or neutralize any sustainment area threat by proactive planning, a THREATCON system, CSA Reconnaissance & Surveillance (R&S) Plan, base/ base cluster defense measures, response forces, and economy of force operations to ensure the Corps' freedom of maneuver and continuity of operations. The Corps normally uses phase lines and boundaries to shift responsibilities for terrain between divisions, the CSA and Elements above Corps (EAC) command.
- The RCP consists of personnel and equipment from each of the Corps staff directorates and normally is co-located with the 13 COSCOM's Tactical Logistics Operations Center (TLOC). The RCP is organized into three cells: a Command and Control (C2) cell; a Force Protection Cell; and a Sustainment Cell, which is integrated into the TLOC. Personnel from the RCP and TLOC man the Corps Rear Operations Center.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

The Corps Rear CP and COSCOM TLOC form a combined fusion cell IAW DCG guidance, the Corps Rear Operation Center (C-ROC). The C-ROC provides a common operating picture of the III Corps battle space and synchronize logistical operations and sustainment functions to support the III Corps fight.

Enablers

- MCS – Maneuver Control System
- ASAS – All Source Analysis System
- CSSCS – Combat Service Support Control System
- MTS – Movement Tracking System
- AMDWS – Air and Missile Defense Workstation
- AFATDS – Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System

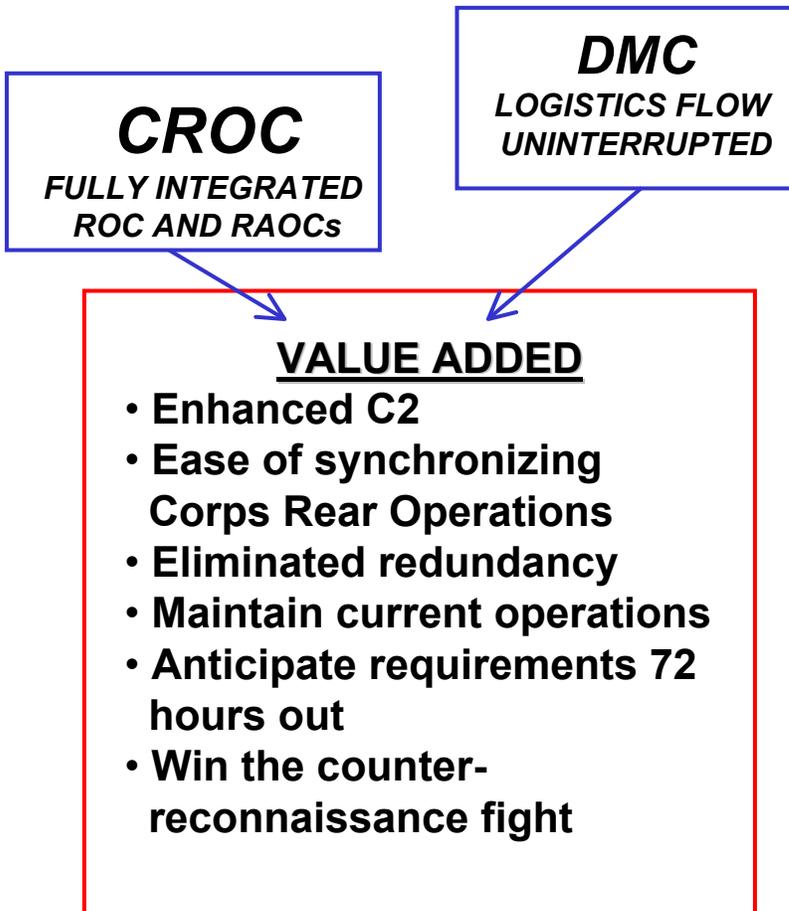


REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

Integrated Corps Rear



Synchronizing Operations In the Corps Rear Area



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

Single Operations Focus for all Rear Operations

- Common Operational Picture
- Situational awareness
- Aggressive counter reconnaissance operations
- Dominate rear area fight
- Postured to assume control of the Corps fight
- Enhanced dissemination of combat and logistic information

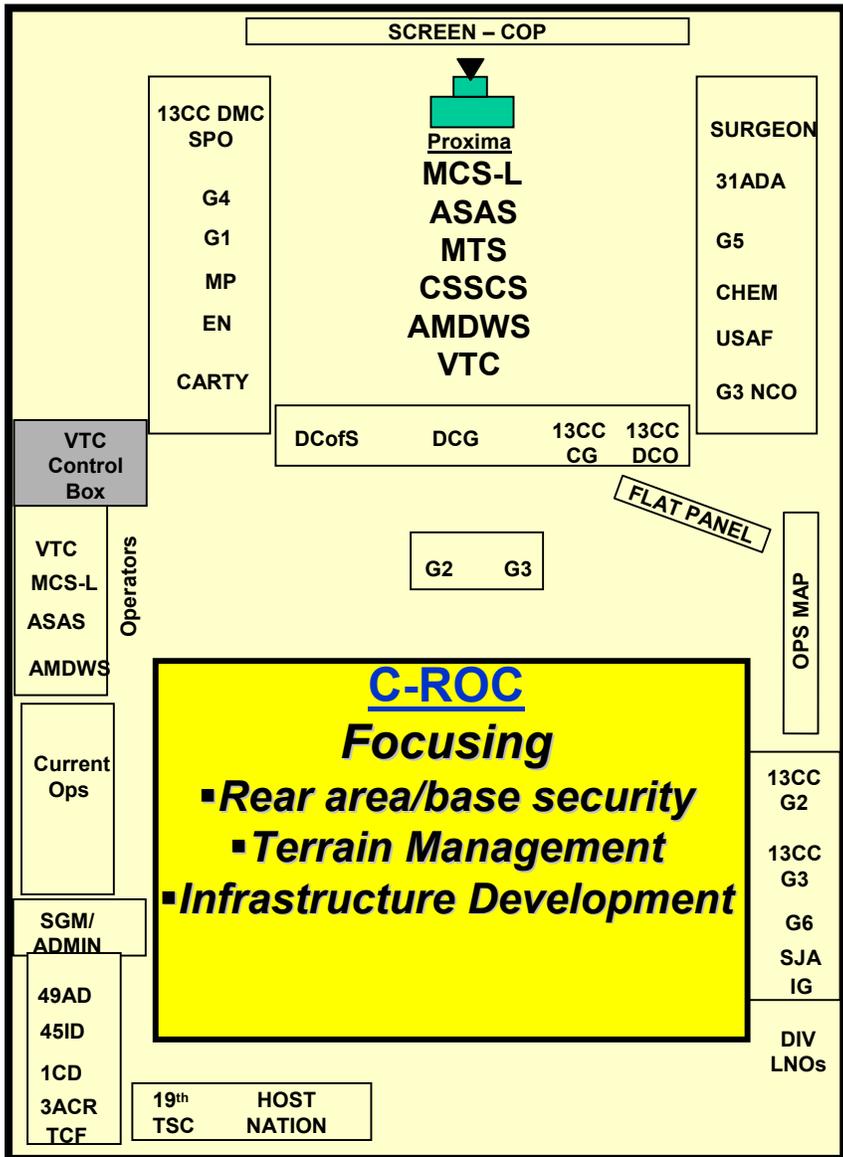


REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

Corps Rear Operations Center Layout



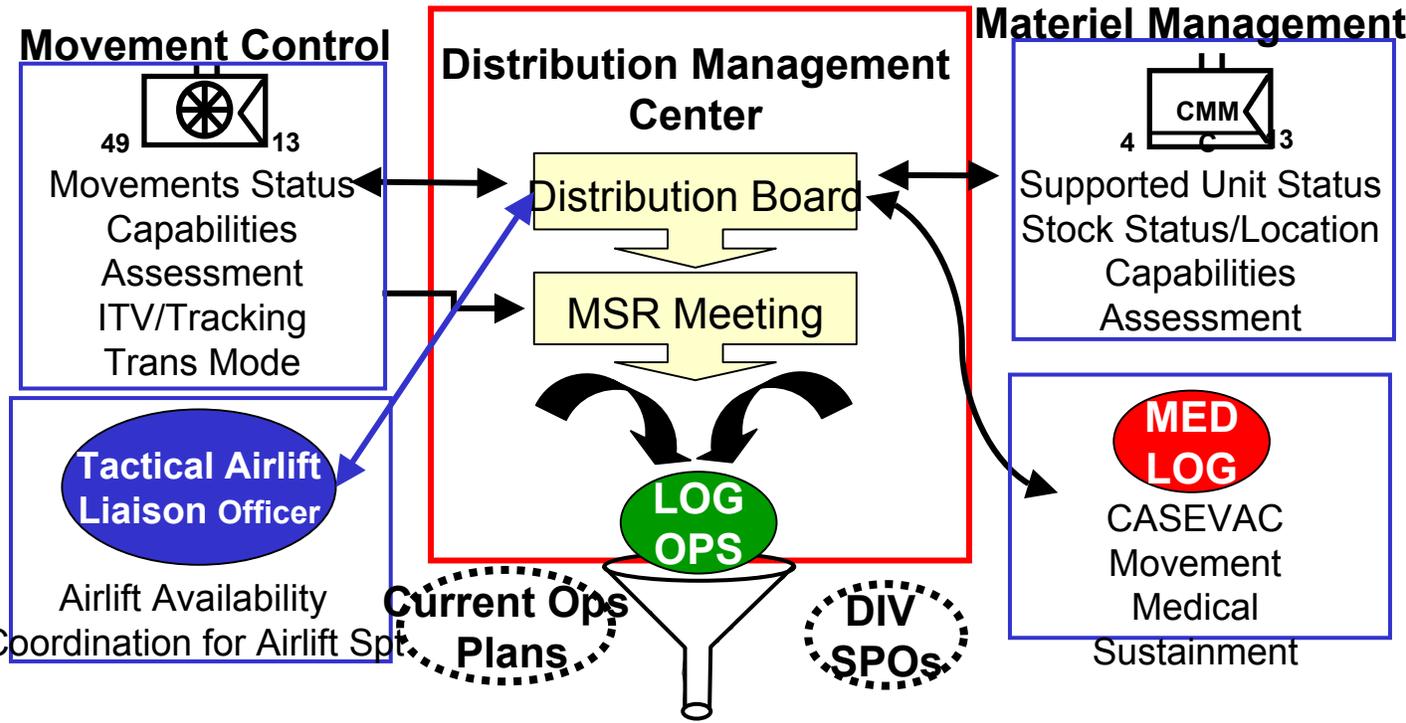


REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

Distribution Management Center Process



Distribution Matrix
 Single most important product of the DMC. Synchronizes requirements and capabilities 24-72 hours out. This product allows maximum use of all forms of transportation.

Supply + Transportation = Distribution



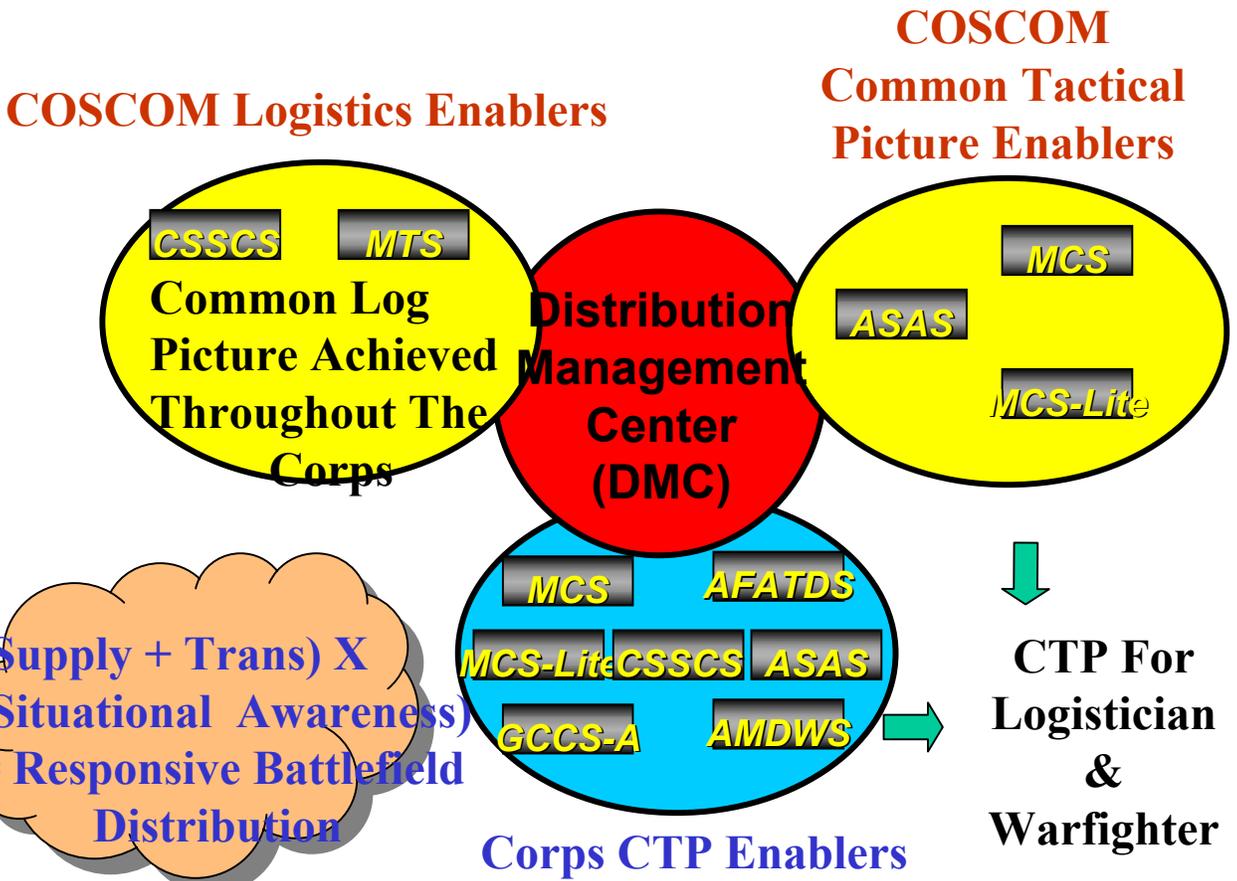
REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

Corps Integrated Rear

Gain and Exploit Information Superiority



Situational Awareness X (Supply + Transportation) = Effective Sustainment



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

SUSTAINMENT

The DCG directs sustainment operations in the Corps Sustainment Area. The Corps Sustainment cell is responsible for planning, directing, and integrating sustainment activities in the Corps. A key player is the Commander, 13th COSCOM. COSCOM's priority mission is to maintain and support the Corps. In the absence of the DCG, 13 COSCOM commander or a commander designated by the CG, III Corps, assumes control of the CSA. Sustainment success is measured by the ability to generate combat power at the decisive time and place for mission accomplishment. Sustainment actions consist of those that man, arm, fuel, transport and fix the forces.

The Sustainment Cell. The Rear CP establishes a Corps Sustainment Cell, integrated into the COSCOM TLOC for synergy, consisting of elements of the following agencies:

ACofS,G1. Coordinates those measures to man the force. Inclusive in this section are AG, Finance, JAG, Surgeon, and Chaplain.

ACofS,G4. Plans and coordinates, in coordination with 13th COSCOM, those actions that arm, fuel and fix the force.

ACofS,G5. Coordinates host nation support such as civilian labor and supplies.

13th COSCOM. 13th COSCOM establishes a separate distinct headquarters, the Tactical Logistics Operations Center (TLOC) that is normally co-located with the Rear CP.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

SUSTAINMENT Cont.

SUSTAINMENT SYNCHRONIZATION.

The CSS cell integrates transportation of sustainment activities in coordination with the MCC at 13th COSCOM. This includes:

- The distribution of supplies and material from the Corps Support Area (CSA) to the DSAs and return.
- The delivery of throughput supplies to the BSAs.
- The fusion of the ABCS systems is captured at the 13 COSCOM TLOC (Distribution Management Center) and the Corps Rear CP.
- Terrain Management. The G3 designates general unit locations as part of the OPLAN. The Rear Operations Center (ROC) deconflicts terrain in the Corps Sustainment Area ICW the RAOC to maximize support and minimize the threat. CSS units are positioned with consideration given to:
 - LOCs, in order to facilitate the transfer of supplies to the main battle area and assist in the return of damaged equipment. Examples are roads, waterways and rail lines.
 - Resources which aid in the repair of equipment. Examples are electricity, hardstand and structures.
 - Security and defensive capabilities.

Critical Sustainment Cell Tasks.

- Analyze the commander's concept and intent and develop an integrated sustainment plan to support that intent.
- Recommend positions for CSS units to the ROC where they can best support the command.
- Identify to the ROC the critical CSS facilities and movements that require priority protection.
- Develop a CSS support plan and coordinate CSS support for units in the CSA.
- Monitor and report the status of sustainment operations within the Corps.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

MOVEMENTS

The 49th MCB de-conflicts movements in coordination with the Corps Sustainment Area Sustainment Cell and the CTO as required; recommends use of host nation (HN), and/or inter-service lift capabilities to support the corps commander's scheme of maneuver. The G3 establishes movement priorities via OPLANs, OPORDs, and FRAGOs. Movements are divided into two categories:

- Tactical movements of combat units to include their logistical tail.
- Sustainment movements of all other types.

Tactical movements normally receive priority over all others.

SYNCHRONIZATION OPERATIONS.

- The G3 plans, prioritizes and directs all movements in coordination with the Corps Rear CP (Force Protection and Sustainment Cells), CTO, MCC, and the Commander, 89th MP Brigade. The Commander, 13th COSCOM is responsible to coordinate sustainment movement with the same agencies.

- The G3 at the Main CP, in coordination with the Rear CP, is responsible for directing the movement of tactical units through or within the Corps sustainment area. The 49th MCB is responsible for ensuring that sustainment movements do not conflict with tactical movements. The Corps Sustainment Area Sustainment Cell is responsible for planning sustainment of tactical movements within the corps rear.

- The G4 prioritizes sustainment movements

- The 49th MCB coordinates and controls movements within the Corps sustainment area. The 49th MCB tracks all convoys in the corps sustainment area and provides information to the CTO and others as appropriate. Additionally, the CTO monitors the status of LOCs in the Corps area of operations.

- The 89th MP BDE regulates and enforces movement along all routes based upon priorities established in compliance with the corps commander's intent.

- Route Selection. The G3 is responsible for route selection, and approves routes based on recommendations of the CTO and G4. Primary and alternate routes are identified. Routes are chosen to sustain heavy traffic (60 class or better) in all weather conditions, avoid congestion, choke points, and facilitate expeditious delivery of supplies to the corps rear and DSAs. Additionally, selected routes should avoid conflict with tactical maneuver plans.

- The ROC Plans Section coordinates, plans for route maintenance and area damage control with the 420th Engineer BDE and 460th Chemical BDE, through the RCP's Engineer/Chemical Liaison section.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

TERRAIN MANAGEMENT

The Corps sustainment area (CSA) is established by the G3. The overriding goal of terrain management is to enhance the Corps' combat power and facilitate current and future operations. The ROC, ICW the Sustainment Cell, positions units based on the Corps' mission, concept of operations and the commander's intent. Combat support units with a higher level of combat capability (such as MPs and engineers) normally position where they can control key terrain or improve the defensive capability of key bases and base clusters within the corps area. IPB, missions and nature of specific units are also factors.

ORGANIZATION.

- The Rear Operations Center (ROC), through its subordinate RAOCs, plans, coordinates and controls terrain management in the Corps Rear Area including designation of base and base cluster commanders.
- The Corps Rear Area is subdivided in subordinate areas of operation (AOs). Subordinate AOs are geographic areas of responsibility in the CSA normally assigned to the Corps Support Group (CSG) commanders by the Commander, 13th COSCOM for the purposes of terrain management and security. One Military Police battalion normally positions within each subordinate AO, conducting the full range of MP operations, to include Mobility and Maneuver Support (MMS) and generation of response forces to Level II threats. The subordinate AO commander is responsible for the coordination and execution in their subordinate AO of the terrain management plan established by the ROC. The subordinate AO normally corresponds to that of the CSG in the same subordinate AO. The MP battalion HQ and the CSG HQ should be located in close proximity to each other.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

TERRAIN MANAGEMENT Cont.

ORGANIZATION.

- Rear Area Operation Centers (RAOCs) operate in Direct Support (DS) to the CSA subordinate AO commanders, providing interface with the ROC and base/base cluster commanders for terrain management as well as security. RAOCs begin Terrain Management during the RSOI process. RAOCs provide the subordinate AO Commander the initial list of units and elements populating the subordinate AO, and constantly update that list based on arrivals and departures of units from the subordinate AO. Base and Base Cluster commanders are subordinate to the CSA subordinate AO commander.

- Bases.

- A base contains units which are located in a geographically small, defensible area, with a contiguous perimeter and established access controls. CS and CSS units are normally grouped together to enhance security. RAOCs assist subordinate AO CDRs in establishing bases using METT-TC analysis. Medical units will not be collocated with units that may be priority enemy targets. Collocated units should complement one another's strengths and weaknesses. RAOCs work closely with CSA commanders in this task due to the CSA commander's command relationship with the COSCOM commander. However, the CSA Commander is the final authority on base location and configuration.

- Units are positioned to form multi-unit bases. Bases have defensible perimeters, entry/exit points, and share responsibilities for security. Like units are not positioned together. CPs will maintain base data on type of unit, personnel strength, major weapons.

- Base Commander. The base commander is designated by the subordinate AO commander. Medical commanders may not serve (AR 600-20) as base commanders. Avoid Group and higher HQ commanders. The Base Commander positions all units located in his AO.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

TERRAIN MANAGEMENT Cont.

ORGANIZATION cont.

- Base Clusters. Base and Base Cluster commanders are subordinate to the CSA commander for sustaining operations. Normal unit mission guidance and prioritization remain the responsibility of each unit's parent command.

- Base clusters do not have a defined perimeter or established access points. They rely on mutual support between bases to enhance security. Mutual support is obtained through sharing Reaction Force's interlocking fires (if possible), integrated patrolling and surveillance. The base cluster is normally the next higher tactical command and control headquarters of a designated base, and passes information, THREATCON status, and Base Defense Status reports.

- Base Cluster Commander (BCC) is normally the senior commander with a staff capable of establishing a base cluster operation center (BCOC). The BCC, through the BCOC, interfaces with the RAOC for sustainment and movement information, terrain management, and security planning and execution. Commander's responsibilities include:

- Forming and equipping the BCOC.

- Preparing the base cluster defense plan and

providing a copy to the RAOC. These plans should be completed 12 hours prior to initial occupations of the base cluster, and updated as required due to any significant arrivals or departures in the base cluster commanders AO.

- Coordinating response force operations.

- Coordinating mutual support of subordinate bases.

- Adjusting the base cluster THREATCON ICW the

RAOC.

- Hospitals and other medical units in the sustainment area must be incorporated into a base cluster tasked with providing the medical unit with security. Positioning them near possible enemy target priorities such as Class V supply points must not aggravate the threat to medical units.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

TERRAIN MANAGEMENT Cont.

Synchronization. Effective centralized terrain management prevents conflicts, aids security integration, enhances survivability, and improves OPSEC; it requires detailed IPB-supported METT-TC analysis. The G3 positions maneuver assets in general locations based on the concept of operations. Then, in coordination with COSCOM and other MSCs, the ROC positions all other units in the CSA including Corps, echelons above Corps, Joint Service and Host Nation units.

- Security integration. Units will employ mutual security where possible. Positioning will take advantage of terrain that:

- Provides cover and concealment.
- Provides obstacles to enemy movement.
- Avoids key or decisive terrain.
- Enables early enemy detection.
- Avoids enemy air and ground avenues of approach.

- Based on the tactical situation or direction from the G3, the ROC, ICW the Sustainment Cell, directs the repositioning of units within the corps' sustainment area. The appropriate RAOCs coordinate and monitor repositioning. Directed relocations should be coordinated with the affected unit's higher headquarters to ensure continuity of mission accomplishment.

- Units entering or desiring to relocate within the corps' sustainment area must coordinate first with the ROC for handoff to appropriate RAOC and then to a Base or Base Cluster commander. The RAOC ensures their desired locations do not conflict with current or projected sustaining operations positioning or movement priorities. Conflicts that the Sustainment Area CP cannot resolve are referred to the CSA Commander (DCG) for resolution.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

TERRAIN MANAGEMENT Cont.

Synchronization cont.

- Units undergoing reconstitution may be committed before the planned reconstitution is complete. The Sustainment Area CP, with the G3, positions these units where the force can best achieve the reconstitution effort and where the units, or portions thereof (such as fire support assets), can be employed in support of rear and/or close operations if necessary.

- The ROC, through the G5, must coordinate with HN authorities to ensure that corps and HN facilities and/or unit positioning are not in conflict and are integrated in the overall concept of operations.

- NBC Considerations. Detection and dispersion are the critical NBC defense actions. NBC attacks are reported on both tactical and technical nets.

TERRAIN MANAGEMENT PROCESS

Step #1. Units to be positioned in CRA submit proposed location grids to ROC.

Step #2. ROC plots, deconflicts, repositions, approves and publishes unit location IAW:

- a. Corps Mission, Concept of operations and Corps Commander's intent
- b. Rear IPB
- c. Subordinate unit mission
- d. Considerations of units being positioned

Step #3. Subordinate AO commanders designate Base(s)/ Base Cluster(s) Commanders.

Step #4. ROC coordinates handover of unit to appropriate RAOC.

Step #5. Base/ Base Cluster Commanders further position units in their AO.

Step #6. RAOC. Confirms unit locations, identifies and reports units not designated as part of a base or base cluster and deconflicts as necessary.

Step #7. Prior to units departing the CRA, a movement report is sent to the RAOC to prevent disruption of security plans. RAOC updates ROC as necessary.

Step #8. Units required to or requesting reposition from current base / base cluster begin with step #1 of the terrain management process.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

FORCE PROTECTION

III Corps conducts sustainment area security operations as an economy of force measure. The Force Protection Cell, led by the ROC Chief, synchronizes sustainment area security. Most units operate from self-defended bases. MP units conduct area reconnaissance and surveillance, and should detect, report, and engage threats before a base becomes involved. The base/base cluster response force (normally MP with augmenting fires) deals with threats beyond a base's capability (Level II) and, the Tactical Combat Force (TCF) defeats larger threats (Level III).

REAR IPB.

- The rear area IPB focuses primarily on enemy air, air mobile, and air assault, SOF, CI, and terrorist threats. IPB is a continuous process and depends largely upon the results of the reconnaissance and surveillance collection efforts.

- Rear area protection priorities. The Force Protection Cell develops and maintains a priority protection list for the Corps Sustainment Area (CSA). Protection priorities are based on criticality, vulnerability, recuperability, and likelihood of targeting by the enemy. The DCG decides where to accept risk based upon forces available. The Force Protection Cell prioritizes the requests and incorporates them into the consolidated base/base cluster defense plan ICW the Rear G2.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

FORCE PROTECTION Cont.

RECONNAISSANCE AND SURVEILLANCE. All CSA units and activities contribute to the overall counter-reconnaissance effort in the CSA. Collection assets use the SALUTE format to pass information through the tactical chain of command, through the RAOCs, to the ROC for evaluation, dissemination and action. RAOCs are the focal point. The Subordinate AO Threat Condition (THREATCON) determines the reconnaissance and surveillance priorities (including NAI designations), based upon the CSA IPB. Reconnaissance and surveillance operations will be proactive in nature in order to detect and defeat the enemy, preventing the enemy from impacting the corps' sustainment operations.

CSA THREATCON. The ROC recommends to the CSA commander (DCG) THREATCON changes based on enemy capabilities, actions, sightings, and assessments of terrorist factors. The letter codes below communicates the THREATCON level:

- The letter indicates overall threat to sustainment area based on IPB, past and present enemy actions and sightings.

- ALPHA - CAPABLE, BUT NO SIGHTING/ACTIVITY
- BRAVO - INDICATORS OF ENEMY IN AREA
- CHARLIE - SIGHTINGS AND/OR ENEMY ACTIVITY IN AREA
- DELTA - ENEMY ATTACK IMMINENT



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

FORCE PROTECTION Cont.

THREAT RESPONSE LEVELS. The intent of threat response levels is to maintain sustainment operations, prevent the premature commitment of the TCF, and to keep MBA forces in the fight.

- LEVEL I: Those threats that can be defeated by base or base cluster self-defense measures. Examples of possible Level I threats are agents, saboteurs, partisans, terrorist groups, and tactical units of less than platoon size.

- Level II: Those threats which are beyond base or base cluster self-defense capabilities but which can be defeated by response forces, usually MP or other available forces with supporting fires. Bases and base clusters must be able to delay Level II threats until the arrival of a response force. Level II threats could reasonably include small tactical units no greater than company size, particularly unconventional warfare forces whose primary tasks are covert reconnaissance and sabotage missions to disrupt operations. This type of threat may use stand-off weapons or infiltration and employ a variety of weapons and techniques to accomplish its objectives. It possesses sufficient combat power to engage in combat with friendly defense forces if necessary to accomplish its mission. However, these enemy forces normally operate covertly in small groups, avoiding detection to increase their probability of success.

- LEVEL III. Those threats that necessitate the command decision to commit a combined arms TCF to defeat them. Level III threats normally include larger tactical military units, generally greater than company size, resulting from overt enemy heliborne, airborne, amphibious, or ground-force operations. A Level III threat will probably target several friendly rear elements as part of a larger, coordinated plan rather than as individual or separate entities. The Corps Commander is the authority to employ the TCF. Authority to employ the TCF in an active or passive mission may be delegated to the DCG in advance. Once the TCF is employed, all units involved in actions against Level III threats become OPCON to the commander of the TCF. The concept of operation is normally to fix the enemy with a response force and defeat it with the TCF.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

FORCE PROTECTION Cont.

COMMAND AND CONTROL. The DCG exercises tactical command and control over bases and base clusters (through the ROC and RAOCs), and the CSA Sub-Areas (through the COSCOM), and, when committed, OPCON of the TCF.

- ROC:
 - Develops integrated CSA security plan.
 - Approves and coordinates obstacle plans.
 - Develops CSA fire support plan ICW the Corps Artillery LNO or FSE in the RCP.
 - Provides continual CSA mission (METT-TC) analysis.
 - Provides continual THREATCON/Info to subordinate CSA Subordinate AO commanders.
 - Maintains a prioritized list of critical assets (CSA “protection priorities”).
 - Analyzes, locates and groups units into bases.
 - Recommends base clusters.

- Subordinate AO Commanders:
 - For the purposes of security, provide command and control of Corps Sustainment Area subordinate AO as established by ROC/Corps Sustainment Area Operations center and current OPOD.
 - Review and approve base/base cluster defense plans.
 - Disseminate Fire Support Information.
 - Continually provide THREATCON and information to units within their AO.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

FORCE PROTECTION Cont.

COMMAND AND CONTROL cont.

- Assume OPCON of base/base cluster response forces to defeat Level II threat or disrupt Level III threat pending employment of TCF.
- Conduct Area security operations including:
 - (a) Security for designated critical assets.
 - (b) Counter incursion operations.
 - (c) Position response forces within the CSA.
 - (d) Recommend to the ROC positioning of available Fire Support Assets.
 - (e) Assist base and base cluster commanders in developing defense plans.
 - (f) Develop plans for the coordinated employment of the base cluster and response forces.
 - (g) Coordinate through the supporting RAOC and then disseminate Fire Support Plans, as required. Fire support assets will normally require trained observers or controllers, although Field Artillery Fire Direction Centers can accept missions from untrained observers, and tactical aircraft can operate under Emergency Close Air Support (ECAS) conditions. Special consideration must be given to where trained observers or controllers will come from when required. The Fire Support Element assigned to the TCF may be able to provide short-term trained observers.
 - (h) Coordinate and conduct rear battle handover to the TCF when employed.
 - (i) Using RAOC to:
 - (1) Establish communications interface with ROC and base/base clusters.
 - (2) Coordinate Battle Handover.
 - (3) Assist in conduct of all Security Operations.
 - (j) Provide DS (sustainment) to TCF until mission completion.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

FORCE PROTECTION Cont.

COMMANDER, 89TH MP BRIGADE:

- In coordination with ROC and the CSA Subordinate AO commanders, designates and assigns AOs to subordinate battalion commanders, in order to provide response forces to detect and defeat Level II threats or delay Level III threats within their AOs.

- Provide additional MP support in accordance with Corps Commander's priorities and intent.

BASE DEFENSE. Each base is responsible for developing threat detection and defeat measures and including them in their Defense Plan. Base Cluster Commanders and Base Commanders not under a base cluster commander provide copies of their defense plans to the supporting RAOC for review and consideration as the RAOCs develop and refine their Subordinate AO R&S plans. RAOCs submit base/base cluster defense plans and R&S plans to the ROC for consolidation. Any significant arrival or departure from a base or base cluster should trigger a review and possible update of these plans. Base and base cluster commanders provide initial defense plans 12 hours (or ASAP) prior to occupation and provide updates to their RAOC every 12 hours. Spot Reports and SITREPS go to the RAOC as required. Base commanders will use both active and passive OPSEC measures to include:

- Train and rehearse personnel in base defense procedures.
- Organize an internal base defense force.
- Recommend movement or repositioning of base as required.
- Coordinate mutual support with nearby bases.
- Coordinate response force operations.
- Adjust base defense as the THREATCON changes.
- Determine and reports Base Defense Status to the supporting RAOC.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

FORCE PROTECTION Cont.

BASE DEFENSE cont.

- Base/Base Cluster Defense Status (BDS). The BDS indicates the status of a base defense. It consists of a color and number combination:

- Color (GREEN, AMBER, RED) indicates the degree of development of base defense to defeat Level I threats and disrupt Level II threats.

GREEN = FULLY CAPABLE

AMBER = PARTIALLY CAPABLE

RED = NOT CAPABLE

- Number indicates ratio of assets allocated to force protection versus assigned mission priorities.

1 = $\leq 10\%$ force protection / 90% mission

2 = $\leq 20\%$ force protection / 80% mission

3 = $\leq 50\%$ force protection / 50% mission

4 = $> 50\%$ force protection / 0% mission

- Active Security Measures taken by Base and Base Cluster commanders should include:

- Establishing overwatching LP/ OP's for base. Note: as a minimum, every base will continually man sufficient LP/ OP's to provide early warning and visual security for the base defense operations center.

- Preparing crew served weapons and individual positions.

- Obstacle planning and emplacement, after coordination with the RAOC.

- Planning and adjusting observed indirect fires. [Note: Harassment & Interdiction (H&I) fires and unobserved fires III Corps Sustainment Area are normally prohibited.]

- Planning and Conducting recon and security patrols.

- Reacting to air, NBC, and indirect fire attacks.

- Implementing Area Damage Control (ADC) measures.

- Establish, maintain and rehearse base reaction forces.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

FORCE PROTECTION Cont.

BASE DEFENSE cont.

- Base Commanders form and activate their own Base Defense Operations Center (BDOC). The BDOC links the Base with the RAOC and operates 24 hours daily in support of tactical chain of command. It plans, coordinates and supervises base defense operations to ensure force protection. The Base Commander may draw personnel and equipment from own and tenant units to resource the BDOC for 24-hour operations. These are the BDOC Tasks:

- (1) Define base perimeter and sector responsibilities.
- (2) Establish wire communications, to include LP/ Ops.
- (3) Change defenses based on THREATCON.
- (4) Keep commander informed.
- (5) Develop and control execution of the base defense plan.
- (6) Monitor and report base defense status to the RAOC.

- Base Cluster Commanders develop and activate a Base Cluster Operations Center (BCOC). BCOC Tasks normally include:

- Coordinating security among bases.
- Developing the base cluster defense plan, coordinating fire support, obstacles, reaction forces, response force plans, and overlapping fires between bases in close proximity.
- Maintaining a current situation map.
- Maintaining continuous communications with RAOC and subordinate bases.
- Receiving and passing THREATCON and BDS reports.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

FORCE PROTECTION Cont.

FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION.

- The RCP FSE or Corps Artillery LNO monitors availability of fire support assets, including host nation assets, and fires from adjacent corps, such as artillery, Army aviation, Mortars, CAS, AC-130 gun ships and naval gunfire. The ROC and the RCP FSE or Corps Artillery LNO establish fire support coordination measures and disseminate them to USAF LNOs, Response Forces, and the TCF.

- Dedicated fire support in the CSA will initially be DS to subordinate AO Commander; DS to the TCF; then on order, to the Rear CP.

- If dedicated fire support is FA, the artillery unit headquarters will be the force artillery headquarters and will coordinate all supporting fires.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

TACTICAL COMBAT FORCE OPERATIONS

The III Corps Tactical Combat Force (TCF) is the force designated in the OPORD which has the mission to defeat a Corps Sustainment Area (CSA) Level III threat that exceeds the capabilities of the designated base/base cluster response forces. A TCF is designated when the CSA IPB and events identify a possible threat sufficient to justify the employment of combat forces greater than the response Forces of the subordinate AO Commander. A dedicated TCF is normally located in the CSA; however, Main Battle Area (MBA) units may have the additional mission to provide a TCF from their assets. Composition and capabilities. The TCF normally contains ground forces with transport and/or air combat assets. It may also include fire support, air defense, and logistic units. The TCF's size and task organization depends upon IPB and METT-TC. It will be flexible, capable of day or night and all weather operations, and have greater mobility than the most probable threat. It will be capable of infantry company airmobile operations. The Rear CP normally directs other CSA units to provide additional artillery, engineer, and CSS Support to the TCF.

RESPONSIBILITIES.

- a. Corps Sustainment Area Commander (DCG).
 - (1) Directs all TCF operations planning.
 - (2) On order, receives OPCON TCF and other forces in support of TCF operations and directs TCF operations in the sustainment area. Control of the TCF may be delegated to the CSA commander in advance of Level III threat activity.
- b. G3.
 - (1) Based on commander's guidance, designates one or more forces as TCFs.
 - (2) Plans for continuity of TCF coverage in sustainment area.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

TACTICAL COMBAT FORCE OPERATIONS Cont.

RESPONSIBILITIES cont.

c. Rear Operations Center (ROC).

(1) Provides copies of CSA defense plan, w/ fire support and obstacle plans, to TCF. Rear Operations Annex to Corps OPLANs (prepared by Rear CP staff) will contain TCF contingencies.

(2) Through the TCF Orders Group issues FRAGOs, guidance and intelligence related to TCF plans and operations.

(3) Coordinates and directs RAOC support for TCF operations.

(4) Assists TCF Commander with fire support requests and coordination.

(5) Coordinates with the MP Brigade and other designated response forces for plans to provide Level II response forces to cover the Corps Sustainment Area. Disseminates plans to RAOCs.

(6) Coordinates airspace management requests in support of TCF.

d. TCF Orders Group.

(1) Consists of CSA CDR (DCG) (or Deputy Chief of Staff in the CSA CDR's absence), the ROC operations officer, Rear G3 officer, Fire Support Officer (Corps Arty LNO), Rear CP host nation LNO, C&E Officer, Rear G2 Plans Officer, RAOC Coordination Officer, EN LNO, ADA LNO and MP BDE LNO

(2) Prepares, issues orders, FRAGOs, guidance; assist TCF coordination for resources and support.

(3) Locates where it can best direct and resource TCF operations.

(4) Positions assigned TCF combat forces in assembly areas based on METT-TC.

(5) Assigns TCF an AO.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

TACTICAL COMBAT FORCE OPERATIONS Cont.

RESPONSIBILITIES cont.

e. Cdr TCF.

(1) Provides LNO to CSA Operations Center.

(2) Prepares, coordinates, and executes TCF plans for ground and air movement contingencies.

(3) On order, assumes OPCON of designated forces and executes TCF missions.

(4) Coordinates fire support with Corps Artillery Fire Support LNO, including CAS requests, AC-130 gunship support, and indirect fires.

f. Cdr, MP Brigade.

(1) Provides rear area level II Response Force (RF) to locate/report, and defeat level II threats or to disrupt Level III until arrival of the TCF. On order, assists TCF and host nation RF units' movement and employment. On order, releases MP RF OPCON to TCF.

(2) Accepts OPCON of affected Base and Base cluster defense forces during Level II responses.

g. Base & Base Cluster Commanders.

(1) Defeat Level I threats and disrupt Level II threats until arrival of response forces.

(2) Plan for Level III (TCF assistance) operations in AO.

(3) Provide intelligence to RAOCs as required.

(4) On order provide forces OPCON to the TCF.

h. Cdr Corps Reserve (Corps Sustainment Area). Within assembly area provides own force protection, terrain management, and movement control.

i. Subordinate AO Commander. Monitors the current situation, advises ROC, requests commitment of TCF for Level III threats. Plans to OPCON base or base cluster security elements to TCF as required.

j. Cdr, ADA Bde. Coordinates air defense for TCF operations, and provides air defense early warning of in-bound enemy aircraft.



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

TACTICAL COMBAT FORCE OPERATIONS Cont.

COMMAND AND CONTROL.

a. Pre-combat C2. The Corps Commander normally delegates TCF control to the CSA CDR (DCG). The TCF will always place an LNO with the Rear CP to coordinate contingency plans and assist with employment. A TCF commander may unilaterally reduce the TCF's reaction time by taking internal preparation measures.

b. Transfer of control. When a level III threat has been identified, the ROC forms the TCF Orders Group, notifies the Corps Sustainment Area Commander, the G3, and the TCF. At the same time, the ROC notifies the CSA and the TCF, conducts an estimate of the situation, issues a warning order, and prepares to issue and coordinate TCF operation orders as time permits. The staff conducts continuous planning, including the synchronization of battlefield operating systems. TAB A shows the process.

c. C2 during TCF employment. The TCF is OPCON to the CSA CDR when employed, and reverts to parent unit control upon accomplishment of the mission. The Rear CP is the command and control headquarters for the TCF once committed, and assigns it an AO. The ROC normally directs the TCF to move into assembly areas to facilitate R&S missions and rapid deployment.

TCF READINESS CONDITION (REDCON). The TCF Readiness Condition describes TCF combat readiness requirements and the TCF status related to it.

a. REDCON 1: Meets REDCON 2 criteria and capable of road movement or air movement within 30 minutes. Attack helicopter or air cav assets employable within 30 minutes.

b. REDCON 2: TCF task organized for combat per CSA CDR guidance. Capable of road movement within 2 hours and / or air assault movement of one infantry company within 1 hour from current positions to forward TAA. Attack helicopters or air cav platoon employable within 1 hour.

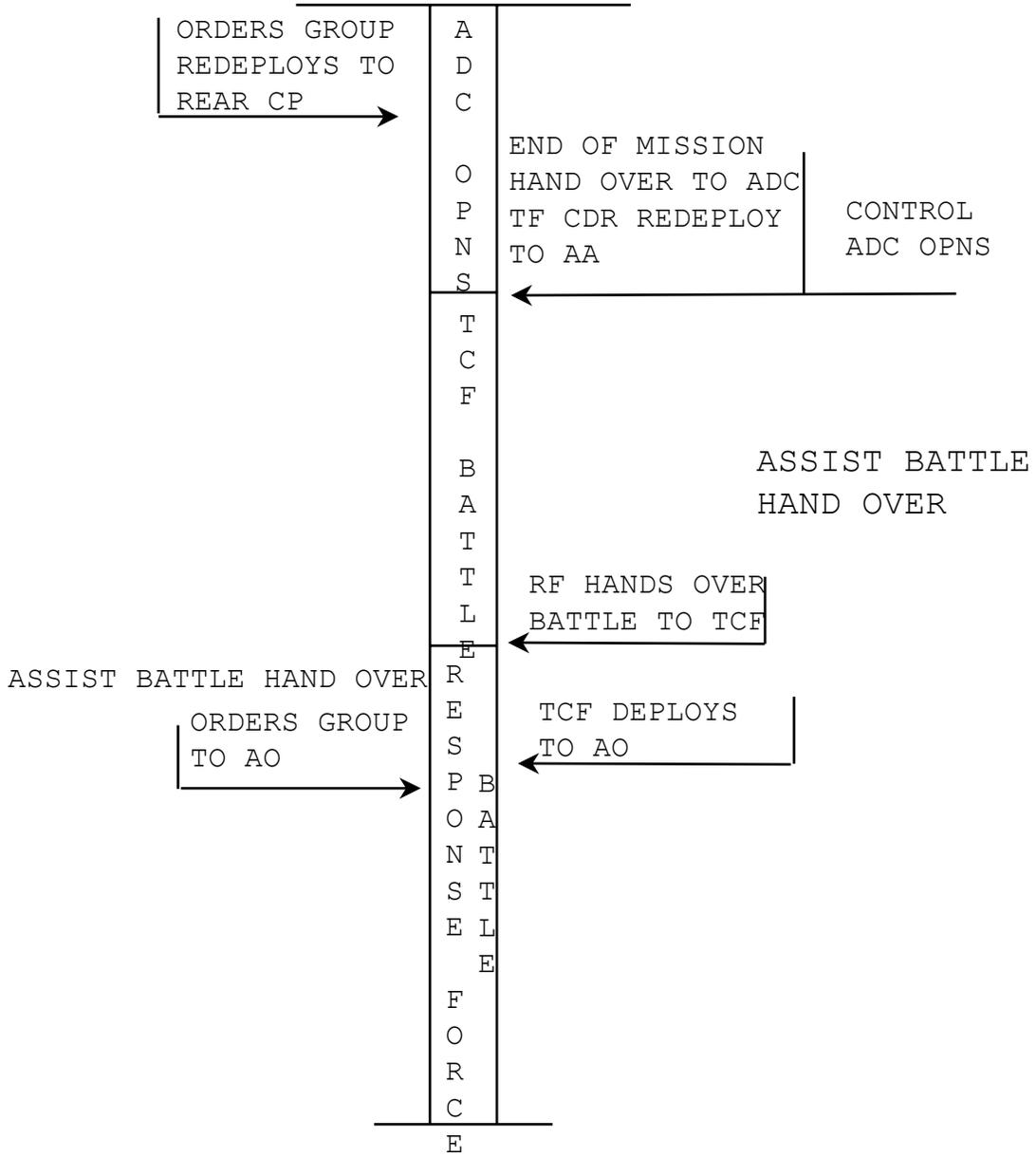


REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

TACTICAL COMBAT FORCE OPERATIONS Cont. TCF DECISION CYCLE



CORPS MAIN CP

CORPS REAR CP

TCF

SUB-AREA RAOC



REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

RIVER CROSSING

Deliberate river-crossing operations are normally planned and conducted by corps and divisions. At the corps level, fundamental planning (including deception) and resourcing of corps assets to the division takes place. At these echelons, a major river crossing will involve most, if not all, of the assets of the organization involved. Extensive use of corps assets is required in the conduct of the operation. Divisions do not have sufficient support-force structure or capability to conduct a river-crossing operation. They cannot cross major water obstacles without corps assistance and still be expected to press the fight. The corps assigns missions and provides the necessary support and equipment. Specifically, the corps provides augmentation in the following areas:

- Engineer forces.
- Fire support.
- Air defense.
- Smoke.
- MP.
- EW.
- Attack helicopters.

Rarely will a river crossing be a specified task within the corps's mission. More often, a river crossing will be an implied task for a lead division. The corps will designate the bridgehead for an offensive river crossing and will normally depict the bridgehead graphically using a bridgehead line or a set of division objectives. The bridgehead is the area on the far bank that is to be secured to continue the offensive. It provides space for those combat, CS, and critical CSS elements that are necessary for the corps to continue the attack. For divisions crossing the river and continuing the attack, a shallow bridgehead of about 30 kilometers (19 miles) may be used. If the corps intends on passing a division through the bridgehead, a deeper bridgehead of 40 to 50 kilometers (25 to 30 miles) may be required, depending on the terrain. Divisions normally assign bridgehead objectives and control movement across the river. Brigades assault across the river and secure the bridgehead as an element of a larger force.



REAR COMMAND POST

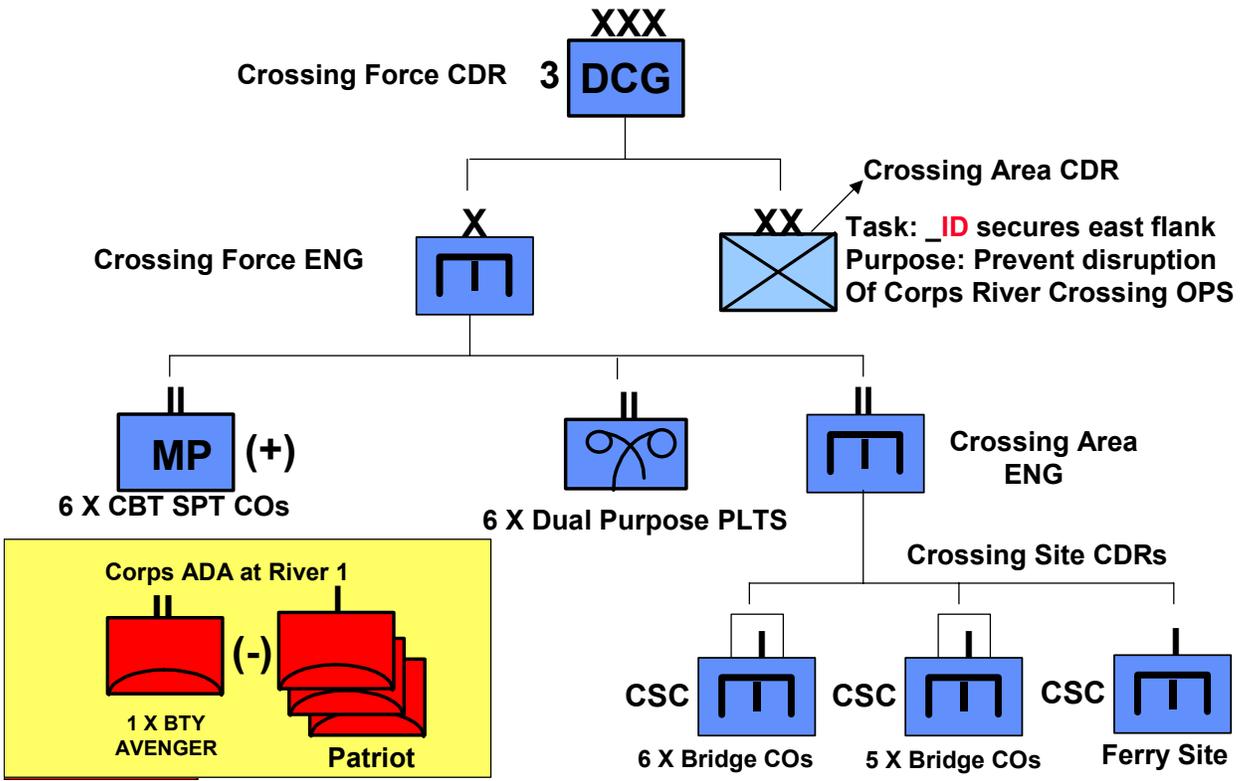


SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

RIVER CROSSING Cont.

The following is an example of the forces available to the DCG for assuming C2 of a river crossing area:

CORPS RIVER CROSSING C²





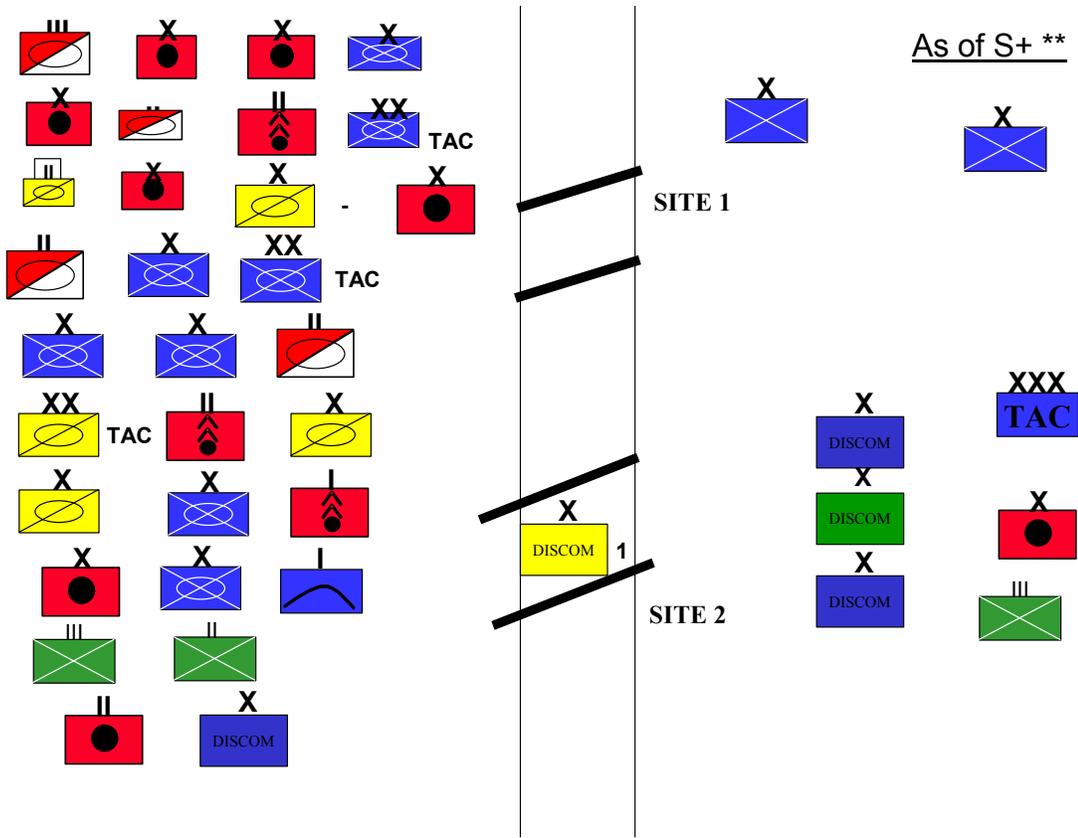
REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

RIVER CROSSING Cont.

Useful river crossing C2 tools: This slide depicts the status of units that have crossed (left) and units crossing or still waiting to cross (right) the crossing sites. The G3 Rear will constantly update this slide as units cross the river





REAR COMMAND POST



SUSTAINMENT OPERATIONS Cont.

Battle Update Brief - Order

G3

G2

G3

Rear Battle

Chemical

SPO

G4

Engineers

G5

G6

G1

PAO

Chaplain



REAR COMMAND POST



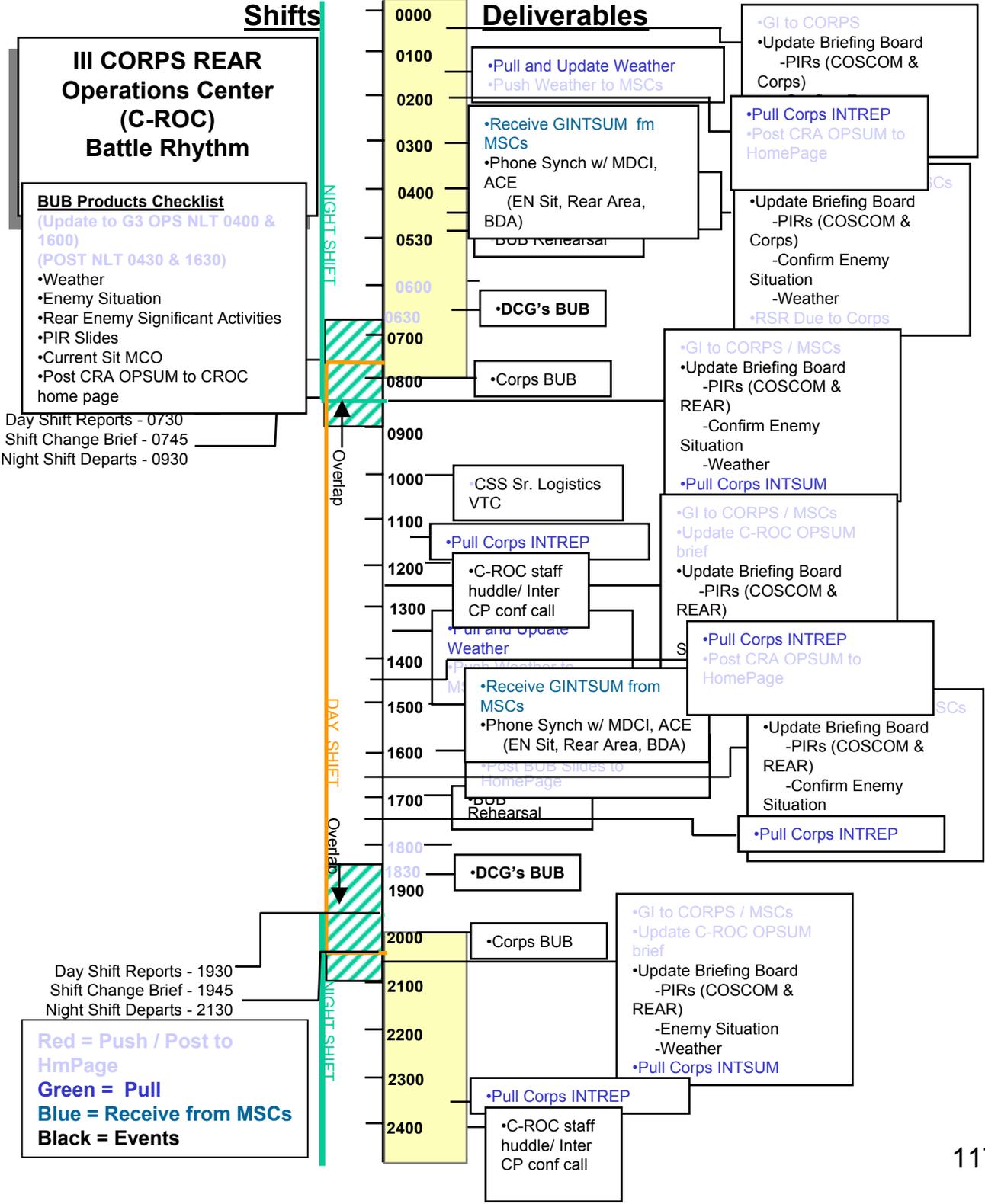
Fire Support Element

- Orchestrate Fire Support ISO rear operations.
- Coordinate the integration of US and Allied fires in the Corps rear area.
- Review and assess rear threat in coordination with Rear G2.
- Assist with the Rear IPB.
- Coordinate TCF fires when employed.
- Update Battle Update Briefing slides.
- Monitor LOC security, UGF clearance, and base cluster security.
- Maintain situational awareness, specifically status of all fire support assets available to the force, including FA, Army aviation, USAF, and naval gunfire.
- Advise RCP on all Fire Support matters.
- Coordinate and process target attack ISO rear operations.
- Be prepared to conduct Battle Hand-over with the Corps MCP



REAR COMMAND POST

BATTLE RHYTHM





G3 TACOPS

B.6

ASSAULT
COMMAND POST

TBP



G3 TACOPS



B.7

FORWARD COMMAND POST

TBP



G3 CUROPS

B.8

SANCTUARY COMMAND POST

TBP



G3 PLANS

B.9

PLANS AND ORDERS



ORDERS



- **Operational plan (OPLAN):** Plan for a military operation that may cover a single operation or a series of connected operations. When time or conditions occur for plan to be in effect, it becomes an operations order (OPORD).
- **Contingency plan (CONPLAN):** Plan for a contingency operation which is part of an existing OPLAN or OPORD.
- **Fragmentary order (FRAGO):** Form of an OPORD that contains information of immediate concern to subordinate units. A FRAGO differs from an OPORD only in the detail of the force needs to execute a task.
- **Warning order (WARNO):** Order that gives advance notice of an action or an order that is to follow.

- **Responsibilities:** G3; G3 War Plans develops, publishes, and distributes OPLANS and OPORDs. G3 Operations develops, publishes, and distributes WARNOs and FRAGOs.



FRAGOs



(Classification)

Copy _____ of _____ copies
HQs, III (US) Corps
Fort Hood, TX 76544
DTG of signature

FRAGO X

References:

1. (U) SITUATION.
 - a. (U) Enemy.
 - b. (U) Friendly.
2. (U) MISSION.
3. (U) EXECUTION.

(U) Commander's intent.

(U) Purpose.

(U) Key Tasks.

(U) Endstate.

 - a. (U) Concept of Operation.
 - b. (U) Tasks to Maneuver Units.
 - c. (U) Tasks to Combat Support Units.
 - d. (U) Coordinating Instructions.

- Header: 16 pt, Courier New; Body: 11pt Courier New
- 1" margins
- Each major, numbered paragraph must have either "No Change" or "**CHANGE.**"
- Include only those sub-paragraphs with changes



FRAGOs



4. (U) SERVICE SUPPORT.
5. (U) COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
 - a. (U) Command.
 - b. (U) Signal.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

BELL
LTG

OFFICIAL:

ANTAL
G3

ANNEXES: if required

DISTRIBUTION: (Optional)

- Attach annexes, appendices, etc., as required; annotate only those attached.

(Classification)



GRAPHICS



4 methods of transmission:

- Electronic graphics – transmitted by MCS
- To-scale overlays – either paper or acetate; normally distributed before the beginning of an operation
- Cartoon – not to scale sketch, either in PowerPoint or another medium, provided for orientation
- Grid coordinates to graphic control measures (Appendix 1, ANNEX C, base OPLAN/OPORD or FRAGO)

Notes:

- 1) Appendix 1, ANNEX C, always takes precedence over cartoon.
- 2) Paper overlays tend to become distorted through the duplication process; must be cross-checked against Appendix 1, ANNEX C



GRAPHICS



	LINES	PTs	RTES	AXES	OBJs	OTH
III Corps	MALE NAMES	1-299	SPICES	GENERALS	US STATES	MAMMALS
MSC1 25ID(L)	COLORS	300- 399	FLOWERS	ASTRONOMY	TREES	FISH
MSC2 4ID(M)	PHONETIC LETTERS	400- 499	FRUITS	AUTOS	MONTHS	BIRDS
MSC3 1CD	FEMALE NAMES	500- 599	NFL TEAMS	WEAPONS	INDIAN TRIBES	METALS
MSC4 172SIB	PRESIDENTS	600- 699	GEM STONES	ARMY BRANCHES	RIVERS	INSECTS
MSC5 3ACR	COUNTRIES	700- 799	MINERALS	CIVIL WAR BATTLES	REPTILES	DAYS OF WEEK
MSC6 6CAV BDE	CITIES	800- 899	FABRICS	NON- METALLIC ELEMENTS	MILITARY RANKS	GAMES



PRODUCTION AND DISSEMINATION OF PLANS AND ORDERS



- G3 War Plans produces OPLANs/OPORDs, CONPLANs, and WARNOs and FRAGOs prior to War Plans/Operations handover.
- G3 Operations produces WARNOs and FRAGOs after War Plans/Operations handover.
- TAC, Main, and Rear CPs may generate FRAGOs and WARNOs; TAC CP assigns numbers.
- Main CP normally generates CONPLANs, OPLANs, and OPORDs.



CPT Membership



- Chief of Plans
- G3 Planners
- G2 Chief of Plans
- G1 Planner
- G4 Planner
- CTO
- TALO
- G5 Planner
- G6 Planner
- PAO Planner
- Medical Planner
- TROKA LNO (as applicable)
- MSC and SEP BDE planners (as applicable)
- CG's XO
- AVN Planner
- ADE Planner
- FSE Planner
- SOCOORD
- Space Operations Planner
- SJA Operational Law Planner
- Terrain Tech
- Engineer Planner
- Staff Weather Officer
- ALO
- IO Officer
- PSYOP Officer
- JOPES Planner (as applicable)



BHO of the OPORD between War Plans and Operations



Once the Commanding General approves the OPLAN for execution, it becomes an OPORD to be briefed, rehearsed and executed. War Plans is responsible for briefing and distribution of the order. The order is handed over to Operations for rehearsal and execution. The battle handover is normally conducted in a briefing format with maps of the area of operations and area of interest. The following personnel will attend:

**Chief of Plans and Exercises
Chief of Plans
Primary Planner
FSE Planner
G2 Planner
G4 Planner**

**Chief of Operations (TAC)
Chief of TACOPS (TAC)
Chief of CUROPS (Main)
Chief of CONOPS (Main)
Rear Ops OIC (Rear)
All Ops officers from
these sections**

After the BHO to Operations another brief will be conducted by G3 Operations to the operation sections of all staff and BFA sections.



Who Commands What Fight

The Commanding General is in command of the Corp fight. To assist in command and control of the Corps area of operations, the CG has delegated control to the following:

DCG(C) commands the close fight (0 to 24 hours) from the TAC CP.

CofS controls the battle (24 to 96 hours) from the MAIN CP.

DCG(US) commands the fight in the rear area generally fighting from the REAR CP.



CONPLAN DEVELOPMENT



• A Level: Planner's concept



• B Level: Concept paragraph and sketch, task organization, and refined commander's guidance



• C Level: Wargamed concept, approved by commander for development into FRAGO

COMPLETED CONPLAN

010800MAR02 UNCLASSIFIED

CONPLAN PHANTOM WALKER

CONDITIONS: TROBA has defeated OSC-3 and continues in zone. III(US)Corps has defeated the 12th and 14th DTGs. Army and Corps shaping attacks have neutralized the 303MIB and 305AR BDE vicinity OBJs WASHINGTON and OREGON. The 11DTG(-) defends to deny southern access to the CHORWAN VALLEY and can reposition into TROBA's flank. II(ROB)Corps has lead divisions in AA ROB and continues to move along ROUTE BLUE.

ENEMY: SHC transitions from a Defense to Deny to a Defense to Preserve in order to preserve and protect remaining combat power, retain control of the homeland, and control the Capital (PYONGYANG). The SHC directs OSC's to conduct Retrograde Operations.

FRIENDLY: GCC orders an exploitation and issues a boundary change between TROBA and 8(US)Army to compress battle space and allow for maximum combat power forward to destroy the CPA as an instrument of national power before a cease fire can be negotiated. 8(US)Army continues on mission to secure OBJ VANFLEET and protect the flank of TROBA, the GCC main effort. II(ROB) accelerates movement along MSR FALCON, conducts FPOL with III(US)Corps vicinity of PL BEAR.

III(US)Corps forward passes the II(ROB)Corps, continues the attack as the 8(US)Army main effort to destroy the 11DTG and then conducts an exploitation to secure OBJ WALKER in order to destroy enemy forces, protect the flank of TROBA (GCC main effort), and assist in the isolation of PYONGYANG from the south to set conditions for successful diplomatic negotiations and war termination

UNCLASSIFIED 2

010800MAR02 UNCLASSIFIED

CONPLAN PHANTOM WALKER

G2 Planning Assumptions (Most Likely ECOA)

- OSC-1: DEFENSE TO DENY: Delaying Operations
 - ❖ OSC-1 is at 40% (-) strength
 - ❖ 305AR BDE is at 50-55% postured to counterattack penetrations of the Iron Triangle (14INF DIV)
 - ❖ 303MECH BDE (-) is vicinity S-W CHUNCHON defense to deny on east bank of PUKAN
 - ❖ The 114 AR BDE (vic OBJ UTAH) is the 11MECH DIV(-) reserve and consists of approx 1 x BN
 - ❖ The 11MECH DIV (-) uses remaining combat power to establish strong-points north & east of the PUKAN to delay
 - ❖ 14INF DIV(-), 18TMD(-), and the 12TMD(-) are incapable of combined arms operations; conduct tactical interdiction and delaying operations
- OSC-2: DEFENSE TO DENY: Withdrawal Operations
 - ❖ OSC-2 is at approx 60-70 %
 - ❖ Conducts withdrawal operations to preserve the force
- OSC-3: Delaying Operations
 - ❖ Conducts Delaying Operations in support of the overall Strategic-Operational Retrograde
 - ❖ 23MECH DIV(-) will control key terrain & routes in OSC-3 AO (CHUNCHON City, Hwy44, Hwy56)
 - ✓ 231MECH BDE combat ineffective
 - ✓ 232MECH BDE is in established strong-points (vic N-E CHUNCHON City)
 - ✓ 233MECH BDE combat ineffective; south vic TROBA AO
 - ✓ 234AR BDE combat ineffective; committed south against TROBA
 - ❖ OSC-3 level Artillery (271Arty Bde / 271MRL Bde) and Combat Aviation (355 / 357) supports delaying operations and postures north in AO & in and around CHUNCHON City
- OSC-4: Delaying Operations (ECO2) or Withdrawal Operations (ECO1)
 - ❖ OSC-4 is at 60-70% strength and will conduct Delaying Operations to support OSC-1 / OSC-3
 - ❖ OSC-4 BDEs are committed into OSC-1 & OSC-3 for use as operational reserves & to establish defensive positions
 - ❖ 348TM BDE(-) reinforces OSC-1
- OSC-5: Retirement Operations
 - ❖ OSC 5 is at 80% strength
 - ❖ OSC 5 continues to reinforce capital defense; to retain and control Pyongyang
 - ❖ O/O OSC 5 executes Retirement Operations to CPNA northern territories / sanctuary; remains out of contact with the Blue
- 6th Militia Corps: Reinforces the Capital Defense, Pyongyang; On order conducts Retirement Operations and disperses into sanctuary
 - ❖ Area: SPF Teams remain active; NBC employed on C2, LOG Bases, and attack aviation in order to delay attrit III(US)Corps as it attacks towards the MDL

UNCLASSIFIED AS OF: 282200/FEBO2

CONPLAN DEVELOPMENT

CONPLAN PHANTOM WALKER
ECO # 1: Retrograde, Limited Delaying Operations (Most Likely)

Operational Aim: Preserve Combat Power & Retain Control of the Capital (Pyongyang)
Operational Purpose: Defense to Preserve
Operational Level Framework

Immediate Objective: OSC-1 & OSC-3 execute Delaying Operations to enable OSC-2, OSC-4, OSC-5 and the 6th Militia Corps to Retrograde. OSC-1 conducts an operational delaying operation with remnant forces in the DZ disrupting and interdicting; remnant elements of the 14INF DIV interdict in order to disrupt, prevent & deny friendly control of Hwy 1; OSC-1 (112MECH BDE(-) and the 303MECH BDE(-)) establishes strong-points and executes limited objective attacks to delay & attrit friendly forces in order to protect & enable OSC-2, OSC-4, OSC-5 and the 6th Militia Corps to preserve the force by conducting retrograde operations.

Subsequent objective: Retain control of and reinforce Pyongyang / the Capital Defense. OSC-2 & OSC-4 conduct withdrawal operations; OSC-2 and OSC-4 CBT A/W is in supporting role to OSC-1 & OSC-3. OSC-5 and the 6th Militia Corps conduct retirement operations and continue to retain Pyongyang.

Advantage: Control of key LOCs; Homeland defense
Disadvantage: Limited combat power to conduct delaying operations

AS OF: 282200LFE02

010800MAR02 CONPLAN PHANTOM WALKER Initial PIR

What is the infrastructure north of the MDL that will support III(US)Corps exploitation operations (terrain, route capacity, airfields, tunnels, rail, bridges, defiles, dams, fuel /weapon/food caches)? LTIOV: OPEN

What is the disposition of enemy artillery, air defense, and ground maneuver forces vic OBJ NEVADA that can influence the 45ID Air Assault? LTIOV: H+108

Will OSC-4 counterattack III(US)Corps penetration of the OSC-1 defenses? If so, when and with which element? LTIOV: H+132

When and where will the enemy threaten III(US)Corps right flank with brigades out of OSC-4 (352/354 AR BDE) ? LTIOV: H + 144

Will OSC-1 withdraw into Homeland upon defeat of operational reserves (11MX, 305AR BDE(-))? LTIOV: 140

Will OSC-2 continue to defend to preserve or conduct withdrawal operations in defense of Pyongyang? LTIOV: H+140

AS OF: 282200LFE02 ⁸

010800MAR02 (PROPOSED) RESTATED MISSION CONPLAN PHANTOM WALKER

MISSION. III(US)Corps attacks across PL LOGAN (LD) at 021000(S)MAR02 to destroy enemy forces and seize key terrain vicinity of OBJ DAKOTA in order to protect the southern flank of TROBA's attack, the GCC main effort. On order, III(US)Corps conducts an exploitation to seize OBJ WALKER in order to enable the isolation of PYONGYANG.

14

010800MAR02 UNCLASSIFIED Draft Commander's Intent – CONPLAN PHANTOM WALKER

Purpose → Enable the Corps to exploit in a rapid advance to OBJ WALKER and isolate PYONGYANG from the south; protect the flank of TROBA the GCC main effort.

Key Tasks →

- Destroy enemy reconnaissance and surveillance forces throughout the depth of our area of operations; dominate the ISR battle.
- Provide early warning of any threat of brigade size or larger to the Corps' flanks.
- Attack by fire with AI, CAS, and attack aviation to rupture his defenses and deny him the ability to re-establish a coherent defense.
- Rapidly penetrate the 11MECH DIV to deny enemy delaying operations and create the opportunity to attack enemy withdrawing to vicinity of PYONGYANG.
- Conduct a deep vertical envelopment to block enemy withdrawing toward PYONGYANG in order to enable their destruction by the main effort and create conditions to exploit in a rapid advance to OBJ WALKER.
- Seize OBJ WALKER to isolate PYONGYANG from the south and to protect TROBA, the GCC main effort, right flank.
- Establish logistics operations with options to support an exploitation as soon as the opportunity avails.
- Conduct stability and support operations that enable rapid offensive tempo while maintaining the credibility of the BLUELAND government.

End State → III(US)Corps has fractured the coherency of the enemy's defenses, seized OBJ WALKER and protected TROBA's flank to enable the destruction of CPNA as an element of national power and set the conditions for war termination. Conduct a seamless transition to post-conflict stability and support operations, with CPNR leadership isolated and BLUELAND government credibility preserved.

UNCLASSIFIED



G6



B.10

COMMAND AND CONTROL



COMMAND AND CONTROL



HOW THE CORPS EXECUTES C2

- HOW THE CORPS COMMUNICATES
- SIGNAL SUPPORT
- COMMUNICATIONS PRIORITIES



COMMAND AND CONTROL



HOW THE CORPS COMMUNICATES

1 of 3

- **The Corps uses the following communications systems throughout the depth of the battlefield to provide real or near real-time C4I capabilities during close, shaping, and rear operations:**
 - **Video Teleconferencing (VTC):**
 - The Corps Commander's primary means of communications
 - VTC Network is the Corps Command Net for the Corps TAC, Main, Rear, Division, and designated Separate Brigade Command Posts
 - 3rd Signal Brigade's Corps Communications Support Platoon (CCSP) installs and operates the VTC Network
 - The 3rd Signal Brigade SYSCON has technical control over all signal units assigned or attached to the Corps Command Posts
 - 3rd Signal Brigade's Area Support Battalions establish the tactical network that supports the VTC network
 - Corps G3 (TAC CP) has operational control of the VTC Network
 - Corps G3 (TAC CP) is responsible for scheduling all VTCs and provides a copy of the VTC schedule to Corps G6 for execution
 - Prior to STARTEX, Corps G3 provides a list of all Corps CPs and MSCs required to be participants and observers during scheduled VTCs
 - **Army Battle Command System:**
 - Complex system of systems that link automation assets, communications media, and operational facilities to support the commanders and their staffs in collecting and analyzing information, developing plans and orders, and monitoring the tactical battlefield.
 - Consists of subsystems for the Battlefield Functional Areas (BFAs), each of which supports, provides information to other systems, and provides situational awareness of the battlefield. Those subsystems are:

BFA

Maneuver

ABCS Subsystem

MCS, FBCB2, EBC

Functionality

Plans, coordinates, and controls current and future operations. Develops situational awareness and 136 the tactical picture.



COMMAND AND CONTROL



HOW THE CORPS COMMUNICATES 2 of 3

BFA

Global C2

ABCS Subsystem

GCCS-A/GCCS-K

Functionality

Provides access to the Global Command and Control System

Intelligence

ASAS

Develops and provides pictures of enemy situations from national, theater, and tactical sources.

Fires

AFATDS
ADOCS

Provides automated support for the planning, coordination, control, and execution of close support and fires from Army and

shaping
Joint assets.

Topographic

DTSS

Produces tactical topographic products Services including digital and full color paper maps on the battlefield.

Air Defense

FAADC2

Integrates air defense units, sensors, and command and control centers into a system for defeating low-altitude air threat and enables the commanders to plan and control the counter-air fight.

Combat Service
Support

CSSCS

An automated system for logistical, medical, financial, and personnel support to assist in decision-making and the battle planning process.

Weather

IMETS

Provides weather information based on information from Air Weather Service and other sensors.

Airspace
Management

A2C2
TAIS

Provides the capability to plan air movements, track aircraft during movements, and deconflict with weapon systems planning and operations



COMMAND AND CONTROL



HOW THE CORPS COMMUNICATES

3 of 3

- **Area Common User Systems (ACUS):**
 - A system of network node switching centers connected primarily by line-of-sight (LOS) multi-channel radios and TACSATs.
 - Provides a multi-user, common-user area system for voice and data communications.
 - Mobile Subscriber Equipment (MSE) is the primary area common user system in III Corps

- **Combat Net Radio (CNR):**
 - Consists of the Single Channel Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS), tactical satellite (TACSAT) communications system, and high frequency (HF) radios.
 - Primary means of voice communications.
 - Used in command, administrative/logistical, and intelligence/operations networks.

- **Army Data Distribution System (ADDS)**
 - Integrated command, control and communications system providing near-real-time transmission capabilities to support low to medium volume data networks.
 - Subsystems consist of the Enhanced Position Locating Reporting System (EPLRS) and the Joint Tactical Information Distribution System (JTIDS)



COMMAND AND CONTROL



COMMUNICATIONS PRIORITIES

- **Priority of Communications:**
 - Video Teleconference (VTC)
 - Mobile Subscriber Equipment (MSE)
 - Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS)
 - Tactical Internet (TI)
 - FM
 - Single Channel Tactical Satellite (S/C TACSAT)
- **Priority of Automation Installation:**
 - AFATDS/AMDWS
 - Maneuver Control System (MCS)
 - Intelligence Systems (ASAS/JSTARS/UAV)
 - TACLAN
 - Logistics Systems (CSSCS)



COMMAND AND CONTROL



SUCCESSION OF COMMAND

- SEE BASE ORDER



PART C

BATTLEFIELD

FUNCTIONAL AREA

OPERATIONS

- **INTELLIGENCE / SURVEILLANCE / RECONNAISSANCE**
- **MANEUVER**
 - **TACTICAL MOVEMENT**
 - **OPERATIONS**
- **FIRE SUPPORT**
 - **SHAPING OPERATIONS**
 - **AIR SUPPORT**
 - **A2C2**
 - **ARMY AVIATION**
- **AIR DEFENSE**
- **MOBILITY, COUNTER-MOBILITY, SURVIVABILITY**
- **SERVICE AND SUPPORT**
- **COMMAND AND CONTROL**



G2



C.1

INTELLIGENCE/ SURVEILLANCE/ RECONNAISSANCE



G2

C.1



INTELLIGENCE/SURVEILLANCE/ RECONNAISSANCE

- ISR CP Manning & Functions
- ISR Synchronization
 - ISR Overview
 - G2 / ISE organization and functions
 - ISR battle rhythm
 - ASAS
 - Reach
 - Collection and analysis by “INT”
 - Weather
 - SSO



TACTICAL COMMAND POST



G2 OPS PERSONNEL

DAY SHIFT

DEPUTY G2
BATTLE CAPTAIN
OPERATIONS NCO
RWS OPERATOR
RWS OPERATOR

+ ADDITIONAL 27 PERSONNEL IN DISE

NIGHT SHIFT

ASSISTANT G2
BATTLE CAPTAIN
INTELLIGENCE OFFICER
OPERATIONS NCO
RWS OPERATOR

ISR FUNCTIONS AT TAC CP

- Performs all ISR functions for Corps close operations
 - Coordinates with MSC's to determine enemy situation and BDA from the close battle
 - Provides combat information to MCP for inclusion in the "Red" CTD
 - Obtains enemy deep and rear picture from G2 OPS at MCP
- Coordinates with G2 OPS / ACE at MCP for dynamic retasking of collection assets in support of Corps close operations
- DISE provides battlefield visualization (UAV, JSTARS MTI, ELINT), limited analysis, T-SCIF with reach-back to ACE for full range of ISR products, and serves as nucleus for jump ACE during CP displacement operations



MAIN COMMAND POST



G2 OPS PERSONNEL

DAY SHIFT

G2
ASSISTANT G2
CHEM OFF
INTELLIGENCE OFFICER
CHIEF INTEL SGT
ADMIN CLERK
ASSIST G2 AIR
INTEL SR SERGEANT
MULTIMEDIA ILLUSTRATOR
INTEL ANALYST
EXEC ADMIN ASSISTANT
VEHICLE DRIVER
DAC
CONTRACTOR
CHIEF SSO
SENIOR CI SERGEANT
INTEL ANALYST
ASSISTANT G2
CHIEF IMAGERY SGT
ASSISTANT G2 (PLANS)
CHIEF IMAGERY SGT
**+ ADDITIONAL 144
PERSONNEL IN ACE**

NIGHT SHIFT

SIGINT/EW OFFICER
ADMIN SPC
INTEL ANALYST
ASSISTANT G2
ASSISTANT G2
INTEL SGT
CI AGENT
ADMIN SPC
INTEL ANALYST
INTEL ANALYST
INTEL ANALYST
INTELLIGENCE OFFICER (PLANS)
INTEL ANALYST



MAIN COMMAND POST



MAIN CP ISR FUNCTIONS

- Synchronizes the Corps ISR effort (close, shaping and rear) with principal responsibility for Corps shaping operations and production of the red CTD
- Provides ISR input to deliberate, contingency and shaping operations planning
- Performs all ISR functions
 - IPB
 - SIT DEV and Assessment (including I&W)
 - Targeting
 - BDA
 - CM&D
 - Protection
 - T-SCIF and intelligence comms
- Provides battlefield visualization (UAV, JSTARS MTI, imagery, NRT SIGINT)
- Conducts single discipline intelligence processing and analysis



ASSAULT COMMAND POST



G2 OPS PERSONNEL

DAY SHIFT

G2
DEPUTY G2
BATTLE CAPTAIN
INTELLIGENCE OFFICER
OPERATIONS NCO
RWS OPERATOR
VEHICLE DRIVER
STAFF WEATHER OFF
CONTRACTOR

+ ADDITIONAL 45 PERSONNEL IN ACE

NIGHT SHIFT

ASSISTANT G2
BATTLE CAPTAIN
OPERATIONS NCO
RWS OPERATOR
RWS OPERATOR
SIGINT/EW OFFICER
STAFF WEATHER OFF

- CAPABLE OF PERFORMING MOST MAIN CP ISR FUNCTIONS FOR A LIMITED PERIOD OF TIME (7 DAYS)

- RELIES ON SANCTUARY CP FOR:
 - IPB AND ISR PLANNING
 - BDA
 - PROTECTION / MDCI ANALYSIS



SANCTUARY COMMAND POST



G2 OPS PERSONNEL

DAY SHIFT

ASSISTANT G2
CHEM OFF
INTELLIGENCE OFFICER
CHIEF INTEL SGT
ADMIN CLERK
ASSIST G2 AIR
INTEL SR SERGEANT
MULTIMEDIA ILLUSTRATOR
INTEL ANALYST
EXEC ADMIN ASSISTANT
SENIOR CI SERGEANT
INTEL ANALYST
CHIEF SSO
ASSISTANT G2 (PLANS)
CHIEF IMAGERY SGT

**+ ADDITIONAL 65 PERSONNEL
IN ACE**

- PROVIDES REACH-BACK ISR SUPPORT TO CORPS ACP OR FCP
- PERFORMS ALL REQUIRED ISR FUNCTIONS, BUT CANNOT PERFORM NRT TARGETING OPERATIONS

NIGHT SHIFT

SIGINT/EW OFFICER
ADMIN SPC
INTEL ANALYST
ASSISTANT G2
ASSISTANT G2
INTEL SGT
CI AGENT
ADMIN SPC
INTEL ANALYST
INTEL ANALYST
INTELLIGENCE OFFICER (PLANS)
INTEL ANALYST



FORWARD COMMAND POST



G2 OPS PERSONNEL

DAY SHIFT

G2
DEPUTY G2
BATTLE CAPTAIN
INTELLIGENCE OFFICER
OPERATIONS NCO
RWS OPERATOR
VEHICLE DRIVER
ASSISTANT G2 (PLANS)
CHIEF IMAGERY SGT

**+ ADDITIONAL 85 PERSONNEL
IN ACE**

NIGHT SHIFT

ASSISTANT G2
BATTLE CAPTAIN
OPERATIONS NCO
RWS OPERATOR
RWS OPERATOR
INTELLIGENCE OFFICER (PLANS)
INTEL ANALYST

- CAPABLE OF PERFORMING ALL ISR FUNCTIONS OF THE TAC AND MCP'S FOR A LIMITED PERIOD OF TIME (30 DAYS)

- RELIES ON SCP FOR REACH-BACK ANALYSIS



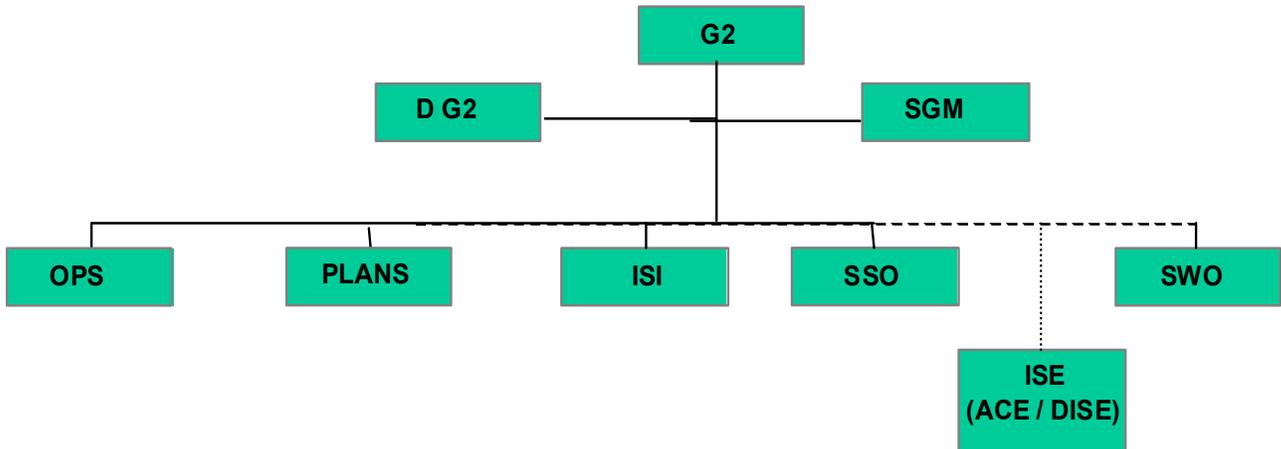
ISR Overview



- The Corps G2 exercises staff responsibility to synchronize ISR operations
- During deliberate planning the G2 planner and collection manager develop the ISR plan during the Corps wargame
 - PIR, IR and targeting priorities
 - priority of support among MSCs
 - priority of effort (among SIT DEV, TGT DEV, BDA, and Protection)
 - named areas of interest (NAI)
 - specific taskings and requests by collector, MSC and higher/adjacent commands
- During routine operations, the collection manager updates the ISR plan by publishing a daily Collection Emphasis Message (CEM)
- During execution, the ACE Chief directs dynamic retasking of collection assets in order to answer the CG's PIR / IR and to satisfy targeting, BDA and protection requirements



ISR Organization and Functions



Major functions:

G2 OPS - integrates ISR operations

G2 Plans - ISR rep in the Corps Plans Team

G2 ISI - develops Corps ISR architecture

SSO - special security (TS/SCI)

Intelligence Support Element (ISE) - provided by 504th MI Brigade as an Analysis and Control Element (ACE) or Deployable Intelligence Support Element (DISE) at Corps CP's

Staff Weather Officer (SWO) - provided by 3rd Weather Squadron



ISR Battle Rhythm



Developed for each operation and specifies:

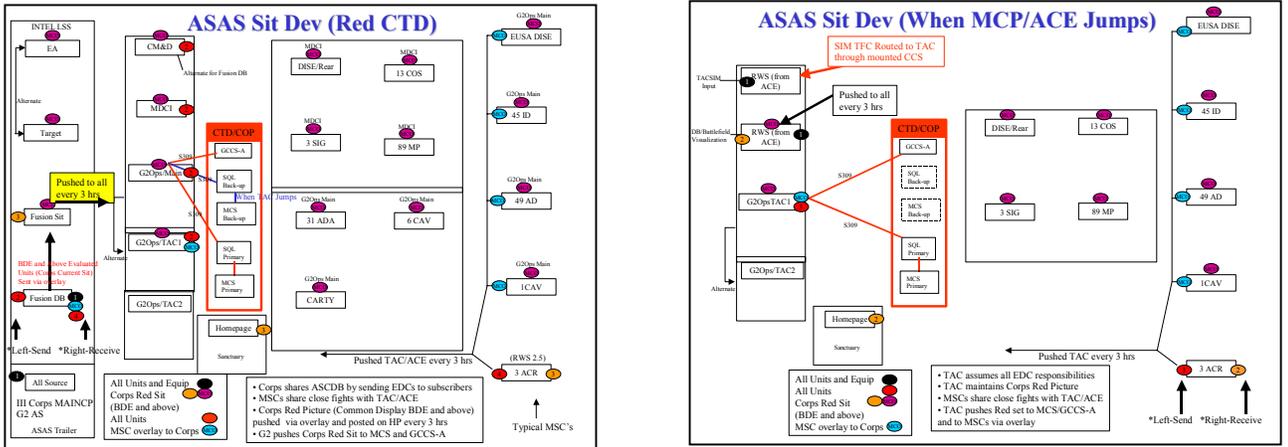
- times for ISR reports / products
- recurring meetings and events
- means of disseminating ISR products

Time (S)	Event (meeting or product)	Who	Where or How Disseminated / Received
0100			
0200	Publish Graphic INTSUM	ACE	TACLAN to EUSA; HP for MSCs; TACLAN email alert
	Generate EDC	ACE / G2 OPS	Push to RWS, MCS & GCCS; post on Homepage
0300	Future Assessment Huddle	Plans, OPS, ACE	Meeting--Intel LSS
	DOCC wargaming session	CM&D / TGT	Meeting--DOCC Plans Tent
0400	Receive RSR from MSCs	ACE / CM&D	TACLAN; Log
	Receive GCC INTSUM	G2 OPS / ACE	TACLAN; Log
0500	Receive BDASUM from MSC	ACE / BDA	TACLAN; Log
	Publish MDCISUM	ACE / MDCI	TACLAN to EUSA; HP for MSCs; TACLAN email alert
	Generate EDC	ACE / G2 OPS	Push to RWS, MCS & GCCS; post on Homepage
	Submit BUB Slides	G2 OPS / ACE	K-Drive
0530	Update G2	ACE	Meeting; updated G2 & CoS books & 3 x TRAP Map
0600	G2 Conference Call	G2 / ACE Chief	ACE Intel LSS / MSE Conference Call
	Receive INTSUM from MSC	G2 OPS / ACE	TACLAN; Log
	Receive EUSA INTSUM	G2 OPS / ACE	TACLAN; Log
	Pre-Targeting Meeting	CM&D / TGT	Meeting--DOCC Plans Tent
	Publish BDASUM	ACE / BDA	TACLAN to EUSA; HP for MSCs; TACLAN email alert
0700			
0800	CG'S BUB	Plans, OPS, ACE	VTC
	Publish INTSUM	ACE / IPS	TACLAN to EUSA; HP for MSCs; TACLAN email alert
	Targeting Meeting	CM&D / TGT	Meeting--DOCC Plans Tent
	Generate EDC	ACE / G2 OPS	Push to RWS, MCS & GCCS; post on Homepage
0900	CP Shift Change	all	
1000			
1100	Generate EDC	ACE / G2 OPS	Push to RWS, MCS & GCCS; post on Homepage
1200	Deep Ops Decision Brf	G2, CM&D, TGT	Meeting--DOCC Plans Tent
1300			
1400	Info Ops Work Group	TGT Officer	IO LSS
	Publish Graphic INTSUM	ACE	TACLAN to EUSA; HP for MSCs; TACLAN email alert
	Generate EDC	ACE / G2 OPS	Push to RWS, MCS & GCCS; post on Homepage
1500	Future Assessment Huddle	Plans, OPS, ACE	Meeting--Intel LSS
	Deep Ops Synch Meeting	CM&D / TGT	Meeting--DOCC Plans Tent
	EUSA VTC	G2	VTC
1600	Receive RSR from MSCs	ACE / CM&D	TACLAN; Log
	Receive GCC INTSUM	G2 OPS / ACE	TACLAN; Log
1700	Receive BDASUM from MSC	ACE / BDA	TACLAN; Log
	Publish MDCISUM	ACE / MDCI	TACLAN to EUSA; HP for MSCs; TACLAN email alert
	Generate EDC	ACE / G2 OPS	Push to RWS, MCS & GCCS; post on Homepage
	Submit Staff Update Slides	G2 OPS / ACE	K-Drive
1730	Update G2	ACE	Meeting; updated G2 & CoS books & 3 x TRAP Map
1800	G2 Conference Call	G2 / ACE Chief	ACE Intel LSS / MSE Conference Call
	Receive INTSUM from MSC	G2 OPS / ACE	TACLAN; Log
	Receive EUSA INTSUM	G2 OPS / ACE	TACLAN; Log
	Publish BDASUM	ACE / BDA	TACLAN to EUSA; HP for MSCs; TACLAN email alert
1900			
2000	O/O Staff Update VTC	Plans, OPS, ACE	VTC
	Publish INTSUM	ACE / IPS	TACLAN to EUSA; HP for MSCs; TACLAN email alert
	F-2 Brief	CM&D / TGT	Meeting--DOCC Execution LSS
	Generate EDC	ACE / G2 OPS	Push to RWS, MCS & GCCS; post on Homepage
2100	CP Shift Change	all	
	Receive CEM from MSC	ACE / CM&D	TACLAN; log
2200			
2300	Generate EDC	ACE / G2 OPS	Push to RWS, MCS & GCCS; post on Homepage
2400	Publish CEM	ACE / CM&D	TACLAN to EUSA; HP for MSCs; TACLAN email alert

Sample from EWFX '02



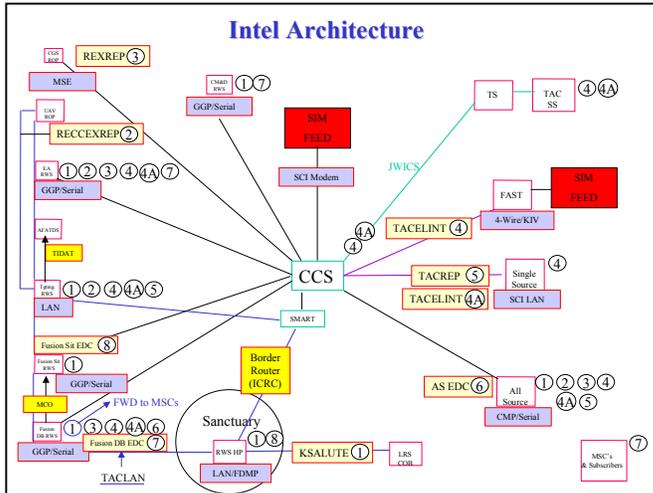
ASAS TTP



Example of Sit Dev during Phantom Lightning 02

- G2 OPS/ACE determine TTP for ASAS ops between Corps and MSCs
- Tailored delivery of SIT/TGT DEV info based on MSC needs, HW/SW available, and comms network
- Must support integration of “Red” database into the COP/CTD
- Must include defined contingency plans to include Jump options, back-up systems, and alternate comms paths
- Requires significant planning and rehearsal
- Should involve AMAC qualified soldiers from Corps and MSCs

ASAS TTP (ACE Internal)



ASAS ALL SOURCE 3.2
SYSTEM SUPERVISOR

- MAINTAINS SYSTEM HARDWARE/SOFTWARE
- INITIALIZES/TERMINATES SYSTEM
- MAINTAINS ANALYST ACCOUNTS
- MAINTAINS INBOUND/OUTBOUND ROUTING TABLES
- REGULATES MESSAGE TRAFFIC/COMMUNICATIONS
- MAINTAINS SYSTEM SECURITY
- PERFORMS SECURITY AUDIT TRAIL OPERATIONS
- ASSISTS DB MANAGER WITH MESSAGE MAINTENANCE

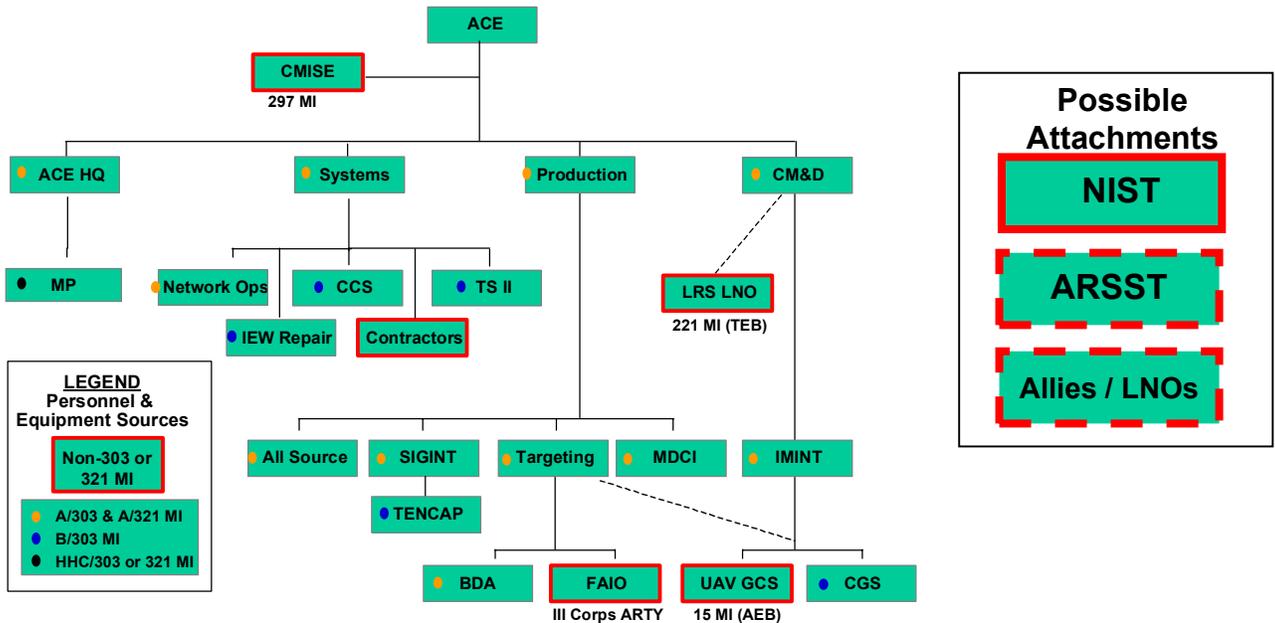
Message Flow during Phantom Lightning 02

Example of Analyst Responsibilities

- Developed by ACE Chief and AMACs
- Specifically defines information flow from sensor, to analytical cell, to consumer over a determined comms network
- Based on HW/SW and available comms
- Includes contingencies and back-ups for degraded and Jump ops
- Defines in detail responsibilities, activities and relationships between all analytical cells
- Defines in detail specific analyst tactics, techniques, and procedures



Corps Analysis and Control Element (ACE)

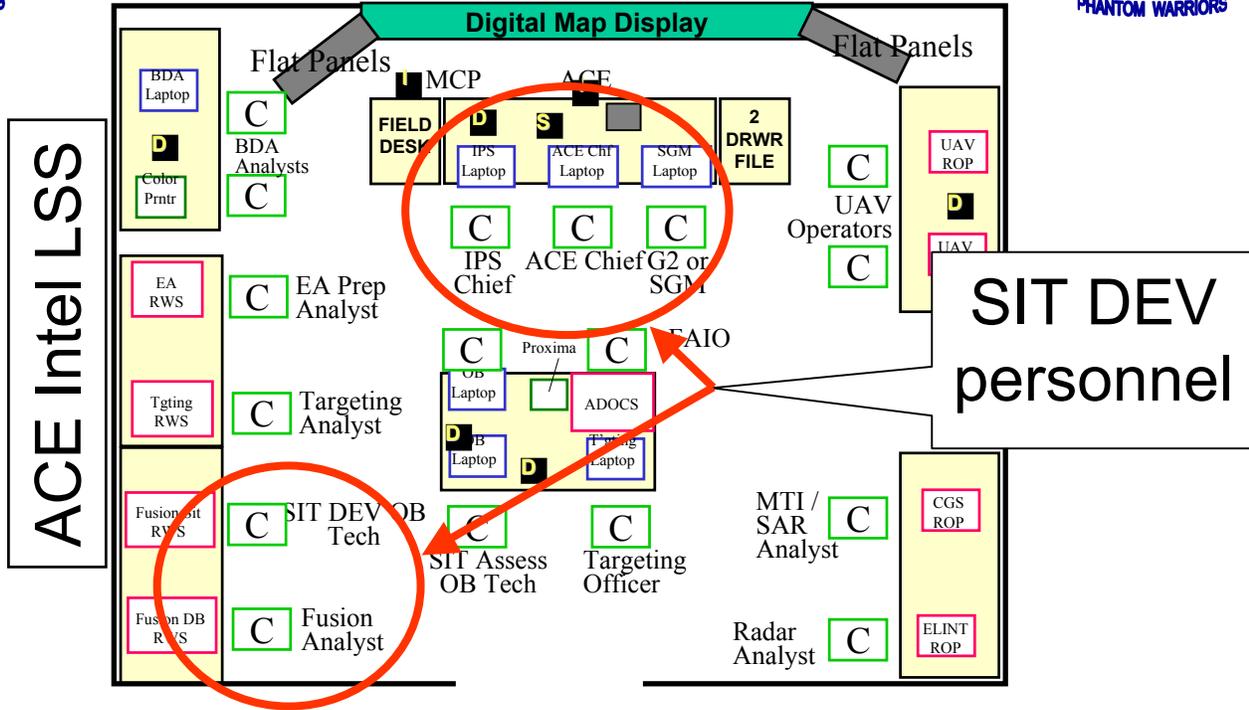


- Located at Corps MCP, FCP or SCP
- 504 MI task organizes for each mission
- Provides task organized DISE(s) to other CP's

Major functions:

- Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
- Indications & Warning
- Situation Development & Assessment
- Target Development
- Battle Damage Assessment
- Single Source Intelligence Processing (IMINT, COMINT, ELINT, HUMINT, OSINT)
- Force Protection/MDCI Analysis
- Collection Management & Dissemination
- Multi-Echelon Automation & Communications

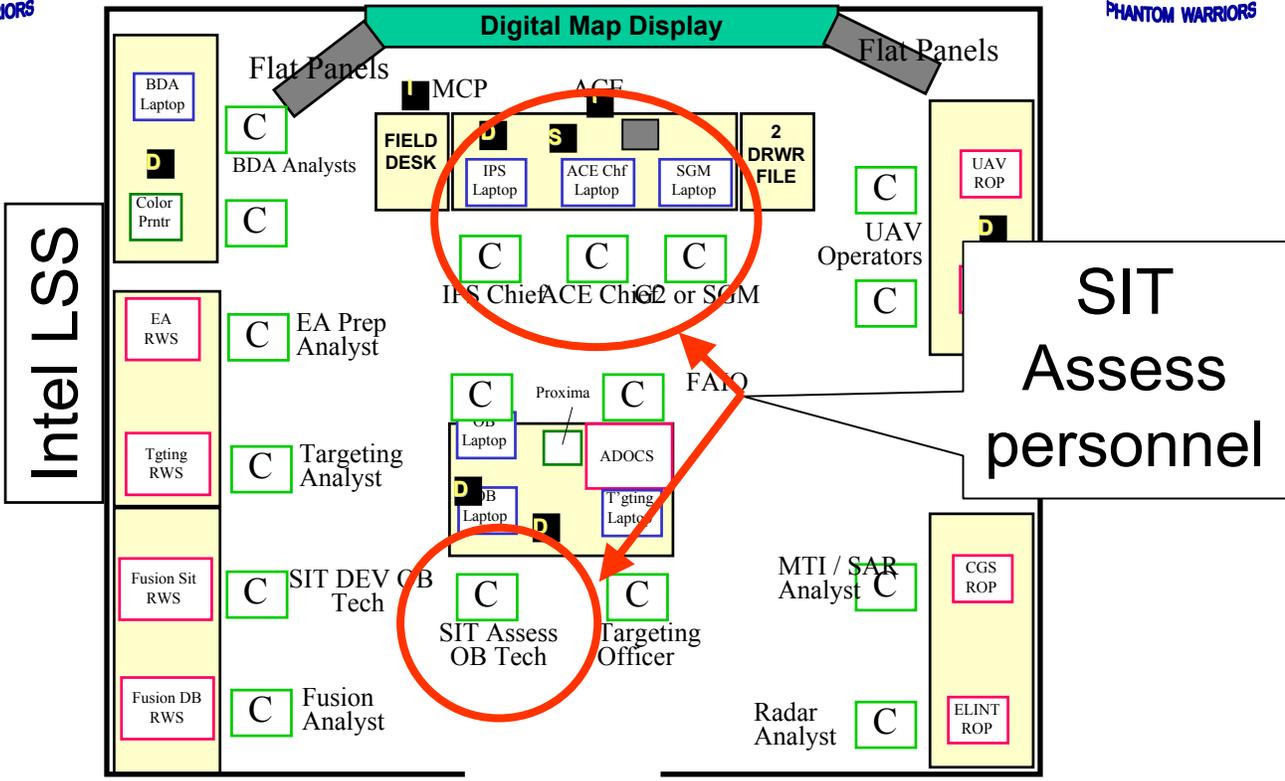
Situation Development



- Performed by G2 OPS & IPS section of ACE
- Process of maintaining accurate and current enemy situation
- Based on fused intelligence and information received from national, theater and Corps sources
- Incorporates close-fight input from MSCs
- Disseminated throughout Corps, higher and lower MSCs via ASAS RWS (EDC, Overlay, posted on Homepage) & input into MCS
- I&W functions embedded in SIT DEV

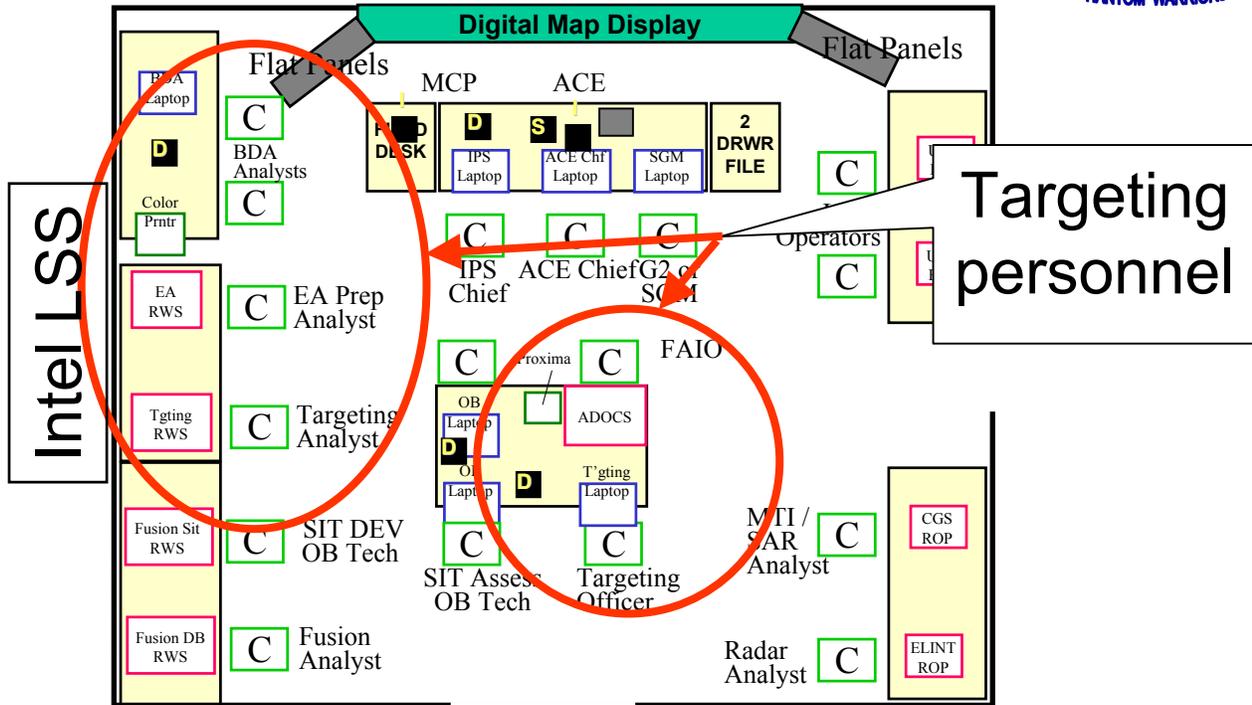


Situation Assessment



- Performed by G2 OPS and IPS section of ACE
- Predictive analysis of enemy intentions and capabilities based on current situation
- Culmination of ISR analytical effort
- Validated by III Corps G-2
- Incorporated into BUB, critical in CG's decision making process
- Disseminated throughout Corps, higher and MSCs via multiple means (INTSUM, INTREP, posted to Homepage)

Target Development (1/2)



- Provides targeting info to ECC
- Coordinates with the All-Source Enclave to provide entity-level layout of artillery, air defense, and maneuver equipment
- Creates event templates of counterattacking forces, their routes, and their timelines
- Nominates deep AI targets (key terrain, bridges, chokepoints, enemy units, etc).
- Coordinates with collection management to develop Named Areas of Interest (NAIs) and place collection assets against them.



Target Development (2/2)

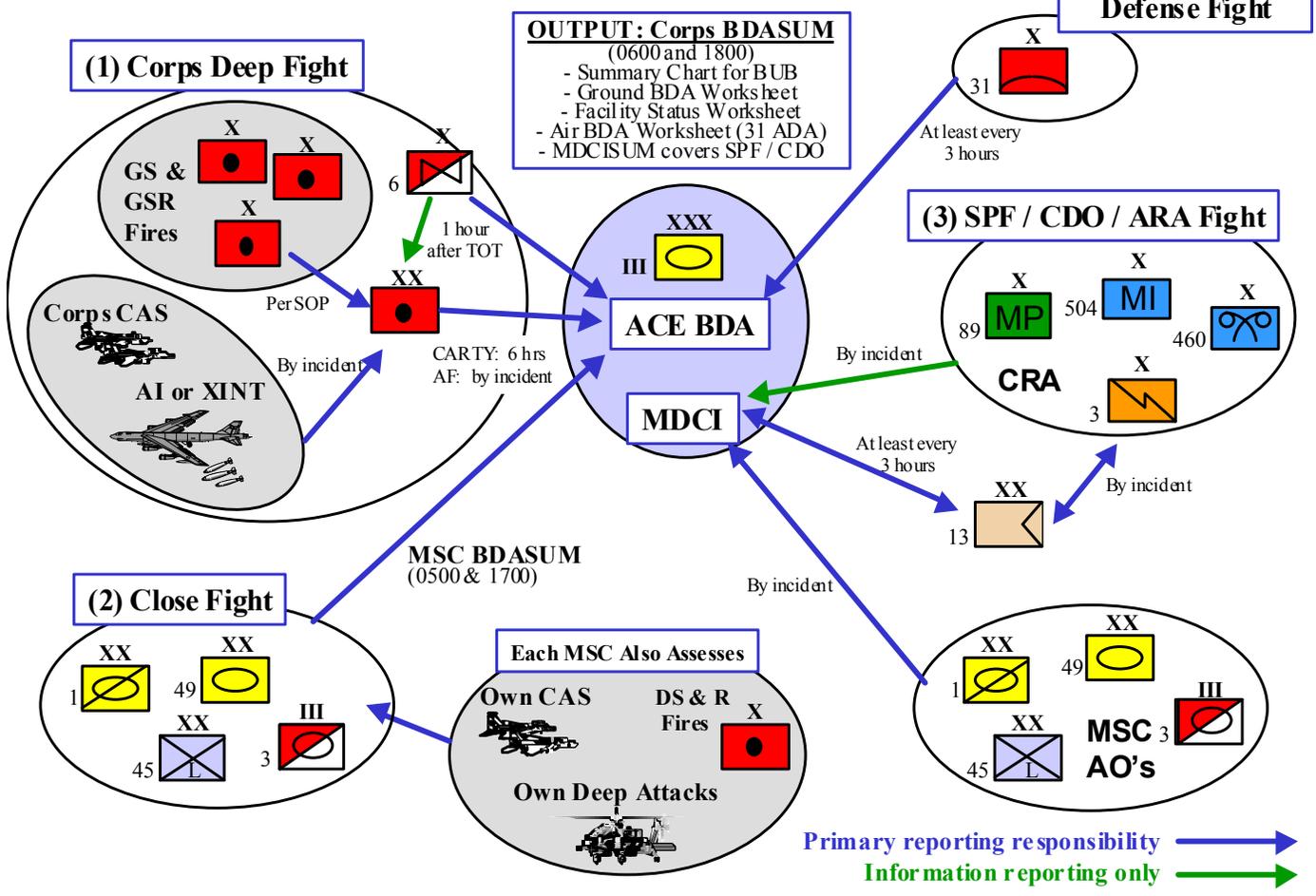


- Coordinates with G2 Plans and the All-Source Technician within the ACE in order to develop 24/48/72/96 hour assessments
- Coordinates with G2 Plans to develop High Value Targets (HVTs) prior to deployment so the Fire Support Element (FSE) can create the High Payoff Target Lists (HPTLs).
- Coordinates with the Field Artillery Intelligence Officer (FAIO) to ensure that automatic target nominations are working correctly
- Utilizes fused intelligence for the locations of probable enemy air defense systems. This information is given to the Aviation Liaison Officer to assist in planning aviation routes and Suppression of Enemy Air Defense (SEAD)
- Insures ACE always has current HPTL, AGM, and planned Corps shaping attack targets and routes



Battle Damage Assessment (BDA)

BDA Reporting Responsibilities

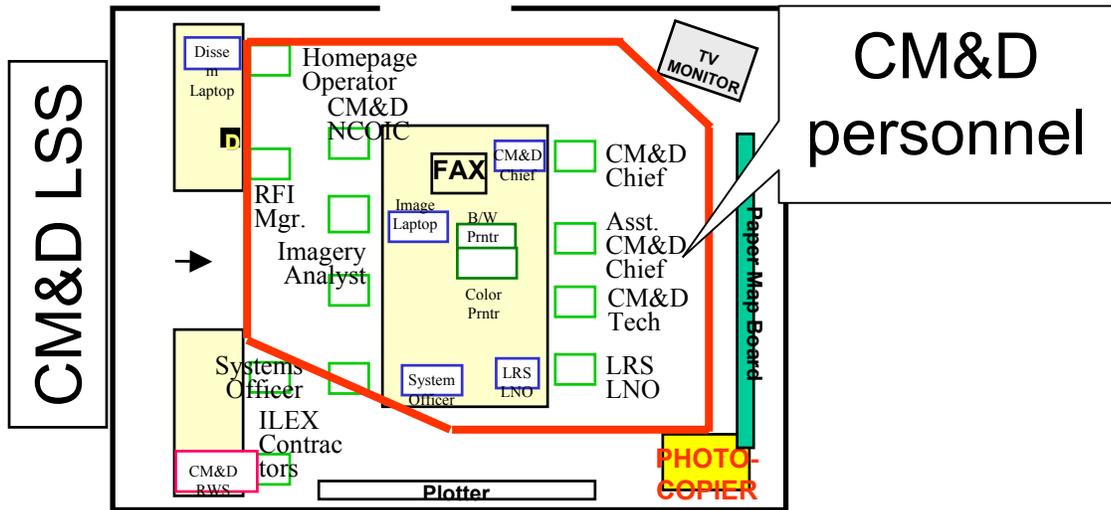


- BDA finalized in the Corps ACE (BDASUM)
- Intelligence collection finite--not all engaged targets are imaged for BDA
- Relevant BDA usually includes ground, air, & SPF strength and select facilities status... and their impact on operations

• Fundamental BDA model:

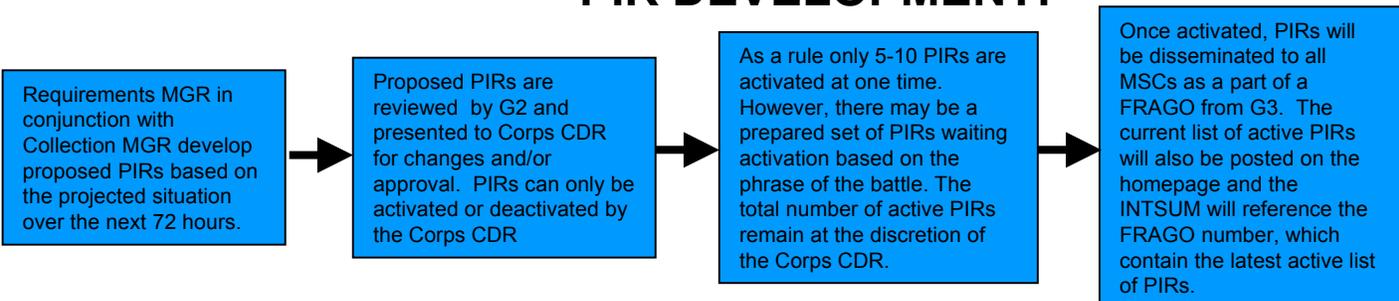
How much does enemy have?
 - how much have I destroyed?
 + how much is reconstituted?
 = how much enemy has now

Collection Management & Dissemination (CM&D) (1/2)



- Manages PIRs and IRs development develops
- Corps collection strategy
- Monitors and directs collection operations
- Disseminates intelligence products
- Manages RFIs
- Maintains the ACE Homepage
- Keeps the official ACE log

PIR DEVELOPMENT:





Collection Management & Dissemination (CM&D) (2/2)



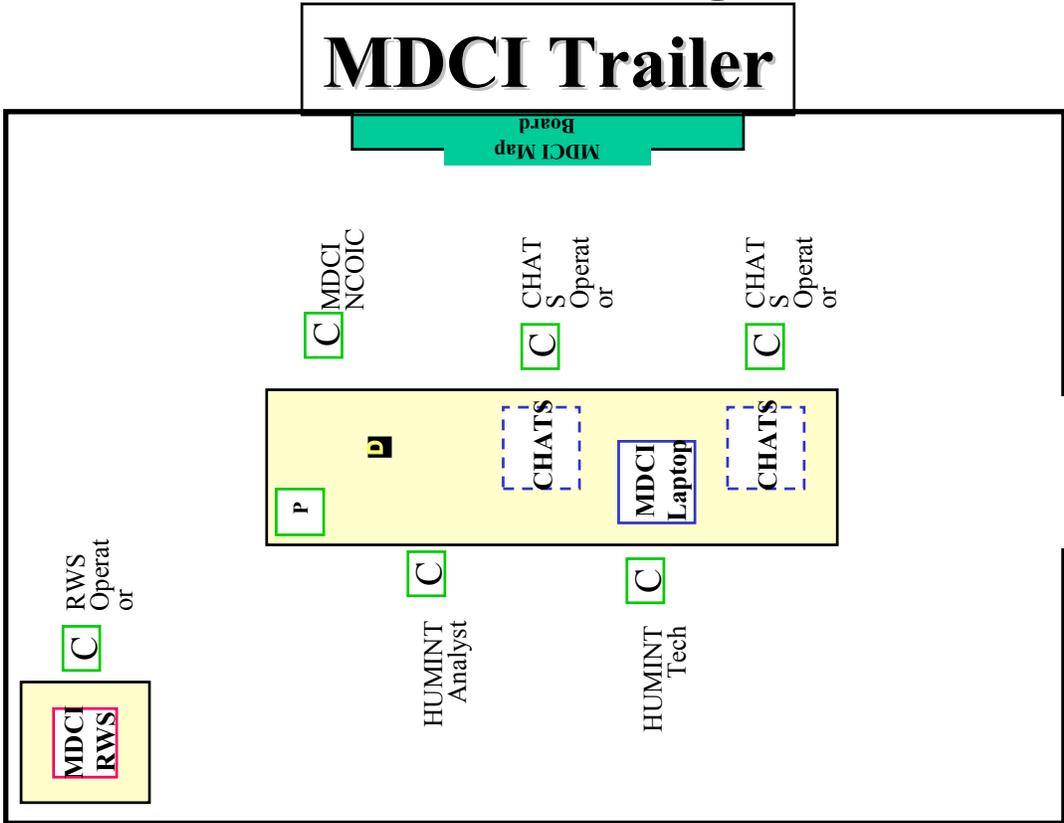
	Dissemination	Request for Information (RFI)
<i>Primary</i>	Corps TACLAN; homepage	COLISEUM; ACE homepage
<i>Alternate</i>	ACE shared folders; email	TACLAN; email
<i>Contingency</i>	DNVT or secure phone	DNVT or secure phone
<i>Emergency</i>	MSC runner or LNO	

Request for Support

- Planned collection requirements (CRs) transmitted by MSC in CEM or by TACLAN email
- Ad hoc CRs will be forwarded by TACLAN email or secure phone
- Imagery support forecasted and submitted NLT 5 days prior to h-hour. Request posted in MSC CEM. Ad hoc imagery filled on priority basis
- LRS support must be forwarded NLT 5 days prior to desired insertion.
- Requests for CI or IPW support must be forwarded NLT 3 days prior to desired support



MDCI and Force Protection Analysis (1/2)



- Analyze Multi-Discipline Intelligence/HUMINT collection threat targeted against friendly forces
- Assess opposition intelligence collection threat vulnerabilities and susceptibilities to friendly deception operations
- Support friendly vulnerability assessment
- Develop, evaluate, and recommend counter-measures



MDCI and Force

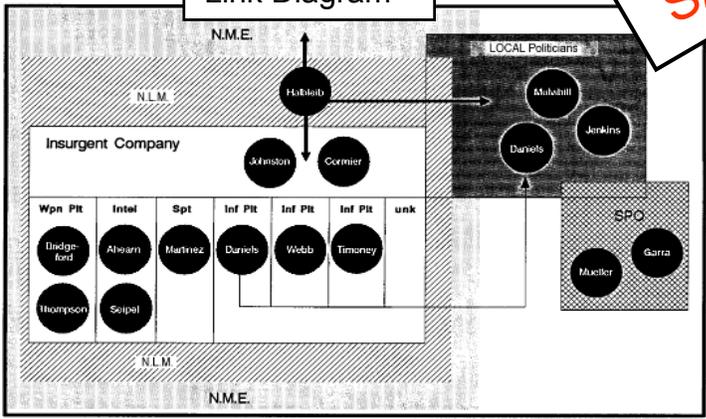
Protection Analysis (2/2)



Event Matrix

NAI	EVENT DESCRIPTION	TIME		HVT'S	ASSOCIATED C.O.A. REMARKS	EN DP
		Earliest	Latest			
9	Forward Position (FP) in the west engages lead company with direct fires	H+30 min			C.O.A. 2	-
9	Forward Position (FP) in the west withdraws to the MDL	H+60 min				1
5	CSOP in the West withdraws to the MDL	H+120 min			C.O.A. 1	4
4	Platoon BP in MDL at planned breach site engages lead company with direct fires	H+150 min			C.O.A. 1 or 2	-
1	Commit Battalion AT-Reserve to Reinforce Company BP in the west	H+180 min			C.O.A. 1	5
2	Commit Battalion AT-Reserve to Reinforce Company BP in the west	H+270 min			C.O.A. 1	

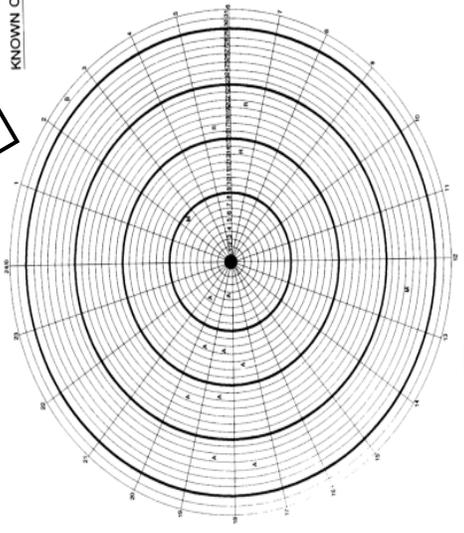
Link Diagram



SAMPLE

McDonough-Schuyler Province
 ACTIVITY and AREA: (Division AD)
 MONTH and YEAR: 1 April '01
 KNOWN COVERAGE GAPS: Colchester, Quincy

DAY	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	
A-17																															
A-4																															
A-21																															
A-27																															
A-14																															
A-24																															
M-28																															

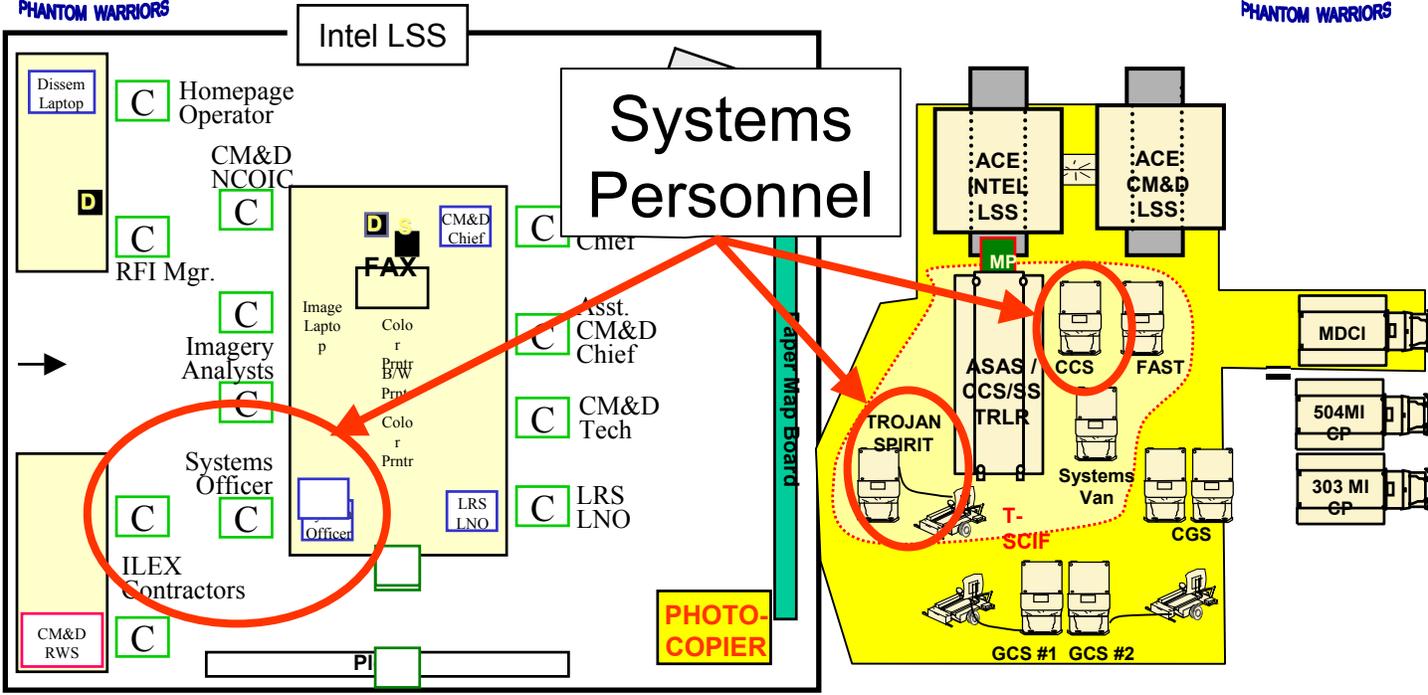


Pattern Analysis Plot

- Produce MDCI Summary (MDCISUM)
- Support rear operations by identifying collection threat to rear area units and installations
- Nominate targets for exploitation, neutralization, or destruction
- Develop and maintain CI database
- Identify info gaps in the form of IRs and provide requirements to CM&D



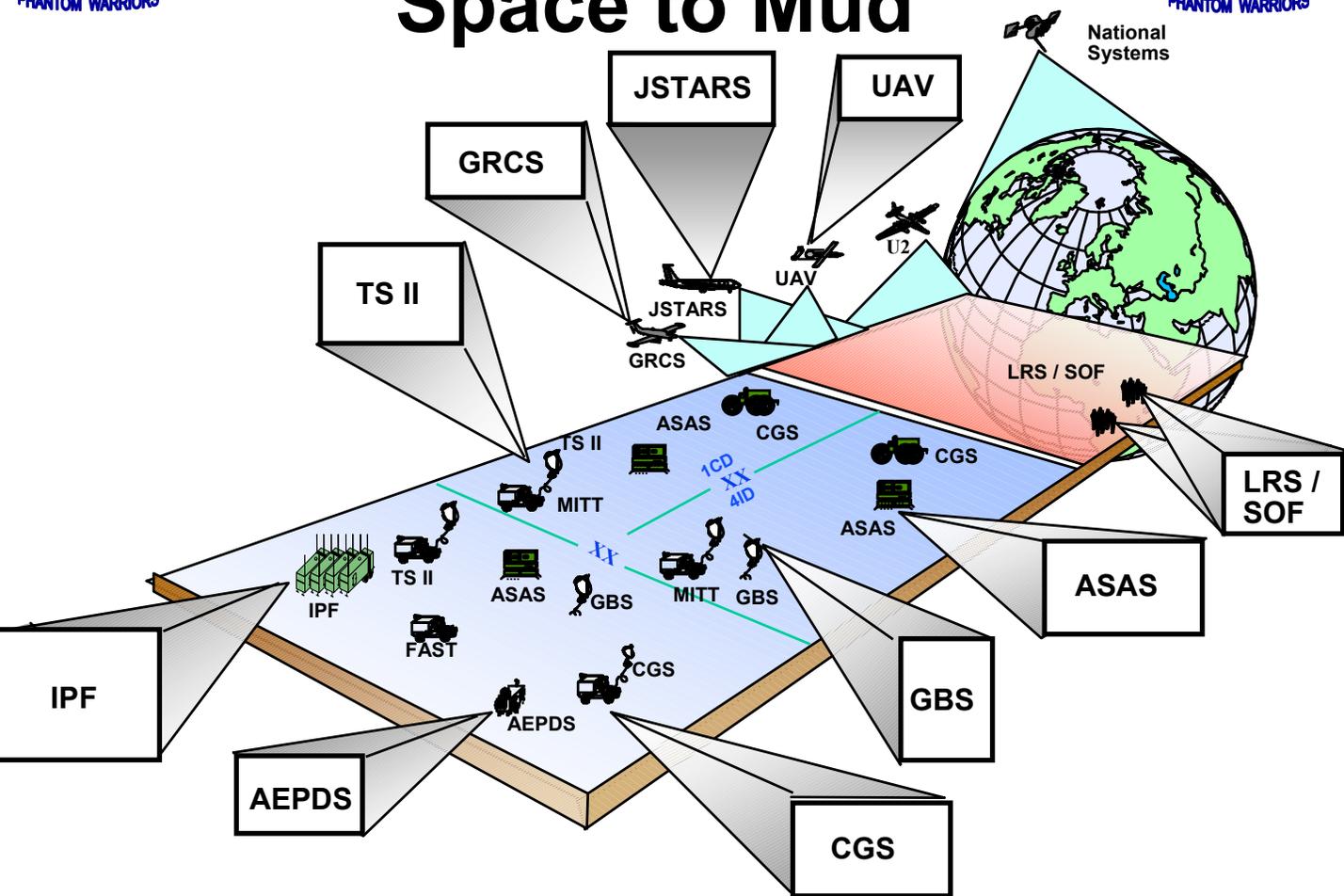
MEAC/Network OPs



- Plan and coordinate Intel Systems Architecture
- Coordinate support to Intel Systems in the ACE and deployed to other elements within the CP
- Provide IEW Maintenance Support
- Provide direct support to systems networked within the ACE
- POC for all operational contractor support to Intel Systems within the architecture for the MCP
- Provide operators and operator level maintenance to communications systems within the ACE architecture
- Coordinate prioritization of support for systems within the ACE architecture



ISR Reach: "Space to Mud"



- Corps ISR systems leverage reach-back architectures by design
- Access to theater/national database via SIPR, JWICS, and other networks (such as PASS-K)
- Direct downlink (DDL) of theater/national collection
- GRCS designed for out-of-theater IPF operations

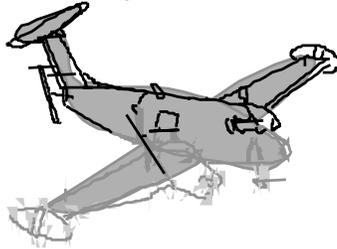


Collection & Analysis by Discipline



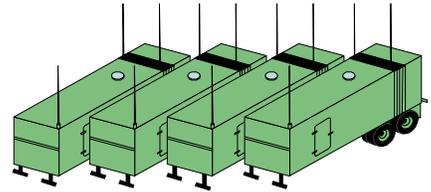
- The III Corps ACE is the primary source of collection, analysis, and dissemination of single source and all-source intelligence for the corps
- 10 key areas of analysis in the ACE

–COMINT



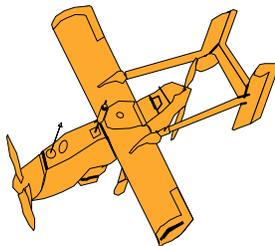
–ELINT

–IMINT



–Hunter UAV

–MTI



–LRS

–CI



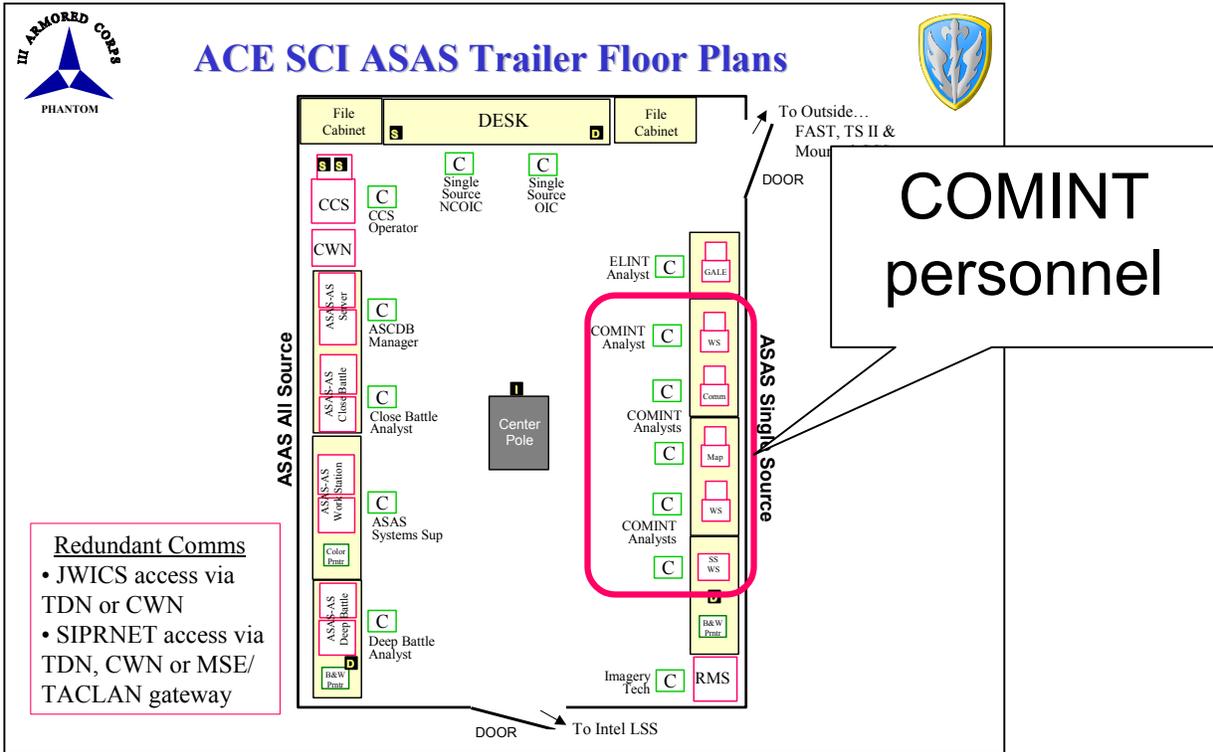
–TAC HUMINT

–EPW/DOCEX/Captured Equip





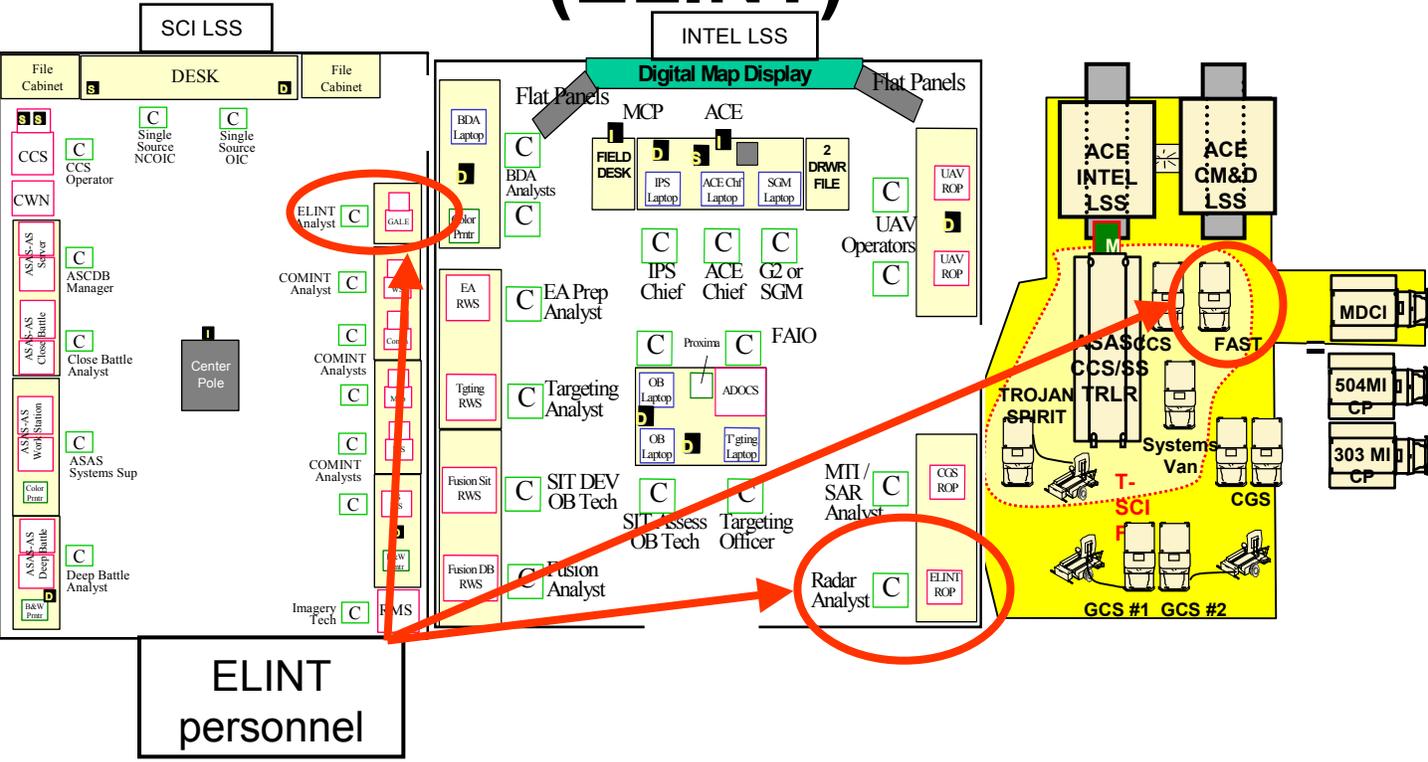
Communications Intelligence (COMINT)



- Maintains Corps master COMINT technical database
- Provides access to theater and national COMINT databases
- Provides technical control/tasking to GRCS IPF
- Performs nodal analysis
- Supports TGT DEV & SIT DEV by producing TACREPS to satisfy PIR/IR and HPTL
- Coordinates with ELINT to develop fused SIGINT assessments

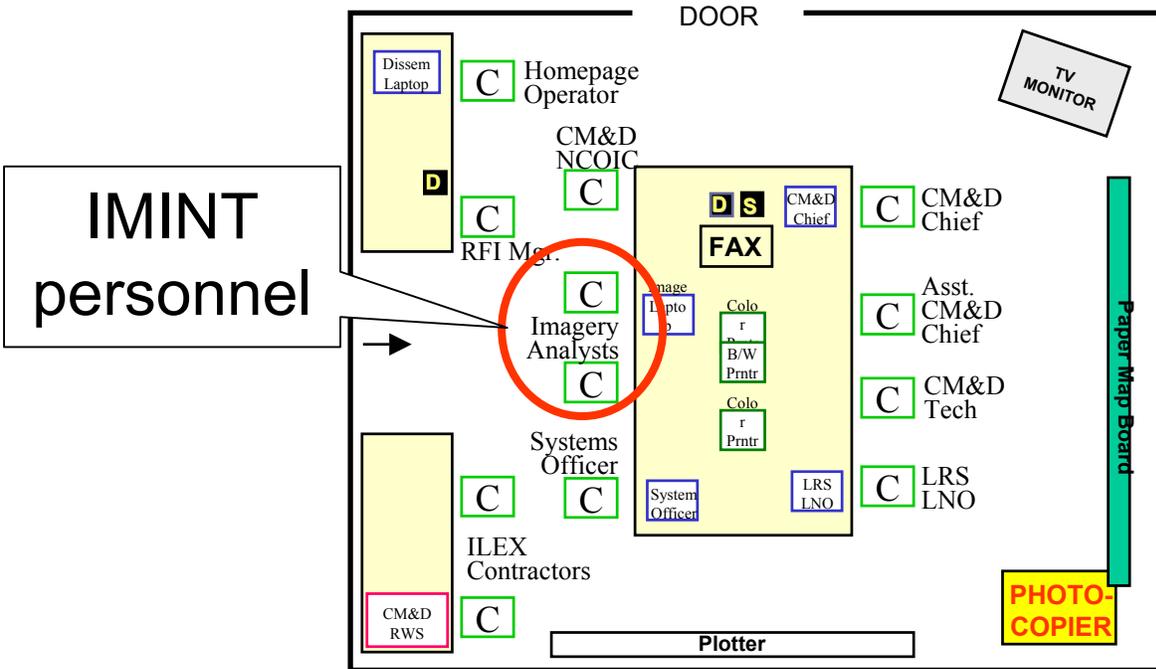


Electronic Intelligence (ELINT)



- Maintains Corps master ELINT technical database
- Provides access to theater and national ELINT databases
- Supports TGT DEV & SIT DEV by producing TACREPS/TACELINTS to satisfy PIR/IR and HPTL
- Processes threat EOB information
- Plots emitters with associated weapon system and organization
- Coordinates with COMINT to develop fused SIGINT assessments

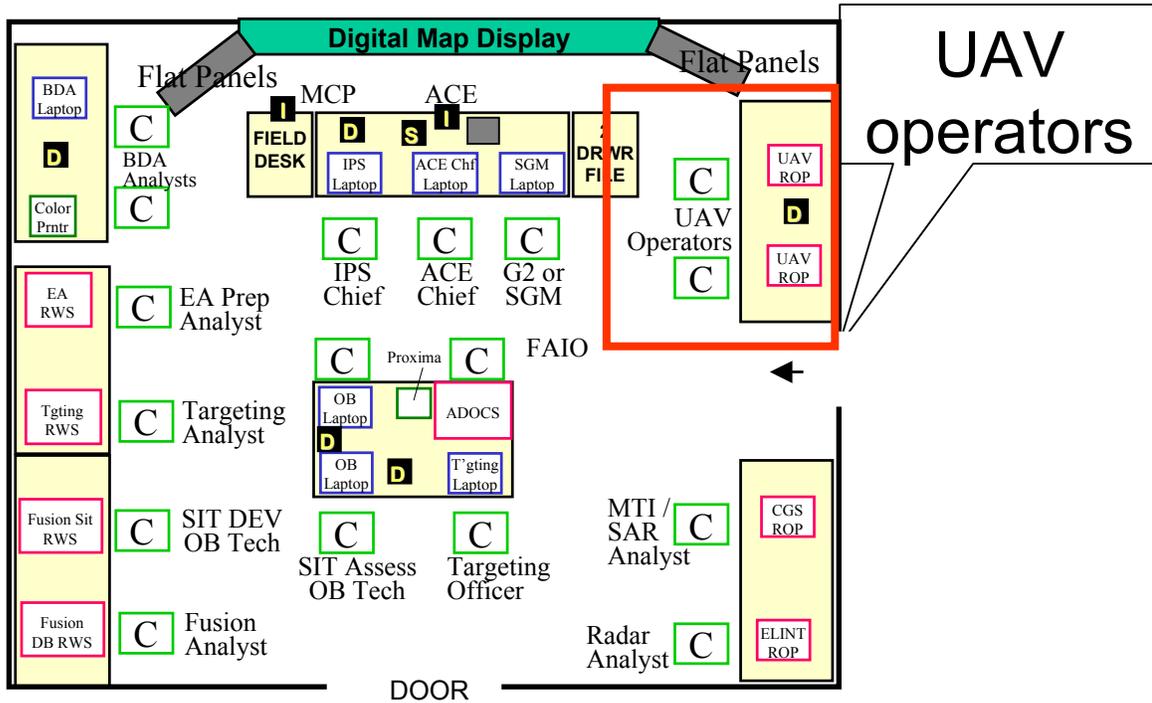
Imagery Intelligence (IMINT)



- Receives and maintains all Corps imagery requirements until complete.
- Develops, implements and maintains Corps imagery intelligence database.
- Develops, submits, and monitors imagery specific requirements and requests through the Requirements Managers System (RMS)
- Develop imagery collection requirements from PIR
- Coordinate with Corps staff, MSC IMINT managers and collection managers as required
- Disseminate IMINT products



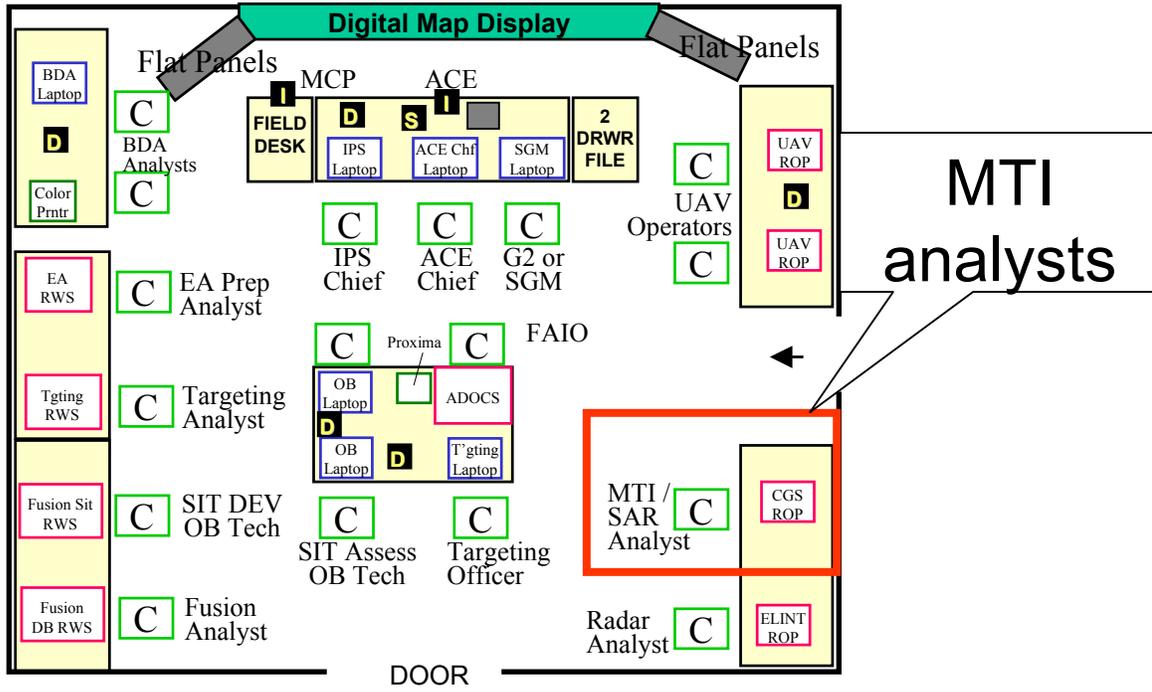
Hunter Unmanned Aerial Vehicle (UAV)



- Preferred method of operation is UAV flight control from ACE in MCP
- Facilitates satisfaction of Corps PIR, TGT DEV, and BDA taskings, capability to rapidly dynamically re-task the UAV
- Corps MI BDE will position UAV Ground Control Station (GCS), ground data terminals, UAV operators, and two LNOs at the Corps MCP
- With GRCS II LNO, devise an overlay/grid ref system for the Corps AOR that assists in airspace coordination and collection tasking.
- Conduct liaison with other UAV systems LNOs within the Corps AOR to manage and deconflict airspace.



Moving Target Indicator (MTI) Analysis



- Uses MTI and SIGINT locations to confirm or deny enemy COA
- Query SIGINT database for existing information to compliment MTI or (CTT) SIGINT information
- Requests the CGS RWS operator review the CGS historical database to use MTI information to supplement of existing intelligence.
- Updates enemy locations/movement based on MTI
- Creates graphic intelligence products on the CGS workstations
- Requests additional MTI information



Long Range Surveillance Team (LRS)



Time Zone Used Throughout this Appendix: SIERRA.

1. SITUATION.

- a. Enemy. See Current INTSUM.
- b. Friendly. No Change.

2. MISSION. No Change.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Long Range Surveillance Teams 11, 15, 17, 18, 22 & 23 will be inserted 032300MAR02 H+168 ITO CH in order to develop OBJ Walker. Extraction time is 070000MAR02 H+282 ITO CL.



b. The following

<u>Team</u>	<u>LZ</u>	<u>HideSite</u>	<u>PZ</u>	<u>NAIs</u>
11	BJ451089	BJ441079	BJ458093	900 (HWY 53 NW SANGWON
15	YC447851	YC425855	YC434858	901 (MSR1 & RT1953 AT HWANGJU)
17	YC607830	YC605822	YC603842	902 (HWY 1053 NORTH YANTAH)
18	BH915923	BH915909	BH932925	903 (INT 5333/5331/3333)
22	BH782662	BH915909	BH932925	904 (BRIDGE OVER YESANGANGA)
23	BH520550	BH520620	BH528628	905 (MSR1 & RT 1059 NW SOHUNG)

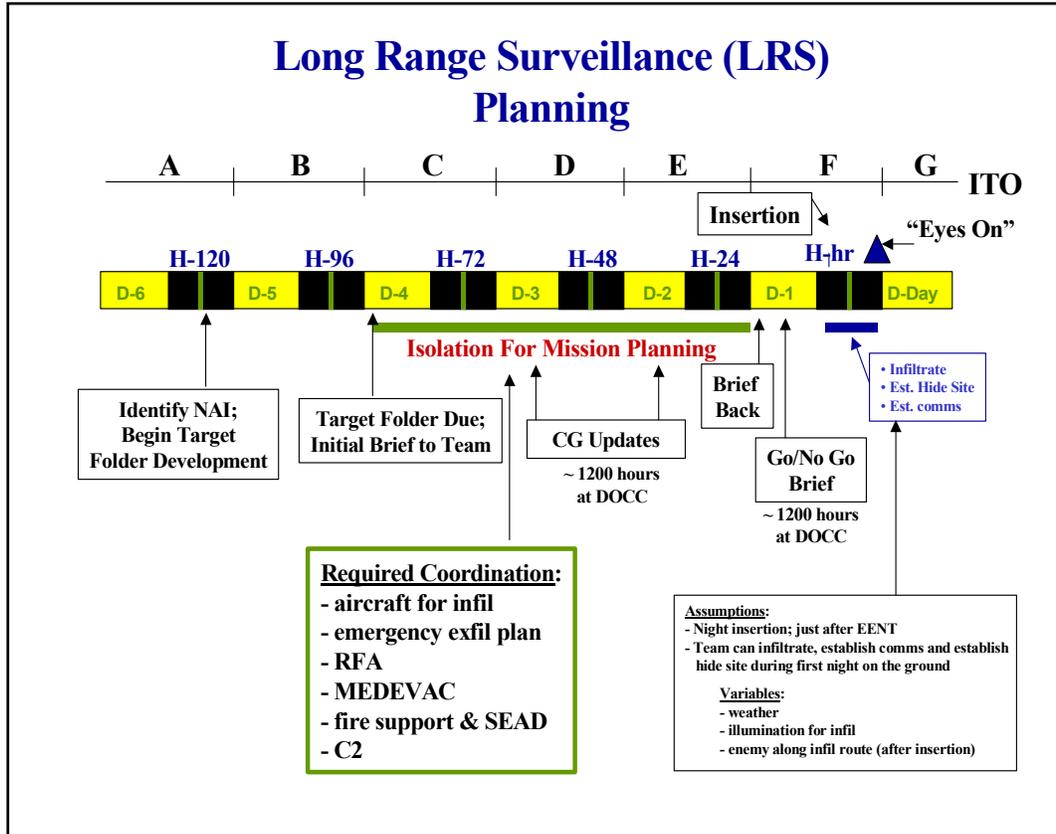
4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Omitted.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL. No Change.

- 221 MI BN (TE) generally provides LRS LNO
- MSC requests for Corps LRS support must be forwarded to Corps Collection Management NLT 5 days prior to desired insertion time
- Requests must be accompanied by a completed LRS target/mission folder



Long Range Surveillance Team (LRS)



- Target/mission folder format is available from Corps Collection Management
- Corps CM&D manages LRS requirements for collection
- The LRS LNO/COB will conduct and coordinate for insertion/extraction and mission planning.



Tactical Human Intelligence Teams (THT)

- THT may consist of CI, IPW and security personnel (4-6 people)
- Technical taskings developed by ACE to satisfy PIR / IR and force protection requirements
- Major functions:
 - interrogate EPW's
 - perform DOC-EX
 - screen displaced civilians
 - conduct vulnerability assessments
 - perform CFSO
 - OPSEC surveys





EPW / CED / CEE



Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW)



- Treat IAW Geneva Hague convention
- Use 5 S's
- THT debrief EPW as far forward as possible
- High value EPW evacuated to rear ASAP
- EPW tagged with capture tag, if avail, minimum of Date/Time/Location of capture/ capturing unit, circumstances surrounding capture



Captured Enemy Documents (CED)

- Evacuate captured SOI, Codes, Ciphers, etc. immediately to the nearest SIGINT element
- Treat as SECRET docs (incl re-captured US SOI)
- Ensure confiscated docs linked to EPW
- Tag & notify next higher MI unit if possible

Captured Enemy Equipment (CEE)



- Ensure EPW cannot destroy any CEE
- Evacuate capture tag with CEE
- Evacuate captured encryption or comms equip immediately to the nearest SIGINT element (includes recaptured US COMSEC devices)
- Ensure CEE can be linked back to EPW



Open Source (OSINT)



Enormous amount of valuable information is available through open source (internet, newspapers, television)

Large impact on Situation Development & Assessment

Most frequent sources:

During routine garrison operations

CNN.com

MSNBC.com

BBC.com

Early Bird

SIRO

FOX news



During contingency operations

Internet sources

Local newspaper

Local TV news

Cable TV news





SPECIAL SECURITY OFFICE



SSO FUNCTIONS

- Upon alert request Tactical SCIF accreditation for 303MI ACE, 3rd ACR and Ft. Sill from theater CINC.
- Inspect the TSCIF to ensure area is secure and separate/distinct within the III Corps TOC perimeter.
- Provide SCI courier orders and a 24/7 POC for privacy communications for the command.
- Provide security personnel SCI access rosters and physical and document security procedures.
- Provide 24/7 EYES ONLY (EO) support to the Command Group, staff and supported elements.
- Request non-codeword reporting through DIA/NSA, and act as their field representative for sanitation.
- Request to NSA use of COMINT within 120 days of STARTEX. Monitor and provide guidance on its use.
- Review and validate the use of Exercise COMINT for CORTRAIN units and forward them to NSA.
- Brief the MP force on their duties and responsibilities pertaining to the use of force while guarding the TCIF.



WEATHER SUPPORT



WEATHER SUPPORT FUNCTIONS

- The Commander, 3rd Weather Squadron (USAF), is the Staff Weather Officer (SWO) responsible for coordinating and executing weather team (WETM) operations within III Corps. Provides guidance, Standardizes procedures (WETM TACSOP) and provides oversight of the MSC weather teams.
- Collect, analyze and disseminate weather information from EAC weather sources, MSC WETMs, Allied WETM, forward unit S2's, and pilots.
- Weather teams consist of Air Force weather observers and forecasters. The WETM uses all-source weather intelligence to provide the SWO Bulletin, which serves as the primary input to IPB, specialized weather effect forecasts, which show effects on friendly and enemy operations, plans and weapon systems, Special forecast products to support electro-optical (E-O) systems, aviation, and intelligence operations Special forecast products to support electro-optical (E-O) systems, aviation, and intelligence operations.



G3 TACOPS



C.2

MANEUVER



BFA OPERATIONS



MANEUVER

- **TACTICAL MOVEMENT**
- **OPERATIONS**
 - **COMMAND POST DISPLACEMENT**
 - **III CORPS BATTLE RHYTHM**
 - **BATTLE UPDATE BRIEF**
 - **III CORPS REPORTS / INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS**
 - **TACTICAL OPERATION REHEARSALS**
 - **LIAISON OFFICER/NCO RESPONSIBILITIES**



Tactical Movements



A corps combines the operational and tactical levels of war and conducts numerous types of movements. The principal types of movements are unit movements and sustainment. Unit movements entail marches by friendly convoys from a rear area forward to, and in many cases beyond, the line of departure (LD) or to establish a defense. A corps must also coordinate all concurrent movements to ensure a continuous flow of available transportation assets along lines of communication (LOCs) within its area of operation (AO). Movement planning involves not only the movement of assets along LOCs, but must also encompass the planning required to maintain and improve those LOCs.

While III Corps is responsible for planning and maintaining all LOCs within its AO, this pamphlet focuses primarily upon Corps movement along ground routes. Depending upon the theater, the terrain within the Corps AO may possess sufficient infrastructure to allow movement of only combat forces along specified routes and only logistics along main supply routes (MSRs) and alternate supply routes (ASRs). In theaters possessing limited routes, combat forces may be forced to move along primary routes, MSRs, and ASRs.

**REFERENCE III CORPS TACTICAL MOVEMENT STANDARD
OPERATING PROCEDURE (SOP) TBP 2002**



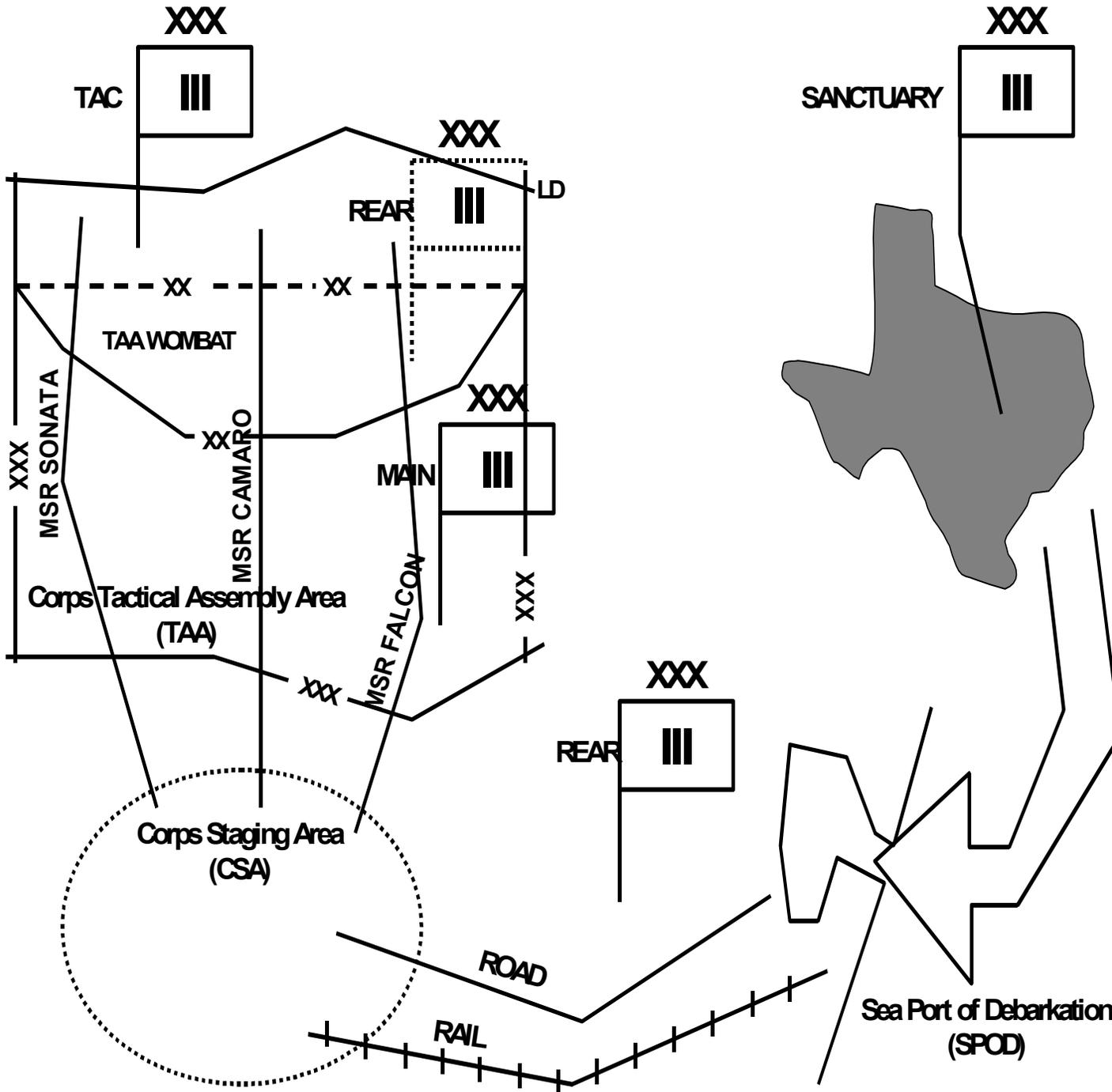
Tactical Movement Risks Associated with COE



- Adaptive, cunning adversary(ies) capable of full spectrum operations
- Initial attempts to deny access to theater
 - POD/POE denial using WME, labor/civic unrest, terrorism, mining, IO, and other traditional military methods
 - Disrupt deployments in CONUS
 - Disrupt RSOI operations
- Asymmetrical tactics in all phases of operation
 - attack throughout battlespace—especially key nodes in “rear” areas
 - military op’s integrated with IO / measures to influence public opinion
 - collusion with terrorists, guerrillas, criminals, and/or partisan groups/actors
 - use of niche technologies, especially weapons and communications



CP Locations





CP/CMD GP Locations (1/4)

TAC CP



The III Corps Tactical CP (TAC CP) commands and controls close battle. As the Corps deploys, the TAC CP positions itself well forward to enable the commander's visualization of his battlespace. When the Corps will command and control movements forward of the TAA, the TAC CP positions itself where it can best influence the battle without interfering with divisional movement and/or maneuver. If 3ACR is conducting a security mission, the TAC CP shapes 3ACR's close battle and allows the Main CP to focus on those activities behind the ACR's rear boundary. Clearance of fires and terrain management forward of that rear boundary is the responsibility of the 3ACR commander.



CP/CMD GP Locations (2/4)

REAR CP



The III Corps Rear CP, under the command of the Deputy Commanding General (US), follows the TAC CP and immediately establishes itself at the seaport of debarkation (SPOD) to track and account for the Corps' assets arriving in theater. Since the Corps will most likely not control the routes and the terrain between the ports of debarkation (PODs) and the TAA, the Rear CP also coordinates with higher (joint task force, numbered army, unified command, or multinational headquarters) for access to routes, logistics, and wartime host nation support. Once the Commanding General, **13COSCOM**, establishes his CP, and the Corps Main CP is established in the Corps TAA, the Deputy Commanding General(US) jumps forward to the Main CP with his assistant fire support coordinator (AFSCOORD) and aide to set the conditions for combat operations and to “pull” Corps assets forward. The Rear CP then falls under the command of the Commanding General, **13COSCOM**, who continues to “push” Corps assets and logistics forward. Once the Corps closes on its PODs, the Rear CP jumps forward into the TAA and positions itself where it can best continue to command the Corps' sustainment and rear battle.



CP/CMD GP Locations (3/4)

MAIN CP



Following the Rear CP, the III Corps Main CP deploys into theater and moves immediately to the Corps TAA. Because not all Corps forces have closed on the TAA as the Main CP sets, **the Main CP** positions itself in a secure location in the TAA to maximize its survivability. The Main CP's primary purpose is to shape the Corps battlespace and set the conditions to commence the Corps' operations. In most circumstances, once the Rear CP establishes its operations at **a POD**, the Deputy Commanding General(US) will position himself forward to "pull" the Corps into the TAA. While at the Main CP, the Deputy Commanding General (US) also commands the Corps tactical combat force (TCF) from that location. If required, the Main CP may control divisional movements forward of the Corps TAA prior to the establishment of divisional battlespace. In that situation, the Main CP may require additional liaison or command and control assets from the divisions and **89MP BDE** to ensure timely and accurate reporting. The Main CP collects the divisions' march tables and tracks closely the status of all march units and serials. If necessary, the Main CP directs march units or serials to occupy holding areas to allow the movement forward of later march units or serials. In short, the Main CP "delivers" the divisions into their battlespace in a manner that allows them to immediately assume the close battle. At some point, either with the establishment of the Corps Rear CP in the TAA or the establishment of divisional battlespace, the Deputy Commanding General (US) moves back to the Rear CP to assume command of the rear battle. Once the Deputy Commanding General (US) assumes command of the rear battle at the Rear CP, command of the TCF also passes from the Main CP to the Rear CP. The Rear CP also once again controls movement in the Corps rear area to ensure flexible and timely logistics support.



CP/CMD GP Locations (4/4) SANCTUARY CP



The Sanctuary CP assists the Rear CP in the tracking and accounting for Corps assets as they deploy. In some circumstances, the Sanctuary CP may act as the Rear CP if the latter does not deploy. In that case, the Main CP maintains command of the Corps TCF. If the forward CPs rely on the Sanctuary CP as a “reach back” capability, then the Sanctuary CP may also assist in maintaining the COP, to include enemy, terrain, and logistics updates.



OPERATIONS



BATTLE RHYTHM

TIME (Hood)	Higher HQ	III CORPS	MSCs
0100(S)	Submit CDR's SITREP to Higher (Fusion Cell)	-	-
		Staff Huddle (Internal)	-
0200(S)	Receive Graphic INTSUM (G2)	Publish Graphic INTSUM (ACE)	Pull Graphic INTSUM (ACE/G2/S2)
0300(S)			
0400(S)	Receive CDR's SITREP (G3)	Submit CDR's SITREP (G3)	-
		Receive Ops Update (G3)	Submit Ops Update (G3)
		Receive RSR from MSCs (ACE)	Submit RSRs (ACE/G2/S2)
0500(S)		Staff Huddle (Internal)	-
		Receive BDASUM from MSCs (ACE)	Submit BDASUM (ACE/G2/S2)
		BUB Input Due to III Corps (G3)	BUB Input Due to III Corps (G3)
0600(S)	ITO In Effect	ITO In Effect	ITO In Effect
	Publish INTEL Update (G2)	Receive INTEL Update from 8th Army (G2)	-
		Receive INTSUM from MSCs (ACE)	Submit INTSUM (ACE/G2/S2)
		Inter-CP Conference Call (G3) (as required)	Inter-CP Conference Call (G3)
		Pre-Targeting Meeting (DOCC)	-
		G2 Conference Call	G2 Conference Call
	Receive Corps BDASUM (G2)	Publish Corps BDASUM (ACE)	Pull Corps BDASUM (ACE/G2/S2)



OPERATIONS



BATTLE RHYTHM

TIME (Hood)	Higher HQ	III CORPS	MSCs
0700(S)	8th Army BUB	-	-
	Shift Change (All)	-	-
		III Corps BUB Slide Review (G3)	-
0730(S)		BUB VTC Check	BUB VTC Check
0800(S)		III Corps BUB (CG)	III Corps BUB (CG)
		Receive Ops Update (G3)	Submit Ops Update (G3)
		Targeting Meeting (DOCC)	-
	Receive INTSUM (G2)	Publish INTSUM (ACE)	Pull INTSUM (ACE/G2/S2)
0900(S)		Shift Change (All)	-
		Plans Meeting (Plans/CG)	-
		Receive ACMR (G3 AVN)	Submit ACMR (A2C2)
			-
0930(S)	Plans Meeting	-	-
1000(S)	Targeting Meeting (Fires/Effects)	-	-
		Receive ITOs/NOTAMS (DOCC)	Submit ITOs/NOTAMS (FSE)
	Receive Ops Update (G3)	Submit Ops Update (G3)	-
		Corps CSS Update VTC (CSS)	Corps CSS Update VTC (CSS)



OPERATIONS



BATTLE RHYTHM

TIME (Hood)	Higher HQ	III CORPS	MSCs
1100(S)			
1200(S)		Receive CRZ/UGF Report (G3)	Submit CRZ/UGF Report
		Receive Force Protection Report (G3)	Submit Force Protection Report
		Inter-CP Conference Call (G3) (as required)	Inter-CP Conference Call (G3)
		Deep Ops Decision Brief (DOCC)	-
		Receive Ops Update (G3)	Submit Ops Update (G3)
1300(S)	Targeting Decision Brief	-	-
		Staff Huddle (Internal)	-
	Submit 8th Army SITREP to Higher (Fusion Cell)	-	-
1330(S)		Corps Plans Team / LNO Update	Corps Plans Team / LNO Update
1400(S)	Receive Graphic INTSUM (G2)	Publish Graphic INTSUM (ACE)	Pull Graphic INTSUM (ACE/G2/S)
		Review CG Slides for 8th Army BUB (G3)	-
		Issue Deep Ops WARNO (DOCC)	Receive Deep Ops WARNO (FSE)
		Movement Board Meeting (Rear)	-
		IO Working Group (@ MAIN IOIC)	-
1500(S)		Deep Ops Synchronization Meeting (FSE)	-



OPERATIONS



BATTLE RHYTHM

TIME (Hood)	Higher HQ	III CORPS	MSCs
1600(S)	Receive Ops Update (G3)	Submit Ops Update to 8th Army (G3)	-
	Publish Future Ops WARNO (Fires/Effects)	Receive Future Ops WARNO (DOCC)	-
	Publish Deeps Ops FRAGO (Fires/Effects)	Receive Deeps Ops FRAGO (DOCC)	-
	Receive ITO/NOTAMS (Fires/Effects)	Submit ITO/NOTAMS to 8th Army (DOCC)	-
		Receive Ops Update (G3)	Submit Ops Update (G3)
		Receive RSR from MSCs (ACE)	Submit RSRs (ACE/G2/S2)
1700(S)	8th Army BUB (CG)	8th Army BUB (CG)	Submit BDASUM (ACE/G2/S2)
		Receive BDASUM from MSCs (ACE)	Submit BDASUM (ACE/G2/S2)
1800(S)	Publish INTEL Update (G2)	Receive INTEL Update from 8th Army (G2)	-
		Inter-CP Conference Call (G3) (as required)	Inter-CP Conference Call (G3)
		Receive INTSUM from MSCs (ACE)	Submit INTSUM (ACE/G2/S2)
		Receive ITOs/NOTAMS (DOCC)	Submit ITOs/NOTAMS (FSE)
	Publish Airspace Control Order (A2C2)	Receive Airspace Control Order (G3 AVN)	-
		Publish Airspace Order (G3 AVN)	Receive Airspace Order (A2C2)
		G2 Conference Call	G2 Conference Call
	Receive Corps BDASUM (G2)	Publish Corps BDASUM (ACE)	Pull Corps BDASUM (ACE/G2/S2)
1900(S)	Shift Change (All)	-	-
2000(S)		Receive Ops Update (G3)	Submit Ops Update (G3)
		F-2 Go/No-Go Decision Brief (DOCC)	-



OPERATIONS



BATTLE RHYTHM

TIME (Hood)	Higher HQ	III CORPS	MSCs
2100(S)		Staff Shift Change (All)	-
		Plans Meeting (Plans/CG)	-
		Receive CEM from MSC (ACE)	Submit CEM (ACE/G2/S2)
2200(S)	Receive Ops Update (G3)	Submit Ops Update (G3)	-
2300(S)			
2400(S)		Inter-CP Conference Call (G3) (as required)	Inter-CP Conference Call (G3)
		Receive Ops Update (G3)	Submit Ops Update (G3)
	Receive CEM (G2)	Publish CEM (ACE)	Pull CEM (ACE/G2/S2)



OPERATIONS



BATTLE UPDATE BRIEF (1 OF 12)

PURPOSE: To provide the III Corps Commander and subordinate MSC commanders an opportunity to receive critical informational updates regarding current and future operations and for the III Corps Commander to issue guidance.

SCHEDULE: 0800 daily (VTC)

DURATION: No longer than 60 minutes

- Staff (first 30 minutes)
- MSCs (last 30 minutes)

SUSPENSE: Send slides to G3 Operations at 3C TAC, G3 BUB (III Corps TAC) NLT 0500 daily (3 hours prior to BUB).

LOCATION: Briefed from III Corps TAC. G3 Operations will publish BUB to public folders once it is approved for distribution, NLT 0730.



OPERATIONS



BATTLE UPDATE BRIEF (2 OF 12)

FORMAT: Microsoft PowerPoint slideshow

- Arial font
- Landscape layout
- White background
- Black Text
- Color only for highlighting / emphasis

COLOR & GRAPHICS:

- Changes or updates will be highlighted in a blue (i.e. change in an order, CCIR, etc.)
- Status color-coding should reflect the standard Green, Amber, Red, and Black designations as per the III Corps TACSOP.
- Unit symbols will be IAW FM 101-5-1.
- Where possible, use standard tactical symbology and graphics.



OPERATIONS



BATTLE UPDATE BRIEF (3 OF 12)

- Key Dates
- Current FRAGOs
- SWO
- G2/G3 Current Situation
- Staff / BOS Elements
- MSC Briefs (G3 Specified)
 - Main Effort
 - Supporting Effort
 - Shaping Effort
 - Sustaining Effort
- Chief of Staff Comments
- DCG's Comments
- CG's Guidance



OPERATIONS



BATTLE UPDATE BRIEF (4 OF 12)

Staff / Battle Functional Area (BFA):*

- Shaping Ops
- ADE
- Engineer
- G1
- G4
- G5
- G6
- CHEM

MSC: MSCs will brief the following information:

- Main Effort
- Supporting Effort
- Shaping Effort
- Sustaining Effort

* Staff / BFA Elements (Shaping Ops, ADE, ENG, G1, G4, G5, G6, & CHEM) will brief only by exception. Preference is to have relevant or significant information incorporated into the G2/G3 assessment slides. It is critical that unnecessary redundancy and repetition of information is avoided.

BATTLE UPDATE BRIEF (5 OF 12)

**III (US) CORPS
PHANTOM
LIGHTNING**

Slide 1 Cover Slide

KEY DATES

TODAY IS: 270800(S)FEB02 (H+52)

D-DAY: 24FEB02
H-HOUR: 241800(S)FEB02

- CURRENT 8th ARMY FRAGO: 30
- CURRENT III (US) CORPS FRAGO : 87

Slide 2 Key dates

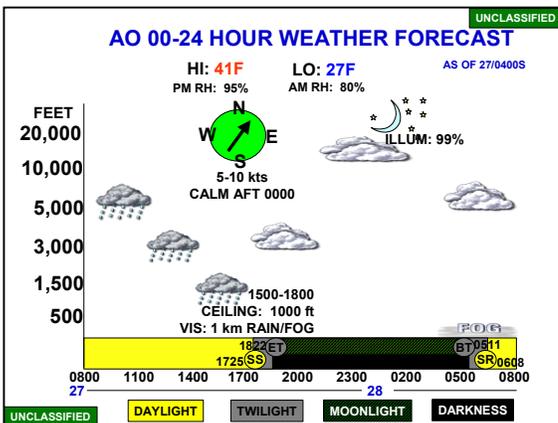
III Corps FRAGOS

- 80 262230(S)FEB02 – Time synchronization for coordination.
- 81 262245(S)FEB02 – OPCON two chemical plts to 17 FAB.
- 82 262330(S)FEB02 – One ground squadron from 3ACR serve as additional Corps Reserve.
- 83 270030(S)FEB02 – Movement of 45ID, Corps Reserve and TF Lifesaver.
- 84 270100(S)FEB02 – Issue 1/2 CSR 126 PODs of MLRS to 1CD.
- 85 270100(S)FEB02 – REAR CP will commence displacement operations effective 282100(S)FEB02.
- 86 270200(S)FEB02 – Collection Emphasis Message.
- 87 270600(S)FEB02 – Move 5 medium girder company bridge sets from AA BULLDOG to AA MUSTANG.

Slide 3 FRAGOs

**SWO
(MAIN)**

Slide 4 SWO



Slide 5 SWO

AO WEATHER EFFECTS

AS OF 27/0400S

	27				28								
	08	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	00	02	04	06	08
UAV	FAVORABLE				MARGINAL				UNFAVORABLE				
HELO OPS	FAVORABLE				MARGINAL				UNFAVORABLE				
CAS	FAVORABLE				MARGINAL				UNFAVORABLE				
AI	FAVORABLE												
AERIAL RECON	FAVORABLE				MARGINAL				UNFAVORABLE				
ADA	FAVORABLE												
VEHICLES	FAVORABLE												
PERSONNEL	FAVORABLE												
SMOKE OPS	FAVORABLE				MARGINAL				UNFAVORABLE				
NBC THREAT	FAVORABLE				MARGINAL				UNFAVORABLE				
NVG	FAVORABLE												
EO (IR)	FAVORABLE				MARGINAL				UNFAVORABLE				
EO (VIS)	FAVORABLE				MARGINAL				UNFAVORABLE				

FAVORABLE MARGINAL UNFAVORABLE

Slide 6 SWO



OPERATIONS



BATTLE UPDATE BRIEF (6 OF 12)

AO EXTENDED OUTLOOK
UNCLASSIFIED
AS OF 27/0400S

THU: 28 Cloudy with light AM fog/haze. Light rain by afternoon lasting into the night. Calm winds in the AM picking up to 8 knots from NE by afternoon.
High: 48 Low: 39

FRI: 01 Cloudy with AM fog. Wind from S-SW at 5-10 knots.
High: 46 Low: 32

SAT: 02 High cloudiness with unrestricted visibility. Winds from the SW at 5-10 knots.
High: 36 Low: 25

UNCLASSIFIED

Slide 7 SWO

FORT HOOD 5-DAY FORECAST
UNCLASSIFIED
As of 27 Feb 2002 0400L

Wed 27 Feb	Thu 28 Feb	Fri 1 Mar	Sat 2 Mar	Sun 3 Mar
50 / 18	55 / 30	60 / 40	57 / 38	56 / 35
S 6-10 kts	S 5-10 kts	SE/NW 8-12 kts	N 10-15 kts	NW 5-10 kts
Mostly sunny skies.	Partly cloudy skies with some high level cloudiness.	Mostly cloudy to cloudy with a chance for rain. Frontal passage by evening.	Decreasing cloudiness to partly cloudy skies.	Mostly sunny skies.
Severe Probability: 0%	Severe Probability: 0%	Severe Probability: 0%	Severe Probability: 0%	Severe Probability: 0%
Sunrise: 0700 Sunset: 1828	Sunrise: 0659 Sunset: 1829	Sunrise: 0658 Sunset: 1829	Sunrise: 0657 Sunset: 1830	Sunrise: 0656 Sunset: 1831

UNCLASSIFIED

Slide 8 SWO

**III CORPS
CURRENT
SITUATION
(TAC)**

UNCLASSIFIED

Slide 9 Current Situation

Theater Operations
UNCLASSIFIED

UNCLASSIFIED

Slide 10 Theater Graphics

**EIGHTH(US) ARMY
MISSION &
COMMANDER'S INTENT
No Change**

UNCLASSIFIED

Slide 11 Higher Mission & Intent

**III CORPS MISSION &
COMMANDER'S INTENT**

UNCLASSIFIED

Slide 12 III Corps Mission & Intent

BATTLE UPDATE BRIEF (7 OF 12)

Commander's Intent UNCLASSIFIED

Purpose → Deliver II(ROB)Corps deep in 8th Army's zone to enable its attack as the Army's decisive force on the SARIWON HEIGHTS (OBJ VANFLEET)

Key Tasks →

- Organize and array Corps formations through precise movements to ensure decisive combat power is delivered across the LD
- Destroy enemy reconnaissance and surveillance forces throughout the depth of our area of operations; Dominate the ISR battle.
- Conduct shaping operations to defeat IFCs and selected maneuver formations, and seal with precision munitions UGFs containing enemy C2 and combat forces; locate best avenues of approach to 305 AR Bde (Corps Reconnaissance Objective)
- Secure the Corps main body by defeating enemy security formations and penetrating his main defenses with a Corps Advance Cover.
- By force positioning, fires, command traffic, and by crossing the HAN near Seoul, convince the enemy that our main and decisive effort is in the west.
- Provide early warning of any threat of brigade size or larger to the Corps' right flank.
- Achieve high tempo operations and through a series of non-linear vertical and horizontal envelopments, both shallow and deep, aggressively attack from multiple directions simultaneously to penetrate the enemy's battle zone in depth.
- Fracture the coherency of his defense by applying the combat power of two divisions to destroy the 305AR BDE (decisive) and defeat the 303MECH BDE.
- Open, control, secure, and improve with an engineering effort MSR FALCON and RTE SILVER to sustain II(ROB)Corps' attack.
- Secure PL COYOTE, forward pass II(ROB)Corps in contact, and follow and support from PL COYOTE to PL TIGER. Secure PL TIGER.

End State → III(US)Corps has destroyed 305AR BDE, defeated enemy in zone, passed II(ROB)Corps forward, and secured PL TIGER and MSR FALCON. Preparing to resume the offensive or conduct stability operations in sector.

UNCLASSIFIED

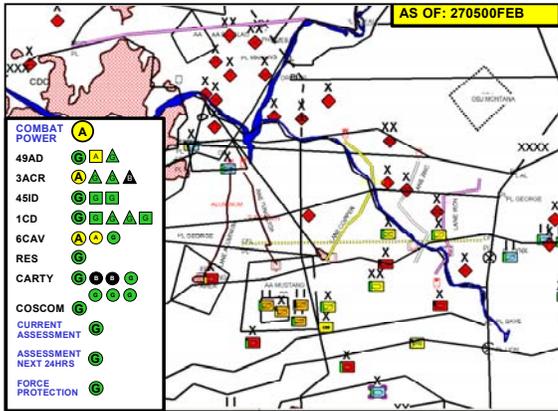
Slide 13 Commander's Intent

Task Organization UNCLASSIFIED

Destroy 305th AR Brigade

UNCLASSIFIED

Slide 14 Task Organization



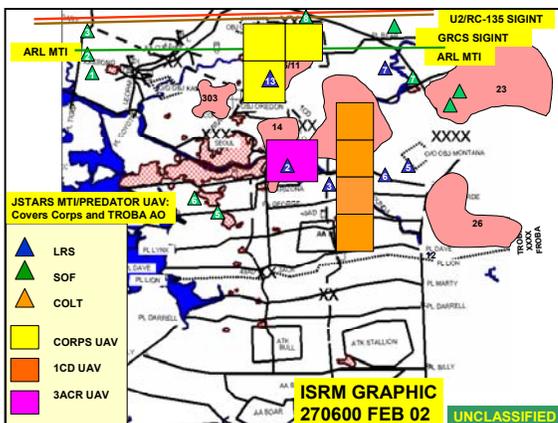
Slide 15 Combat Power / Situation

UNCLASSIFIED

III CORPS ISR

UNCLASSIFIED

Slide 16 G2 / ISR



Slide 17 G2

CURRENT PIRs UNCLASSIFIED

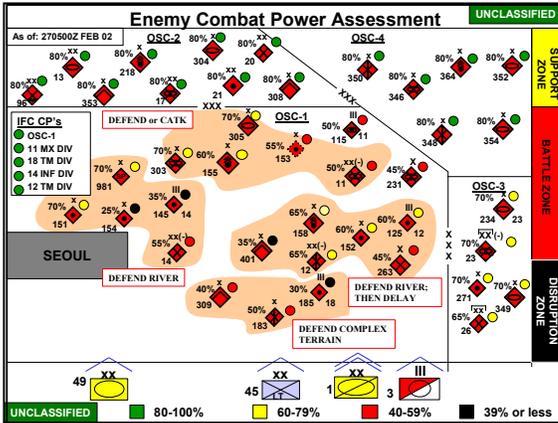
AS OF: 261400SFEB02

- What is the location of OSC-1 IFC C2 and firing assets and where will they commit against III (US) Corps (151ARTY BDE, 152ARTY BDE, 155MRL BDE, 158MRL BDE, 311AVN RGT, 310AVN RGT, 313AVN RGT)? LTIOV: H+100
- When and where will the enemy threaten III(US)Corps right flank with armor brigades out of OSC-3 (234AR BDE) and / or OSC-4 (352/354AR BDE)? LTIOV: H+144
- Will 11 Mech DIV (-), 303 MX and/or 305 AR BDE move to positions vic Chunchun in order to CATK against either III Corps or TROBA? LTIOV: H+100.
- What is the disposition of enemy forces and obstacles defending the PUKAN river bridges and ford sites? LTIOV: H+72
- What is the disposition of enemy forces that are in OBJ UTAH or can influence the Air Assault into OBJ UTAH? LTIOV: H+96

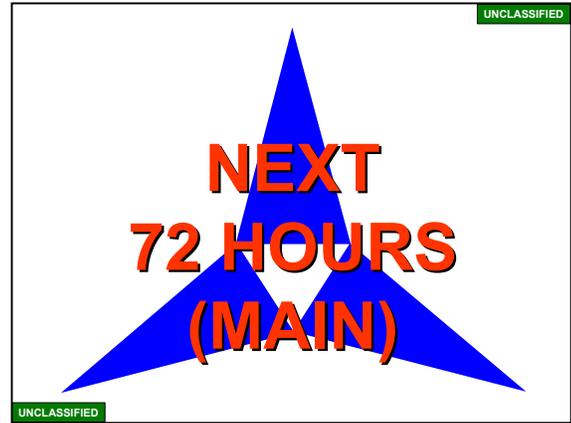
UNCLASSIFIED

Slide 18 PIR

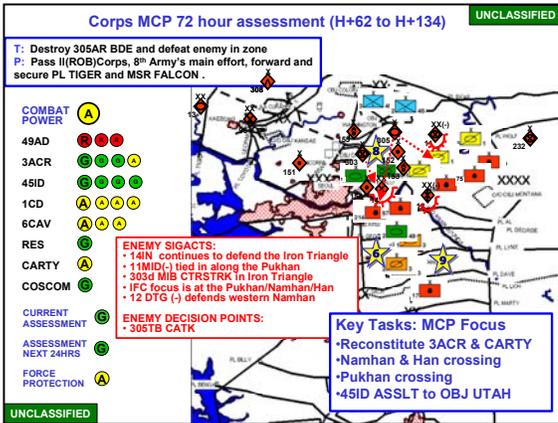
BATTLE UPDATE BRIEF (8 OF 12)



Slide 19 G2



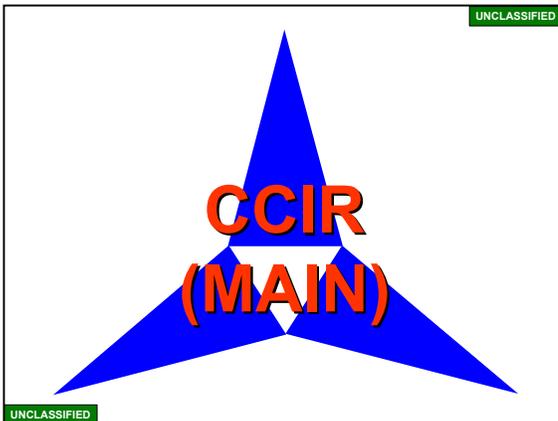
Slide 20 Next 72 Hours



Slide 21 Next 72 Hours



Slide 22 CONPLANS



Slide 23 CCIR

EEFI UNCLASSIFIED

- What is the III(US)Corps main effort?
- What is the composition of 1CD and 49AD?
- What is the III(US)Corps reserve and when and where will it be committed?
- What are the decision criteria, locations and timings for III(US)Corps AASLTs?
- When will deep operations commence and what is targeted?
- Where are the attack aviation assembly areas and FARPs?
- What are the locations of bridging assets and river crossing sites?
- What are the locations of MLRS batteries and Q36/37 radars?
- What are the locations of PATRIOT batteries?
- What are the locations of UAV launch and recovery sites?
- What are the locations of C4ISR assets?
- What are the locations of CL III/V storage/transfer points?
- What is the location and capability of the Corps to reconstitute 3ACR and CARTY assets? (Recommended)

UNCLASSIFIED

Slide 24 EEFI

BATTLE UPDATE BRIEF (9 OF 12)

FFIR

UNCLASSIFIED

- Covering Force squadron decisively engaged DPs 2, 3, and 4 (Recommend deletion)
- Closure of a Corps LOC for more than two hours DPs 3 and 5
- A BDE or ACR squadron from the main effort drops to Red or lower combat status DPs 6 through 12
- Any BDE drops to Black combat status (All DPs) (Recommend addition)
- Inability to conduct BN or larger AASLTs DP 6
- Loss of 100m of bridging assets DP 7
- 3ACR reconstituted to amber status within the next 12 hrs DP 9
- Any plan to abort Corps Shaping Operation (All DPs) (Recommended addition)

UNCLASSIFIED

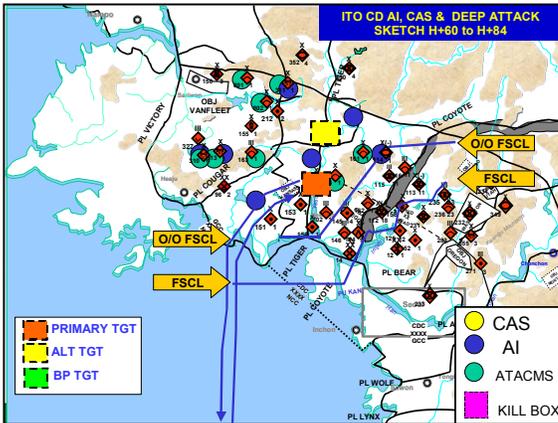
Slide 25 FFIR

SHAPING OPS (TAC)

UNCLASSIFIED

UNCLASSIFIED

Slide 26 SHAPING OPS



Slide 27 SHAPING OPS

ATACMS STATUS

UNCLASSIFIED

ATACMS FIRED: ITO C					
	3ACR	1CD	49AD	CORPS	TOTAL
PRE-PLANNED	0	0	0	0	0
FIRED	0	11	0	5	16
REMAINING	0	7	15	5	27

UNCLASSIFIED AS: 270500FEB02

Slide 28 SHAPING OPS

ADE (MAIN)

UNCLASSIFIED

UNCLASSIFIED

Slide 29 ADE

NAMHAN RIVER CROSSING / FPOL 3ACR

AIR DEFENSE RISK ANALYSIS

UNCLASSIFIED

DEFENDED ASSET LIST	ADA COVERAGE						RISK		THREAT			
	LINEBACKER	BSFV	AVENGER	STINGER	PATRIOT	ABT	TBM	FIRED WING	ROTARY WING	UAV	TBM	
1 HAN XING / PALTANG DAM	0	30	24	46	3			12	6	4	5	
2 NAMHAN CROSSING SITE	20	0	78	77	4			12	6	1	4	
3 1CD	20	0	78	77	4			12	12	4	3	
4 49AD	0	30	24	46	3			0	6	1	3	
5 9CAV AVN BDE	0	0	0	5	1			0	0	1	3	
6 1CD ATK AVN	0	0	3	5	1			0	0	1	3	
7 49AD ATK AVN	0	0	6	0	1			0	0	1	3	
8 45ID LIFT AVN	0	0	6	4	1			0	0	1	3	
9 AA MUSTANG (45ID & 3ACR)	11	0	34	8	1			0	0	1	4	
10 COSCOM (CLASS III/V)	0	0	6	4	1			0	0	0	4	
11 CORPS MAIN AND REAR	0	0	0	0	2			0	0	0	2	

UNC LOW > 3 : 1 MODERATE 1.5-3 : 1 HIGH < 1.49 : 1

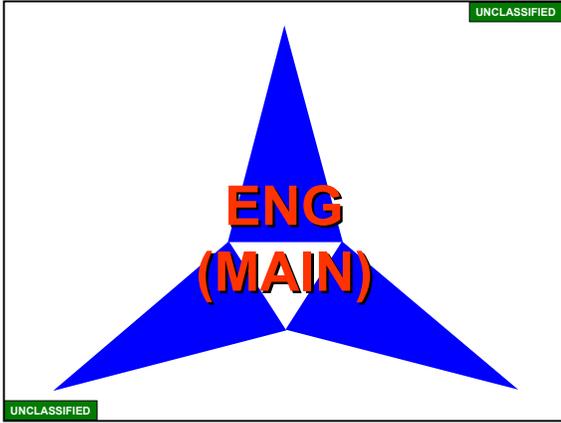
Slide 30 ADE



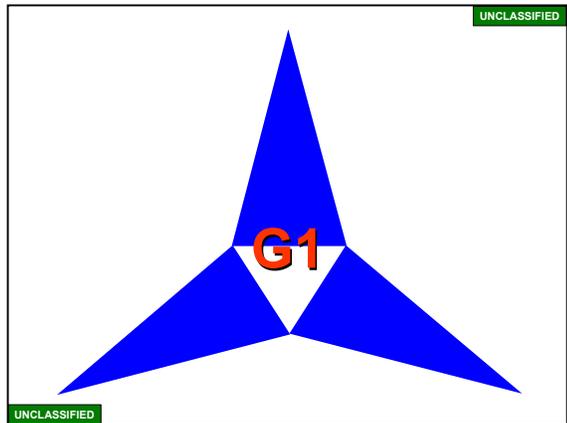
OPERATIONS



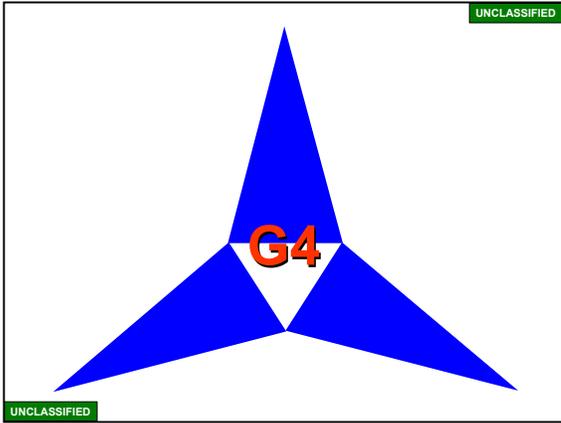
BATTLE UPDATE BRIEF (10 OF 12)



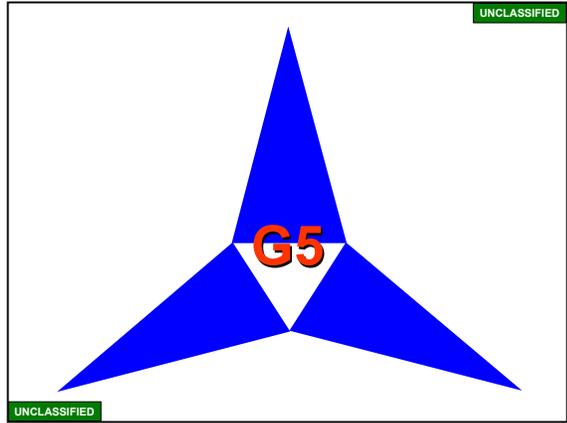
Slide 31 ENG



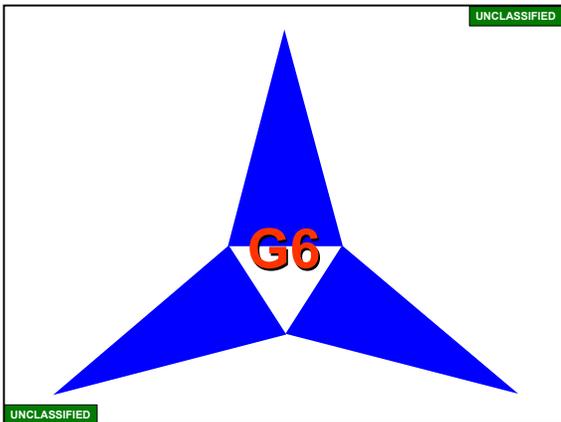
Slide 32 G1



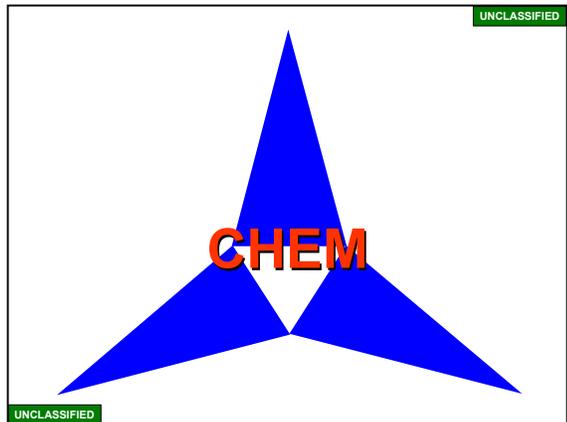
Slide 33 G4



Slide 34 G5



Slide 35 G6



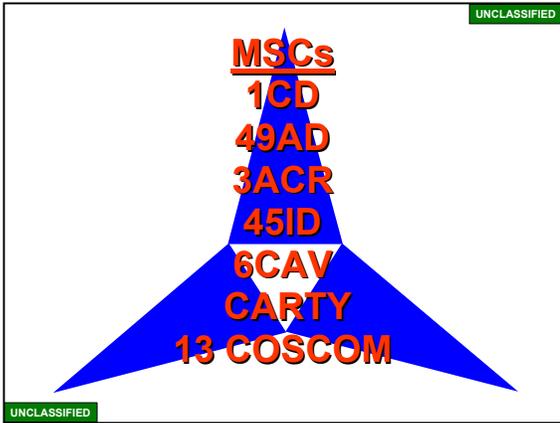
Slide 36 CHEM



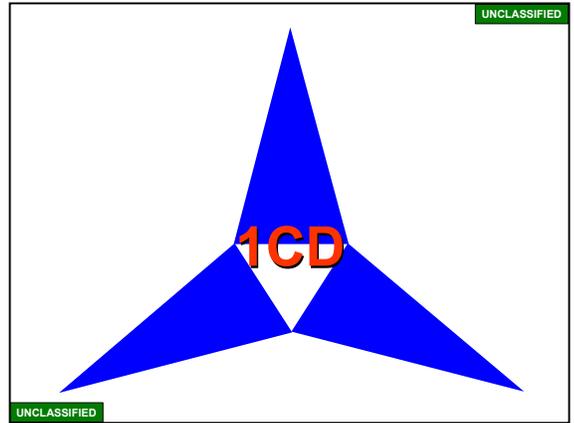
OPERATIONS



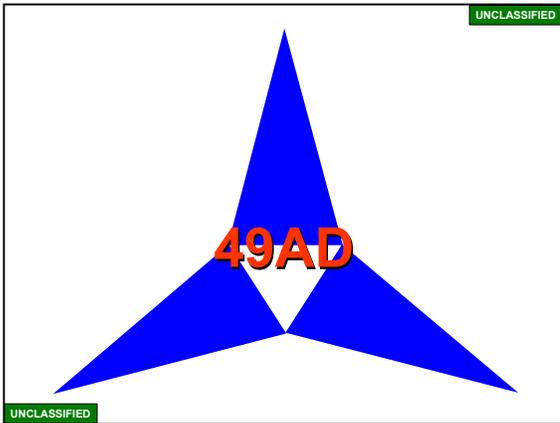
BATTLE UPDATE BRIEF (11 OF 12)



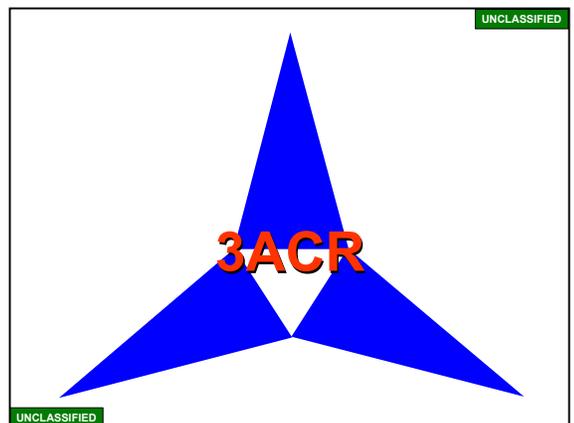
Slide 37 MSC Sequence



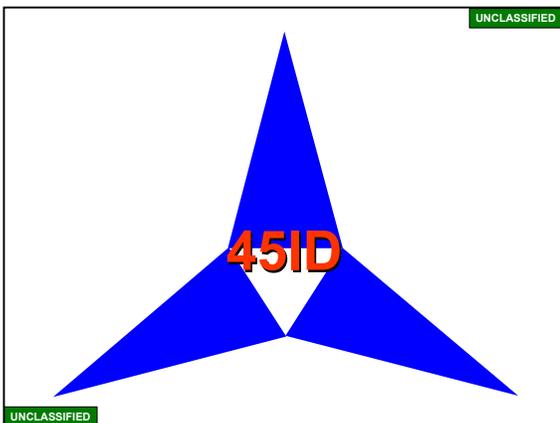
Slide 38 MSC



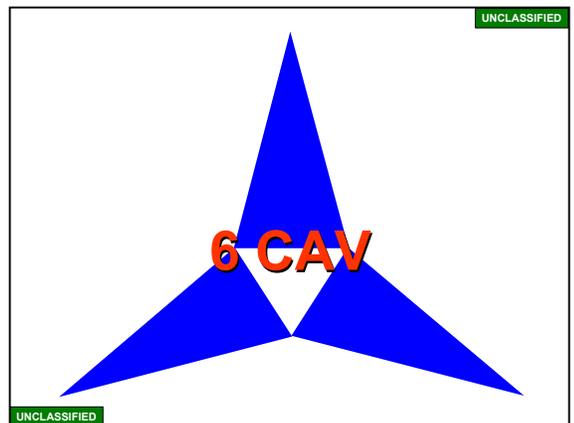
Slide 39 MSC



Slide 40 MSC



Slide 41 MSC



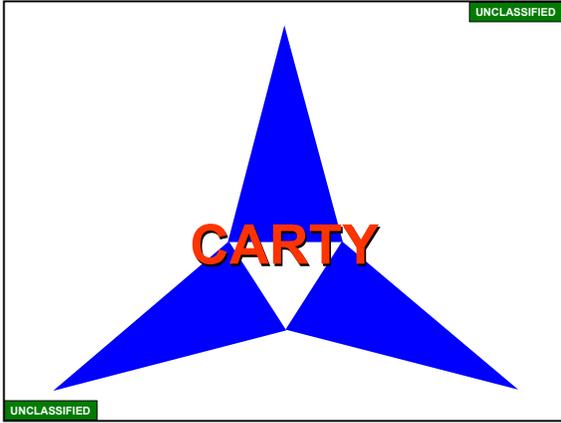
Slide 42 MSC



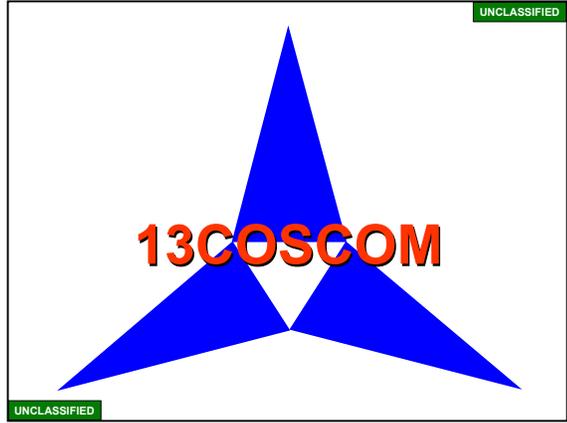
OPERATIONS



BATTLE UPDATE BRIEF (12 OF 12)



Slide 43 MSC



Slide 44 MSC



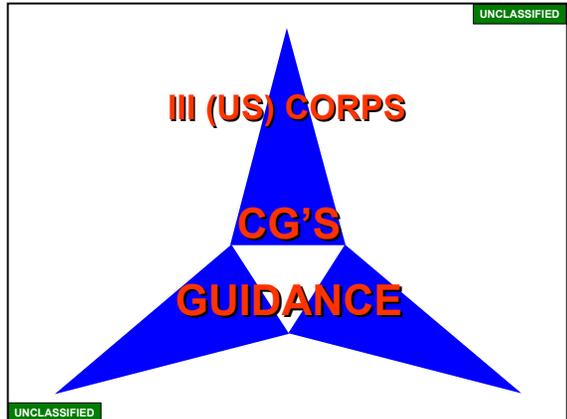
Slide 45 Chief of Staff



Slide 46 DCG



Slide 47 DCG



Slide 48 CG



OPERATIONS



CONSOLIDATED GRAPHICS (1/3)

- The overlay and grids must be turned in to G3 TACOPS NLT six working days prior to the CAR. In a field environment, four days before the CAR.
- Exercise directives and the order should allow MSCs appropriate time to meet the prescribed timeline and produce the required products.
- For proper reproduction, III Corps requires from MSCs an overlay (not a paper copy) in blue permanent marker and the grids to these control measures. This is usually an appendix to the operations order.
- MCS 4.3 or higher digital graphics must be turned in as well if unit is capable of producing.
- The graphics will be verified on a map by grid and then traced by overlay to ensure accuracy.



OPERATIONS



CONSOLIDATED GRAPHICS (2/3)

- Consolidated graphics will be reproduced on paper for distribution to major subordinate commands (MSC), separate brigades and battalions, and staff sections. Higher headquarters will receive an overlay copy and grid annex.
- Graphics will be reproduced at TASC in garrison and in the TAC in the field.
- The number of copies required is based on the task organization for the MSCs. Staff sections, adjacent units, and higher headquarters also require copies. General guidance is based on the distribution list for the III Corps TACSOP.
- III Corps consolidated graphics will be distributed at the Combined Arms Rehearsal.



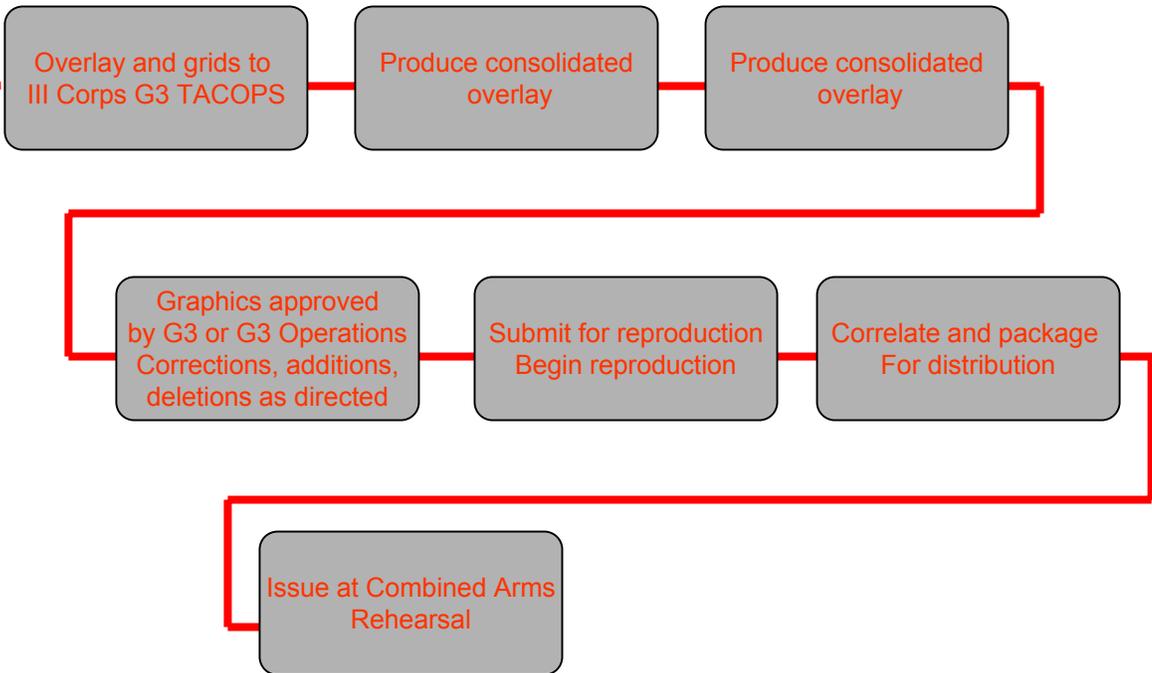
OPERATIONS



CONSOLIDATED GRAPHICS (3/3)

WIRE DIAGRAM OF GRAPHICS FLOW

H-168





OPERATIONS



COMBINED ARMS REHEARSAL (1/8)

Purpose: Validate synchronization of the III Corps Shaping Operations, Decisive Fight and Sustaining Operations.

Key Tasks:

- (1) Execute a Commander led and directed rehearsal of selected critical fights
- (2) Focus the rehearsal on validating synchronization of these critical events
- (3) Utilize designated AO terrain boards (or deployable rehearsal kit) and power point slides to assist in the visualization of the fight
- (4) Commanders execute a sequential, interactive discussion, presenting their unit's task and purpose, concept for shaping operations, concept for the decisive fight, and concept for sustaining operations for each designated phase of the operation

End State: At the conclusion of the rehearsal, key leaders have a common understanding of the III Corps Commanders Intent, operational concept and have validated synchronization of shaping operations, decisive fight and sustaining operations for all specified critical fights.



OPERATIONS



COMBINED ARMS REHEARSAL (2/8)

Principles of Execution:

- The rock-drill is **COMMANDER** led, directed and executed
- CofS or G3 serves as the facilitator / director to assist the CG
- It is not a wargame. (validates synchronization...does not create it)
- CG is the only person who can “what if.”
- The focus of the combined arms rehearsal is an interactive discussion among the commanders that emphasizes synchronization of maneuver, fires and logistics
- Commanders will present task and purpose for their unit for each phase of the operation. Additionally, they will discuss scheme of maneuver, scheme of fires, scheme of support, adjacent unit coordination, timing issues and other relevant information as required.
- Execute the combined arms rehearsal in three hours



OPERATIONS



COMBINED ARMS REHEARSAL (3/8)

Concept:

- **Background**
 - Terrain Orientation
 - Corps Mission
 - Corps Commander Intent
- **Critical Battle Concepts**
 - G3 – Concept of Operation / Setting the Conditions / Decision Points
 - G2 – Enemy Situation Overview
- **SITREP**
 - Maneuver Commanders
 - Shaping Commanders
 - Sustaining Commander
- **Enemy Commander**
 - Disposition
 - Reaction
- **Phantom 6**
 - Commanders Sync
- **CONPLANS**



OPERATIONS



COMBINED ARMS REHEARSAL (4/8)

Timeline:

- **Total time allotted:** 3 hours
- **S – S+30:** Introduction, Admin, G2/G3 Overview
- **S+30 – S+150:** Critical Events
- **S+150 – S+180:** Contingencies / CG Guidance



OPERATIONS



COMBINED ARMS REHEARSAL (5/8)

Example Critical Battle Sequence:

- **G3 – Concept of Operation / Setting the Conditions**
- **G2 – Enemy Situation Overview**
- **Maneuver Commander SITREPS / Friendly Actions**
 - 3rd Armored Cavalry Regiment
 - 49th Armored Division
 - 1st Cavalry Division
 - 45th Infantry Division
 - Ground Reserve
- **Shaping Operations**
 - ISR / FIRES / Shaping Attacks / Air Defense
- **Sustaining Operations**
 - COSCOM
- **G2 – Enemy Reaction**
- **CG / BOSs / MSCs – Friendly Counter-Action**
- **Decision Points / CONPLANS**



OPERATIONS



COMBINED ARMS REHEARSAL (6/8)

Slide Format (1/2):

The slide portion of the combined arms rehearsal is portrayed as a two-slide presentation, which accompanies the rehearsal / briefings. The general format for the slide presentation consists of:

- **Cover page** **G3**
- **Administrative notes** **G3**
- **Agenda & purpose, method, end-state** **G3**
- **AO/AI** **G3**
- **Terrain board orientation** **G3**
- **Threat overview** **G2**

- **Friendly Situation overview** **G3**
- **Rehearsal of each critical fight (G2, G3, Fires, MSCs, Separate Brigades, BFA by exception)**
- **Upcoming schedule / calendar** **G3**

- **Scribe read-back** **Recorder**
- **CG's guidance** **CG**

COMBINED ARMS REHEARSAL (7/8)

Slide Format (2/2):

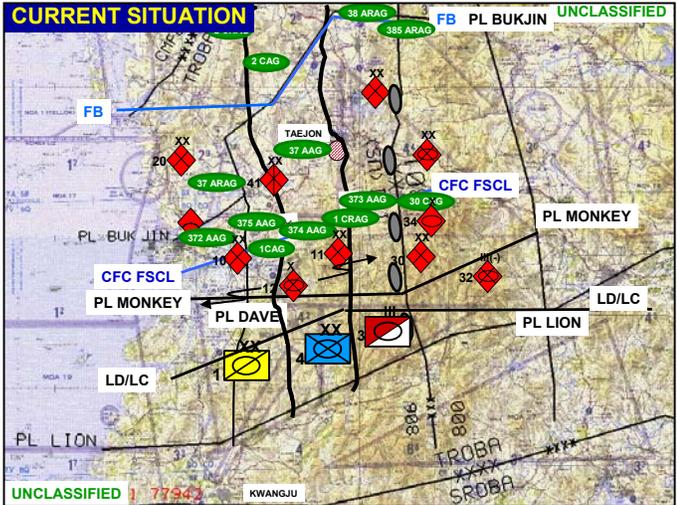


**III CORPS WFX 02
ROCK DRILL**

Slideshow Text

UNCLASSIFIED

UNCLASSIFIED



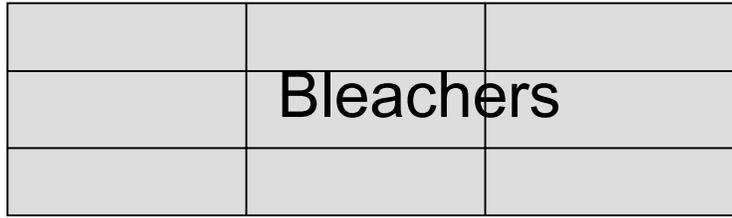
The combined arms rehearsal presents a dual Power Point presentation shown in conjunction with the terrain board.

- Text goes on the left.
- Graphics go on the right.

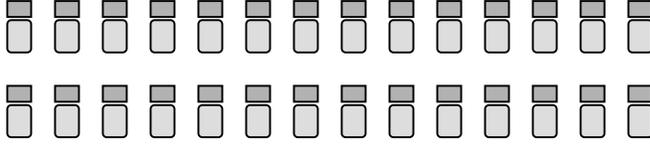
Combined Arms Rehearsal Facility Diagram (8/10)

Entrance

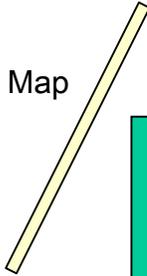
Office



Staff / VIP Seating



Map



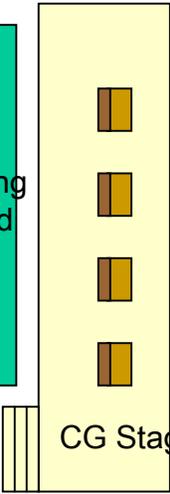
Speakers



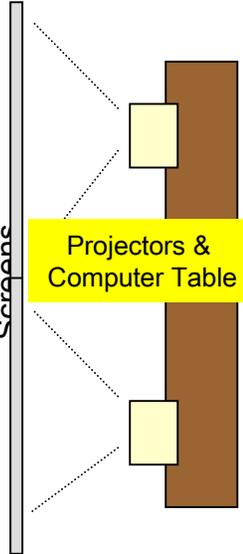
River Crossing Terrain Board



CG Stage



Projectors & Computer Table



Screens

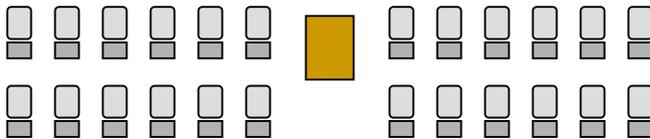
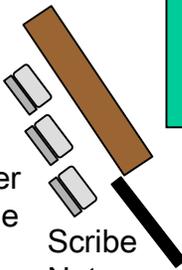


Speakers

Podium



Timer Table



MSC and Separate Commander/Briefer Chairs

Coffee, Soup, Juice





ISR



ISR REHEARSAL (1/3)

Purpose: Validate synchronization of III Corps ISR Operations prior to CAR and Fires Rehearsal.

Key Tasks:

- (1) Execute a G2 led and directed rehearsal of ISR operations during selected critical fights—generally the same fights that will be rehearsed in the CAR.
- (2) Focus the rehearsal on key ISR operations, especially establishment and movement of intelligence handover lines (IHL), synchronization of UAV, and synchronization of Long Range Surveillance (LRS) teams and other ground reconnaissance (such as SOF and BRT).
- (3) Insure there is common understanding among senior intelligence officers of anticipated enemy courses of action.
- (4) As an adjunct to the primary ISR rehearsal, G2 OPS / ACE will lead a separate ASAS rehearsal that synchronizes the movement of digital data in ASAS in order to develop a common operational picture and insure targeting data is pushed rapidly to required recipients.

End State: At the conclusion of the rehearsal, senior intelligence officers and their staffs have a common understanding of III Corps Commanders ISR operations nested within the CG's Intent and operational concept and have developed a common assessment of the enemy.



ISR



ISR REHEARSAL (2/3)

Principles of Execution:

- The rock-drill is G2 led, directed and executed
- Corps G2 OPS / collection manager serves as the facilitator / director to assist the G2
- The focus of the rock drill is an interactive discussion among SIO's and their collection managers that emphasizes synchronization of ISR assets
- MSC G2's / collection managers will present the concept of ISR operations and PIR for their unit for each critical fight in the rehearsal. Additionally, they will discuss any requests for support or issues for adjacent units and higher HQ.
- Execute the rock drill in two hours
- The ASAS rock drill is held on the same day as the ISR rehearsal and is focused on personnel who operate and supervise ASAS at the Corps and MSC's
 - led by G2 OPS / Corps ACE ASAS Master Analysts
 - Discusses concepts for targeting and sit dev using ASAS, insuring interoperability among versions of software
 - Discusses schedule to physically practice these tasks once the meeting is completed



ISR



ISR REHEARSAL (3/3)

Slide Format:

The slide portion of the ISR rehearsal is kept to a minimum and mirrors the critical fights conducted in the CAR. The general format for the slide presentation consists of:

- **Cover page** G2
- **Administrative notes** G2
- **Agenda** G2
- **AO/AI** G2
- **Threat overview** ACE OB Tech
- **Friendly Situation overview** G3
- **Rehearsal of each critical fight**
 - **expected ECOA** ACE OB Tech
 - **friendly operations** CM&D Chief
 - **Corps ISR Opns** CM&D Chief
 - **MSC ISR Opns** MSC Reps
- **Upcoming schedule / calendar** G2
- **Scribe read-back** Recorder



FIRES AND EFFECTS



Fires Rock Drill (1/7)

Purpose: Validate synchronization of the III Corps Artillery Counterfire Plan, Deep Operations, Shaping Operations and Effects.

Key Tasks:

- (1) Execute a Commander led and directed rehearsal of selected critical fights
- (2) Focus the rehearsal on validating synchronization of these critical events
- (3) Utilize designated AO terrain boards (or deployable rehearsal kit) and power point slides to assist in the visualization of the fight
- (4) Commanders execute a sequential, interactive discussion, presenting their unit's task and purpose, concept for shaping operations and concept for sustaining operations for each designated phase of the operation

End State: At the conclusion of the rehearsal, key leaders have a common understanding of the III Corps Artillery Commanders Intent, operational concept and have validated synchronization of shaping operations, and sustaining operations for all specified critical fights.



FIRES AND EFFECTS



Fires Rock Drill (2/7)

Principles of Execution:

- The rock-drill is **COMMANDER** led, directed and executed
- **DFSCOORD** serves as the facilitator / director to assist the **CG**
- It is not a wargame. (validates synchronization...does not create it)
- **CG** is the only person who can “what if.”
- The focus of the rock drill is an interactive discussion among the commanders that emphasizes synchronization of maneuver, fires and logistics
- Commanders will present **Essential Fire Support Tasks** for their unit for each phase of the operation. Additionally, they will discuss scheme of maneuver, scheme of fires, adjacent unit coordination, **Fire Support Coordination Measures**, synchronization issues and other relevant information as required.
- Execute the rock drill in three hours



FIRES AND EFFECTS



Fires Rock Drill (3/7)

Concept:

- **Background**
 - Terrain Orientation
 - Corps Mission
 - Corps Commander Intent
 - CARTY Commander Mission
 - CARTY Commander Intent
- **Critical Battle Concepts**
 - G3 – Concept of Operation / Setting the Conditions / Decision Points
 - G2 – Enemy Situation Overview
- **SITREP**
 - DIVARTY Commanders (Close Fight)
 - DFSCOORD (Deep Fight)
 - CARTY G4 (Sustaining Operations)
- **Enemy Commander**
 - Disposition
 - Reaction
- **Thunder 6**
 - Commanders Sync
- **CONPLANS**



FIRES AND EFFECTS



Fires Rock Drill (4/7)

Timeline:

- **Total time allotted:** 3 hours
- **S – S+30:** Introduction,
Admin,
G2/G3/
DFSCOORD
Overview
- **S+30 – S+150:** Critical Events
- **S+150 – S+180:** Contingencies /
CG Guidance



FIRES AND EFFECTS



Fires Rock Drill (5/7)

Example Critical Battle Sequence:

HOW WE ARE GOING TO FIGHT

Event

Briefer

- Enemy Set
- BLUEFOR Action
 - Corps Deep Operations
 - G2 Collection Focus
 - Position and Focus of Fires
- Enemy Reaction
- BLUEFOR Counteraction “Menu”:
 - Artillery Scheme of Maneuver
 - Counterfire
 - Proactive Fires
 - CAS
 - AI/ XINT
 - ATK AVN Close
 - Shaping Ops
 - SEAD
 - ATACMS Fires
 - Close Fires
 - Special Munitions Fires S3s
 - Adjust Collection Plan
 - CSS Priorities
 - C4I
 - REAR Fires

- CARTY G2
- Deep Ops G3 (Deep Ops Cartoon)
- G2 Collection Manager/Rep (CM Plan slide) Positioning and
- CARTY G3, CORPS DFSCOORD and each DIV/MSO
- DFSCOORD (BPV Shot and EFSTs slide)
- CARTY G2
- CARTY G3/DIVARTY S3
- C/F HQs S3
- CARTY/DIVARTY FCO
- DFSCOORD/ CORPS and DIV ALO
- DFSCOORD/ CORPS and DIV ALO
- 6 CAV/BDE FSO/AVN LNO
- DFSCOORD’s
- 6 CAV/BDE FSO/AFSCOORD
- DFSCOORDs
- BDE FSCOORD/FSO
- CORPS/DIVISIONENGINEER & CHEMICAL/BDESOS/DS BN
- G2 Collection Mgr
- CARTY/DIVARTY XO/G4
- CARTY/DIVARTY G3/G6
- REAR DFSCOORD



OPERATIONS



Fires Rock Drill (6/7)

Slide Format (1/2):

The slide portion of the rock drill is portrayed as a two-slide presentation, which accompanies the rehearsal / briefings. The general format for the slide presentation consists of:

UNCLASSIFIED

Agenda



<u>Event</u>	<u>Briefer</u>
• Introduction/Roll Call	DFSCOORD
• Area of Ops/Interest	DFSCOORD
• III Corps Mission / Intent	DFSCOORD
• CARTY Mission / Intent	DFSCOORD
• HPTL	DFSCOORD
• FA Org for Combat	CARTY G3
• Enemy Overview	CARTY G2
• Friendly Overview	CARTY G3
• Conduct of Phases	See next slide
• CARTY CDR Issues	CARTY CG
• Scribe Readback	AFSCOORD
• Concluding comments	CARTY CG

UNCLASSIFIED

Fires Rock Drill (7/7)

Slide Format (2/2):

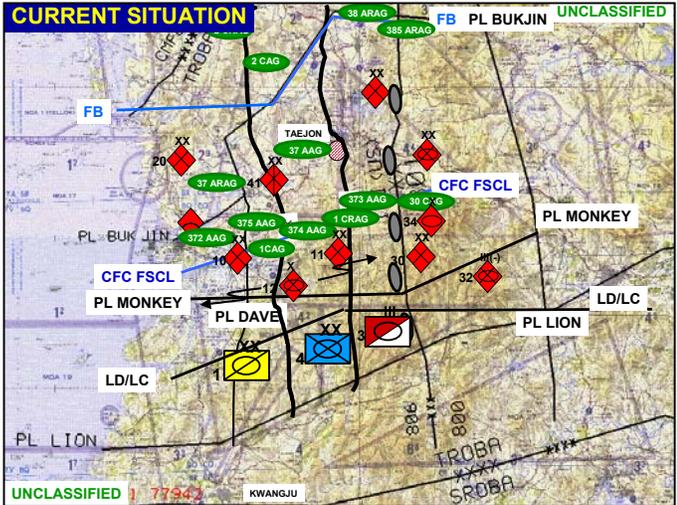


**III CORPS WFX 02
FIRES ROCK DRILL**

Slideshow Text

UNCLASSIFIED

UNCLASSIFIED



The rock drill presents a dual Power Point presentation shown in conjunction with the terrain board.

- Text goes on the left.
- Graphics go on the right.



OPERATIONS



MOVEMENT REHEARSAL (1/6)

Purpose: Rehearse III Corps' movement from Assembly Areas to the LD to ensure the uninterrupted flow of synchronized combat power across the LD.

Key Tasks:

(1) Execute a Commander led and directed rehearsal of the movement of III Corps units from TAAs through the attack positions to the line of departure.

- Focus the Movement Rehearsal on Corps Command and Control of the covering force fight and Corps' positioning of Divisions to successfully execute the tactical fight.
- Validate designated routes, organization of march units and order of march, pass times, synchronized movement control, adjacent unit coordination, movement security, flank reconnaissance along the route, and coordination with units to their front and rear.
- Commanders and Corps Staff representatives execute a sequential, interactive discussion, presenting their units/BFA plan for movement and support from TAAs to the line of departure. MSC and BFA presentations include: identification of designated routes, order of march, pass times, synchronized movement control, adjacent unit coordination, movement security, flank reconnaissance along the route, coordination with units to their front and rear, movement security, integration of III Corps assets into unit march tables, shaping operations in support of the move (i.e. C2 and Battle Command of the tactical movement, security concept, ISR concept, fires plan along the routes, support concept, air defense concept, engineering) and sustainment effort.

End State: Key leaders share a common understanding of the operational concept and effectively synchronized III Corps' movement from TAAs to the line of departure.



OPERATIONS



MOVEMENT REHEARSAL (2/6)

Principles of Execution:

- The focus of the rock drill is twofold: (1) Synchronize how the Corps will move from the TAA to the LD across all Battlefield Functional Areas, and (2) MSC commanders present their unit's scheme of maneuver for execution of movement from the TAA to the LD.
- Units / Movement Planning will be depicted down to Brigade / Squadron Level. Movement timings and or events will be depicted / presented.
- Corps Staff and MSC Commanders utilize the terrain board (primary means of visualization) and power point slides, to depict their scheme of maneuver for the occupation of TAA, move to attack position, occupation of attack position and movement to LD.
- The rehearsal begins with an overview of the of the rear area threat situation provided by the G2. Then the Corps G3 and key members of the Corps Staff / Separate Brigades present the Corps' concept for movement from the TAA to the Attack Positions and Attack Positions to the LD. It includes the Corps movement plan, Corps concept for Shaping and Sustaining Operations.
- Following the Corps' concept for movement, MSC Commanders then present their scheme of maneuver for their units.



OPERATIONS



MOVEMENT REHEARSAL (3/6)

Concept:

- **Background**
 - Admin Instructions / Terrain Orientation
- **Threat Situation Overview (Rear Area...TAA to LD)**
- **Corps Scheme of Maneuver (TAA to ATK POS to LD)**
 - Task Organization
 - Command and Control / Terrain Management / Occupation of TAA
 - Scheme of Maneuver
 - Scheme of Movement
 - Triggers for Movement / Decision Points
 - Movement Control
- **Corps Shaping Operations**
 - ISR Concept
 - Fire Support Concept
 - Air Defense
 - Mobility Support
 - Communications
- **Corps Sustaining Operations**



OPERATIONS



MOVEMENT REHEARSAL (4/6)

Concept:

- **MSC Movement Plan (TAA ATK POS LD)**
 - MSC CDR's
 - Corps Ground Reserve
- **Enemy Reaction**
- **Friendly Counter-Action**
- **CG Comments / Guidance**



OPERATIONS



MOVEMENT REHEARSAL (5/6)

Timeline:

- **Total time allotted: 2 hours**
- **S – S+20: Introduction, Admin, Terrain Orientation**
- **S+20 – S+60: TAA to Attack Positions**
- **S+60 – S+100: Attack Positions to LD**
- **S+100 – S+120: CG Guidance**



LOGISTICS



LOGISTICS REHEARSAL (1/5)

- **Purpose:** Validate synchronization of the Corps logistics operations in support of combat operations.
- **Key Tasks:**
 - Execute a Commander led and directed rehearsal of logistics support
 - Focus the rehearsal on validating synchronization of logistics support.
 - Utilize designated terrain board and power point slides to assist in the visualization of the fight.
- **End State:**
 - The synchronization of maneuver and logistics operations.
 - Confirmation of units' support relationship and logistics requirements.
 - Identification of logistics decision points and their impact upon support operations.
 - Confirmation of security arrangements for Level I, II, and III threats to logistics assets.



LOGISTICS



LOGISTICS REHEARSAL (2/5)

- **Execution:**
 - Orientation to facility
 - Roll call of participating units
 - Orientation to terrain board
 - The enemy initial set with emphasis on rear area threat (G2)
- The briefers below will brief each phase of the mission.
 - The Corps initial set or scheme of maneuver during each phase (G3)
 - The concept of support (G4, G1, Corps Surgeon)
 - Unit representatives: unit location, CSS support relationship, integration of Corps CSS units and HNS into div and non-Div units, build-up of stocks, logistics triggers, unit defense plans, establishment of FWD support bases.
- This sequence will continue until all phases are discussed.



LOGISTICS



LOGISTICS REHEARSAL (3/5)

Slide Format (1/2):

The slide portion of the rock drill is portrayed as a two-slide presentation, which accompanies the rehearsal / briefings. The general format for the slide presentation consists of:

- **Cover page** **G4**
- **Administrative notes** **G4**
- **Agenda & purpose, method, end-state** **G4**
- **Threat overview** **G2**
- **Friendly Situation by phase overview** **G3**
- **Concept of support** **G4**

- **Rehearsal of major operational tasks by phase, focusing on key logistics activities** **units**

- **Scribe read-back** **Recorder**
- **DCG's guidance** **DCG**

LOGISTICS REHEARSAL (4/5)

Slide Format (2/2):

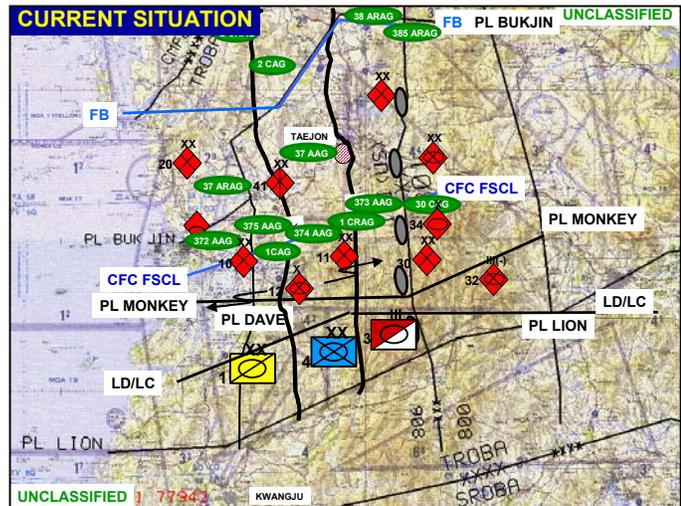


**III CORPS WFX 02
ROCK DRILL**

Slideshow Text

UNCLASSIFIED

UNCLASSIFIED



The rock drill presents a dual Power Point presentation shown in conjunction with the terrain board.

- Text goes on the left.
- Graphics go on the right.



LOGISTICS



LOGISTICS REHEARSAL (5/5)

- **Required Attendees:**
 - Briefers. Unit Commander or logistics representative (G4/S4, SPO).
 - ADC(s), G4, DISCOM CDR and subordinate support BN CDR for Divisions
 - ACR Commander Or logistics representative, Regimental S4, and Regimental support squadron CDR.
 - Separate maneuver task force CDR and S4
 - Corps separate brigade CDR and G4/S4.
 - COSCOM CDR, G3, SPO, and group CDRs
 - Rear Operation Center Commander, Operation Officer and subordinate ROC CDRs



OPERATIONS



CG'S TALKING POINTS (1/4)

Purpose:

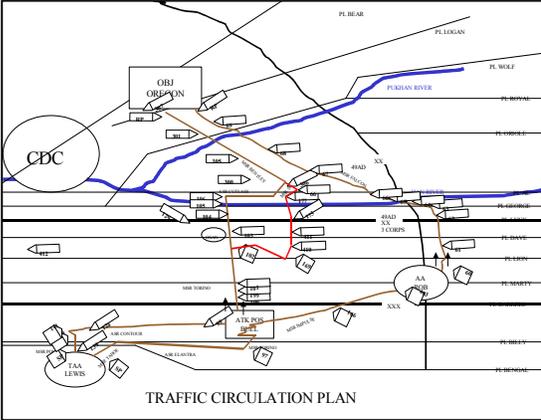
- **Used to assist CG in providing III Corps daily situational update to Higher HQs**
 - Executed:
 - Face to face (CG attends higher HQ BUB)
 - Via VTC
- **Document produced in the Main Command Post**
 - Forwarded to CG where ever he is located
- **Staff provides input to G3 OPS (Main CP) for inclusion**
- **Talking points used only as a guide for CG**
 - Document is not forwarded to Higher HQs
- **Graphic depiction of III Corps current situation (last chart) included.**
 - This chart may be forwarded to Higher HQs



OPERATIONS



CG'S TALKING POINTS EXAMPLE (3/4)



III CORPS SCHEME OF MANUEVER (3/3)

Next 24 Hours (CONPLAN PHANTOM WALKER)

- III (US) Corps coordinates forward passage of lines of II (ROB) Corps.
- III (US) Corps establishes new area of operations.
- 1CD, ME attacks to destroy enemy forces, seize key terrain vic OBJ DAKOTA, and conducts exploitation to secure OBJ WALKER (decisive operation).
- 49AD conducts forward passage of lines of II (ROB) Corps vic PL LOGAN, then follows and supports 1CD.
- 45ID(L) continues to defend to block vicinity south of OBJ NEVADA (CHUNCHON) to prevent enemy counterattack from north and east.
- O/O III Corps attaches 3ACR to 1 CD.
- There is no ground reserve for this operation.

COMMANDER'S EVALUATION

- The III Corps Commander assesses the ability of the Corps to accomplish its task and purpose as GREEN.
- III Corps continues to attack with 1CD (ME) and 49AD (SE) to complete the destruction of OSC1 and begin exploitation of enemy forces. III Corps conducts forward passage of lines in 49AD's zone with II (ROB) Corps to allow III(US)Corps to attack to OBJ WALKER in order to isolate PYONGYANG from the south.
- Combat Power: AMBER

III CORPS COMBAT SYSTEM STATUS

Critical system status:

49AD: M1 - 70%	6CAV: AH64 - 73%
M2/M3 - 89%	3CA: M270 - 91%
1CD: M1 - 91%	Corps Reserve
M2/M3- 91%	3ACR: M1- 98%
	M2/M3 - 100%

	ON HAND / MSN CAP			
	M1A1	M2/M3	M270	AH64
49TH	80/56	98/83	15 / 15	17/10
45TH	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
1CAV	325/295	219/199	9 / 6	23 / 22
Includes 2/49AD				
3 ACR	105/103	96 / 96	N/A	6/2
6 CAV	N/A	N/A	N/A	63/46
CORPS ARTY	M109A6	M270	Q37	
	88/85	181/164	12/12	

G-4

INFORMATION OPERATIONS

- 2 x FA-18C target 305AR and 303MX with abandon equipment leaflets to enable their final destruction – approx 8 sq mi of coverage
- Commando Solo reinforcing leaflet message with radio broadcast and broadcasting messages to deter the use of WMD

10

CODEL MCNEIL VISIT

CODEL MCNEIL – Accompanied by Blueland US Ambassador Russell and Dr Pat Slater, Office of Foreign Disaster Assistance visited III Corps

Provided Ops update, briefings on Civil Affairs, Dislocated Civilians and Humanitarian Issues

Visited Corps Main CP, Life Spt Area

Corps Staff participants were: ; Corps C/S, SJA, G5

Key concerns were:

- War Termination
- Osan Disturbance
- US Civilian Hostages
- Modernization Status of US Forces

Endstate: Visit was well received, no concerns or issues. VIPs expressed support for III Corps Soldiers and their outstanding efforts.

PUBLIC AFFAIRS/COMMAND INFO

- CI Approach includes: field newspapers, AFRTS broadcasts, III Corps TACWEB.
- Current Media Approach: Active since LD
 - Aggressive & Active Media Plan in place.
 - Operational update conducted by LTC Weston.
 - Bronze Star awarded to soldier. Media will attend.

Key Issues:

- CPA Use Of Chemical Weapons
- Hostage situation at Osan
- Operational Success

• Current PAG on TACWEB

• Current Command Messages Stress:
Legitimacy, Capability, Moral High Ground, Civilians Stay Put

PAO



OPERATIONS



LIAISON DUTIES (1 of 2)

General: As a III Corps LNO, you represent the III Corps Commanding General. As such, you are the eyes, ears, and voice of this command. You have a responsibility to provide our higher headquarters with the most current information regarding III Corps current and projected future operations. Additionally, you also have the responsibility to provide III Corps the latest information concerning our higher headquarters operations. This includes changes in mission, intent, current situation update, locations and disposition of adjacent and flank units, theater situation, etc. This information must be provided to each headquarters proactively, not just when requested. Anticipate requirements, both higher and lower, and be visible and heard.

Specific Requirements:

- Monitor III Corps Battle Update Brief.
- Monitor Higher Headquarters Battle Update Briefs or Situation Updates.
- Notify, via DNVN, III Corps Main CP, TAC CP and Rear CP G3 Battle Captain upon publication of higher headquarters order or FRAGO.
- Provide the higher headquarters' situation update to III Corps Main CP, TAC CP and Rear CP G3 battle Captain every 6 hours (0600, 1200, 1800, 2400). Send situation update via TACLAN.



OPERATIONS



LIAISON DUTIES (2 of 2)

- **MINIMUM INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS**
 - Current higher headquarters' situation
 - Location, Disposition Flank/Adjacent units
 - Changes in III Corps Mission
 - III Corps Future Operations
 - Latest FRAGO in affect
 - Future FRAGOs
- Ensure the higher headquarters receives the III Corps Operations Update and Commander's SITREP (as required). Notify III Corps G3 Battle Captain if they have not been received.
- Ensure III Corps Main CP, TAC CP and Rear CP G3 Battle Captain receive copy of the higher headquarters Commander's SITREP.
- Contact III Corps G3 Battle Captain for III Corps operational status/information requirements from the higher headquarters. Contact TAC CP G3 Battle Captain for queries pertaining to current close fight. Contact the Main CP G3 Battle Captain for queries pertaining to future operations (greater than 24 hrs out).



FSE



C.3

FIRE SUPPORT



PART C

FIRE SUPPORT



- **COMMAND POST FUNCTIONS/
RESPONSIBILITIES/OPERATIONS**
 - FIRE SUPPORT BATTLE DRILLS
- **SHAPING OPERATIONS**
- **AIR SUPPORT**
- **ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND
CONTROL**
- **ARMY AVIATION**



FIRE SUPPORT TABLE OF CONTENTS



- C.3 FIRE SUPPORT
 - C.3.0 FSE FUNCTIONS / RESPONSIBILITIES / OPERATIONS
 - C.3.0.1 TAC FSE
 - » C.3.0.1.1 ORGANIZATION
 - » C.3.0.1.2 FUNCTIONS
 - » C.3.0.1.3 OPERATIONS
 - » C.3.0.1.4 ADP
 - C.3.0.2 MAIN FSE
 - » C.3.0.2.1 ORGANIZATION
 - » C.3.0.2.2 FUNCTIONS
 - » C.3.0.2.3 OPERATIONS
 - » C.3.0.2.4 ADP
 - C.3.0.3 FSE PLANNER
 - C.3.0.4 ASSAULT CP
 - C.3.0.5 REAR FSE
 - » C.3.0.5.1 ORGANIZATION
 - » C.3.0.5.2 FUNCTIONS
 - » C.3.0.5.3 OPERATIONS
 - » C.3.0.5.4 ADP
 - C.3.0.6 BATTLE DRILLS
 - » C.3.0.6.1 CLEARANCE OF FIRES
 - » C.3.0.6.2 FSCM AND TARGET MANAGEMENT
 - » C.3.0.6.3 KILLBOX MANAGEMENT
 - » C.3.0.6.4 ATACMS MISSIONS
 - » C.3.0.6.5 TIME SENSITIVE SURFACE TARGETS (TSST)
 - C.3.0.7 REFERENCES
 - » C.3.0.7.1 III CORPS FSE TACSOP TABLE OF CONTENTS
 - » C.3.0.7.2 CFC PUBLICATIONS LISTING
 - C.3.1 SHAPING OPERATIONS
 - C.3.2 AIR SUPPORT
 - C.3.3 ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL
 - C.3.4 ARMY AVIATION



TCP FSE



Organization

TCP FSE is organized in to 3 areas:

- Horseshoe: The DFSCOORD and FSO manage, coordinate and direct fires ISO the close fight using ADOCS, FS Client, TACLAN and DNVT
- Pit: The OPSO and Targeting NCO direct and clear CAS missions and manage and update situational information
- Rear: Fire Support NCOs and Fire Support Specialists update ATTCS databases and the Radio Operator/Maintainers manage digital and voice communications

Personnel

DAY SHIFT

DFSCOORD
 Fire Support Off.
 Operations Off.
 Intel. SGT
 Sr. Radio Oper.
 Radio Oper./Maint.
 FS SPC

NIGHT SHIFT

Fire Support Off.
 Operations Off.
 Targeting NCO
 Fire Support NCO
 Radio Oper./Maint.
 FS SPC

Summary:

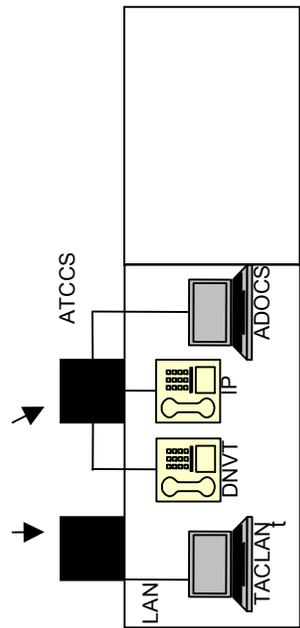
NCOs (13 series) 3
 NCOs (31 series) 1

Officers 5
 Enlisted (13 series) 2
 Enlisted (13 series) 2

Total

13 Personnel

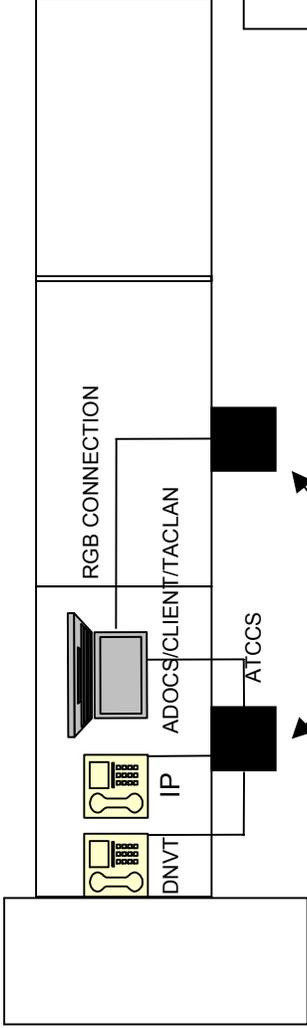
J-BOXES



OPSO FSE NCOIC ALO ALO

REAR Pit

DFSCOORD FSO ALO ADE ADE



G2

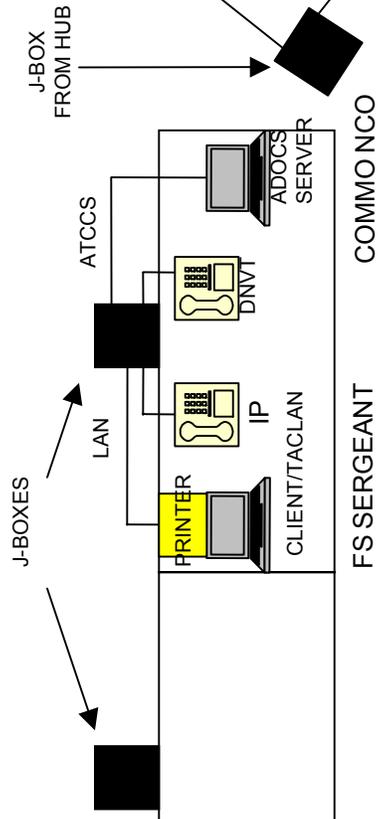
G3

Horseshoe

G6

Rear

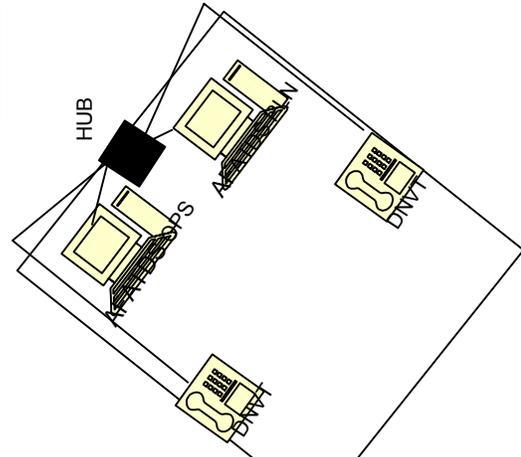
All J-Boxes go to Backbone



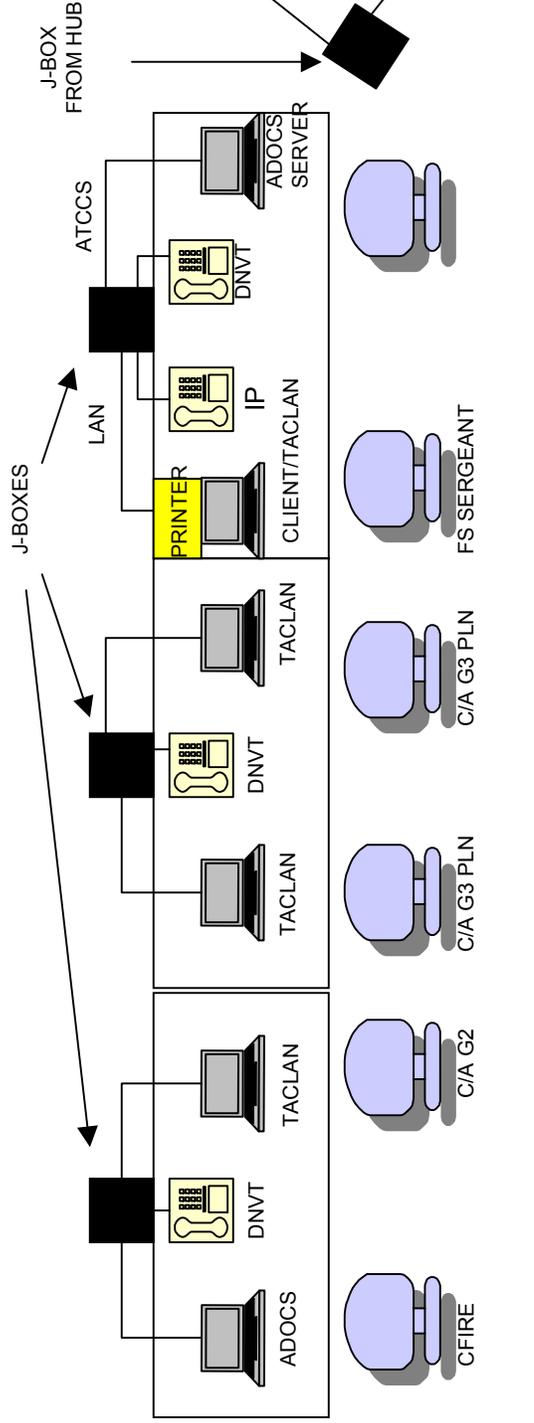
FS SERGEANT COMMUNCO

FRONT

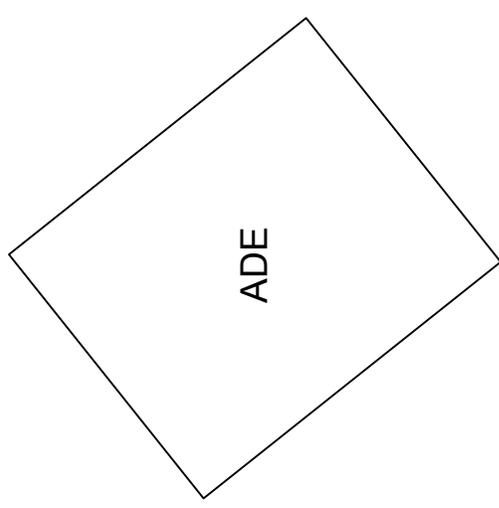
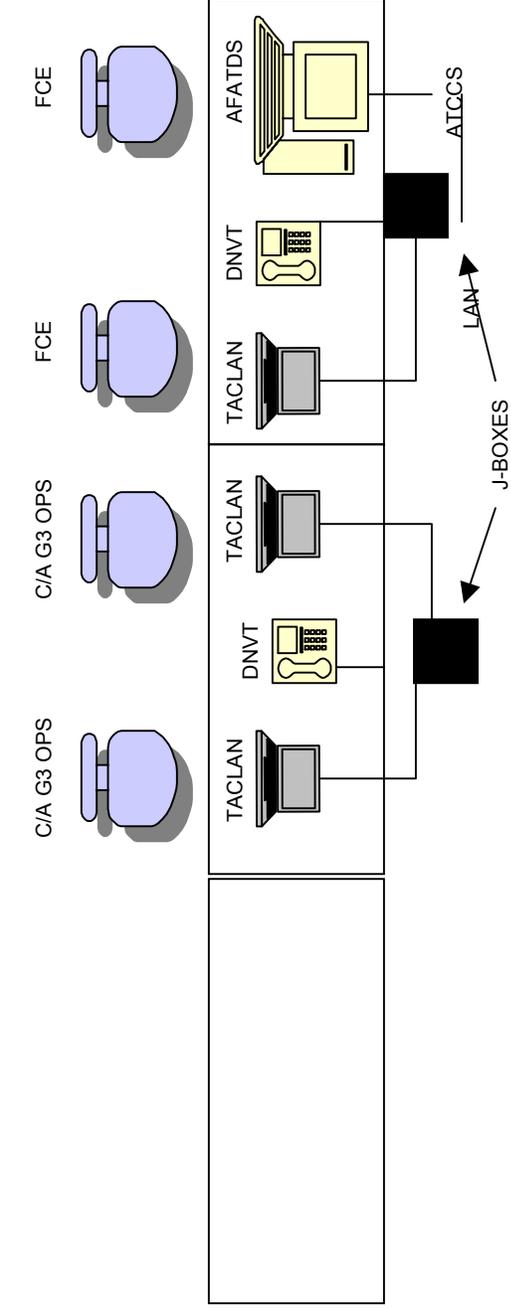
C.3.0.1.1



TAC+ (CARTY Jump) Rear configuration



FRONT





TCP FSE Operations



Responsibilities

- Orchestrate Fire Support ISO current/close operations
- Maintain situational awareness, specifically, status of all fire support assets available to the force, including FA, Army aviation, USAF, and naval gunfire
- Advise TCP OIC on all FS Matters
- Coordinate and process target attack ISO current/close operations
- Process Close Air Support (CAS)
- Recommend and coordinate changes to FSCMs
- Monitor CFLs for adjacent and subordinate units
- Coordinate FASCAM with the Corps Engineer
- Monitor Shaping and Rear operations
- Provide input to Corps FRAGOs
- Facilitate information flow to RCP/MCP FSE
- Be prepared to conduct Battle Hand-over (BHO) with the Corps MCP



TCP FSE



ADP

The TCP FSE relies on three digital systems for the clearing and coordination of fires, the Automated Deep Operations Coordination System (ADOCS), the Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS) and the Fire Support Client (FS CLIENT). FSE also uses TACLAN for the dissemination and integration of information with adjacent and subordinate units. The following pages show the locations of personnel and their ATTCS systems, and the locations of CARTYs systems when the MCP jumps locations.



MAIN FSE



Organization

MAIN FSE is primarily in the FSE van. The Operations Officer operates in the “ECC Execution LSS” for the “Proof of Concept” ECC organization.

Personnel

DAY SHIFT

AFSCOORD
 AFSCOORD
 *Operations Off.
 OPS SGM
 RADIO SUPERV.
 FS SPC
 Radio Oper./Maint
 **Targeting Off.
 **FS SPC

^AFSCOORD (PLN)
 ^ADMIN SPC (PLN)

Officers	10
NCOs (13 SERIES)	3
NCOs (31 SERIES)	1
Enlisted (13 SERIES)	3
Enlisted (31 SERIES)	2
Enlisted (71 SERIES)	1
Total	20

NIGHT SHIFT

AFSCOORD
 FAIO
 *Operations Off.
 Fire Support SGT
 Fire Support SGT
 Radio Oper./Maint.
 FS SPC
 **FAIO
 **FAIO

* Operations Officers work in
 ECC Execution LSS
 ** Operate out of ACE
 ^ Operate out of Corps Plans
 Area

MCP FSE Organization

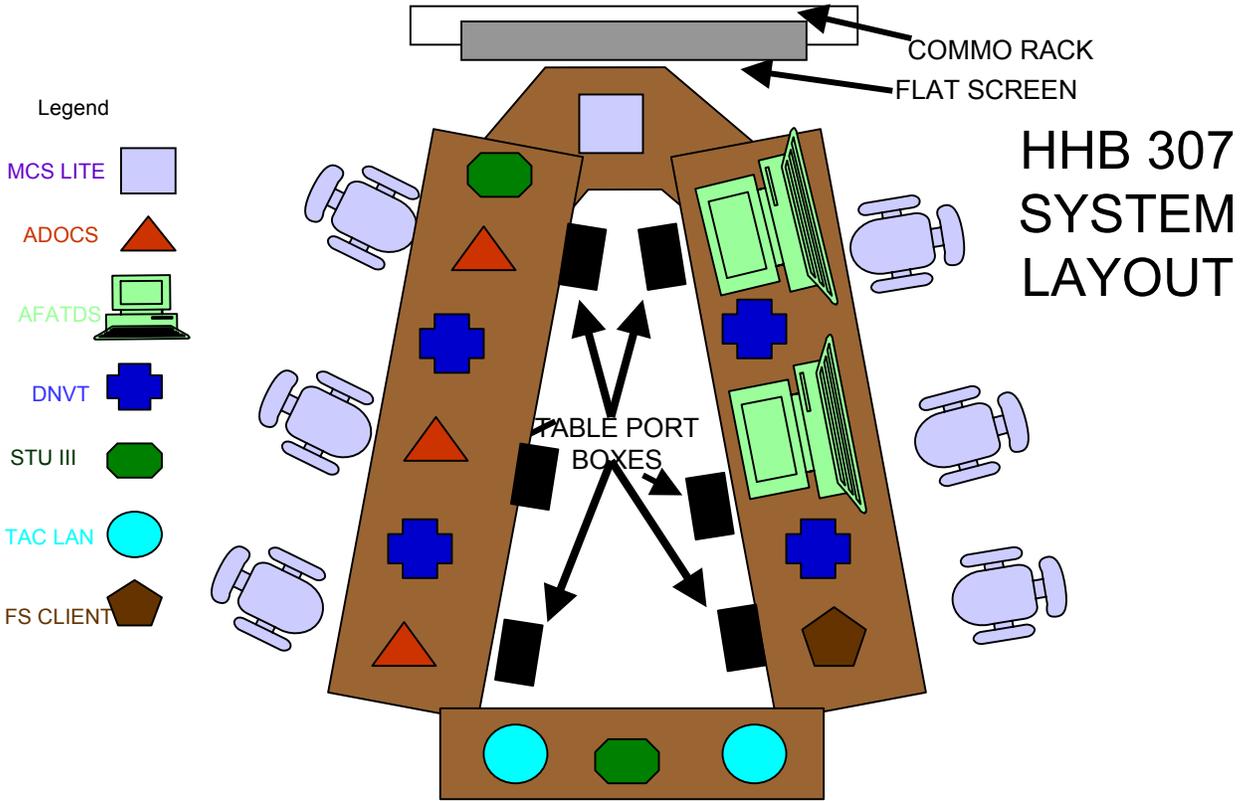
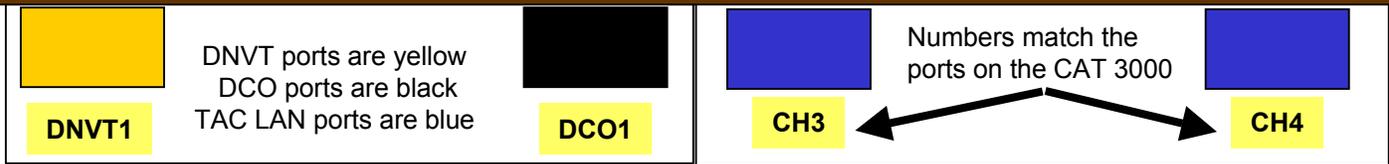
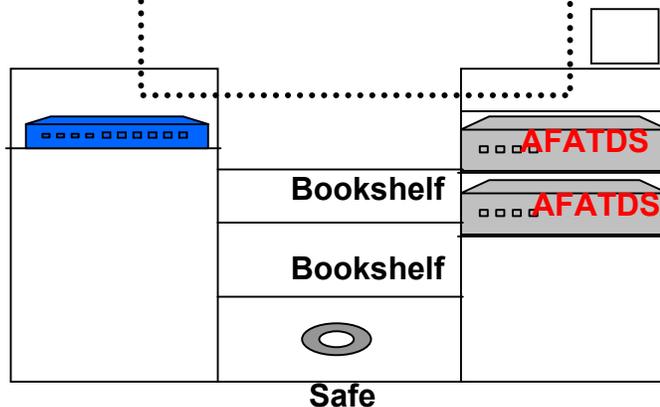


Table port boxes



Flat screen

AFATDS
PRINTER



SEE FSE
INTERNAL
TACSOP,
PAGE D-1-A-1
FOR SPECIAL
INSTRUCTIONS
AND DETAILS ON
SYSTEMS
CONNECTIONS



MCP FSE



Functions

The primary functions of the MCP FSE are to:

- Perform Top-Down Fire Planning
- Supervise Preparation and Dissemination of the Field Artillery Support Plan
- Synchronize Field Artillery Operations
- Participate in the Targeting Process
- Participate in Rehearsal Operations
- Participate in Effects Coordination Cell Activities
- Conduct FA Tactical and Digital Rehearsals
- Prepare Schedules of Fires
- Control and Coordinate Field Artillery Fire Missions
- Prepare and Maintain Target Cards and Files
- Establish and Maintain Liaison
- Supervise FA Communications during Mission Preparation and Execution
- Establish and Maintain Situational Awareness
- Coordinate Target Attack
- Execute Fire Support



MCP FSE



ADP

The MCP FSE relies on three digital systems for the clearing and coordination of fires, the Automated Deep Operations Coordination System (ADOCS), the Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS) and the Fire Support Client (FS CLIENT). FSE also uses TACLAN for the dissemination and integration of information with adjacent and subordinate units. The following pages show the locations of personnel and their ATTCS systems.



FSE PLANNER



Organization

The FSE Planner is an AFSCOORD O-4 who is authorized a 71L assistant (E-4). The planner(s) primarily operate with the Corps Plans Team (CPT) in the CPT van in the Corps MAIN.

General responsibilities during MDMP are on the next page. Staff Section Crosswalk is below.

Cross walk with Staff sections

Staff Section	CARTY	ENG	ALO	SJA	A2C2
Products	Annex D, Appendix 1	Annex F		Annex E	Annex O
Information in Annex D	FA Org, Shaping Ops throughout the annex	Para 3-I-7	Para 3-g	Para 3-I-(5)	Para 3-1-(1), 3-I-(10)



FSE PLANNER



FSE MDMP General Responsibilities

RECEIVE MISSION	REQUIRED KNOWLEDGE	MISSION ANALYSIS	COA DEVELOPMENT	WARGAMING	DECISION BRIEF	OPLAN BRIEF
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Read base order; Annex D, and all related Fire Support portions of the order • Attend Higher's OPLAN brief • Begin estimate • Begin RFIs • Begin preliminary targeting • Determine initial CARTY locations 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disposition of FA units • Status of FA Class V • FASCAM available • Current FSCMs • Laser codes • Enemy fire support capabilities • Enemy use of fire support during his operation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provide G3 with FA: facts, assumpts, cnstrnts, restraints, fs tasks, initial conclusions • Higher CDR's intent for fires • FA ORG for combat • Additional assets: DS, GS, R • Division priorities of fires • Proposed CDR's EFSTs • FSCMs • Enemy FA SITEMP • Submit RFIs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Develop fire plan ISO each COA • Initial FS overlay & target list • Determine initial FSCMs • Select PAAs • Determine CFZs/CFFZs • Develop SEAD plan if required • Synch with other BOSSs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Synchronize fire support plan • Develop initial HPTL • Develop initial FSEM • Develop initial FS plan • Finalize FS overlay and target list 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Assist in decision brief production • BPT brief fires portion of brief or questions • Assemble COA comparison 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Write para 3a(2) and Annex D • Prep OPLAN brief slides • Brief specific areas of OPLAN and BPT answer questions
<p>This entire process is done in conjunction with CARTY, ENG, SJA and ALO.</p>						



COMMAND POST FUNCTIONS



ASSAULT CP

TBP

- **MISSION:** Corps is currently re-working the concept of the ASSAULT CP and Mobile Command Posts.
- This section will be revised as soon as we have the overall concept of how the Corps will fight. Point of departure for the FSE in the meantime will be from the JAN 02 version of ACP plus FSE that includes elements from the ECC and other CARTY pieces



RCP FSE



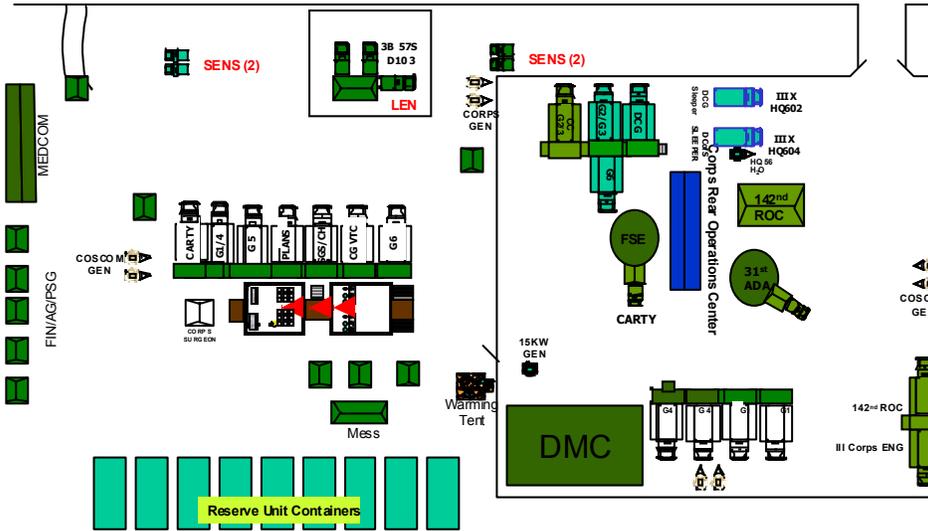
Organization

The RCP FSE orchestrates fires in the Corps rear area, coordinates positioning with RCP and COSCOM, and monitors logistics operations ISO the close and shaping battle. The RCP FSE is manned by either RCP personnel, the FA BN headquarters that has the mission of DS RTOC, the TCF FSE, or by tasked personnel.

Personnel

DAY SHIFT		NIGHT SHIFT	
FSCOORD			
Fire Support Off.		Fire Support Off.	
Operations Off.		Operations Off.	
Current Ops. NCO		Current Ops. NCO	
Fire Support NCO		Fire Support NCO	
Radio Oper./Maint.		Radio Oper./Maint.	
FS SPC		FS SPC	
<u>Summary:</u>		Officers	5
NCOs (13 series)	4	Enlisted (13 series)	2
Enlisted (31 Series)	2	Total	13

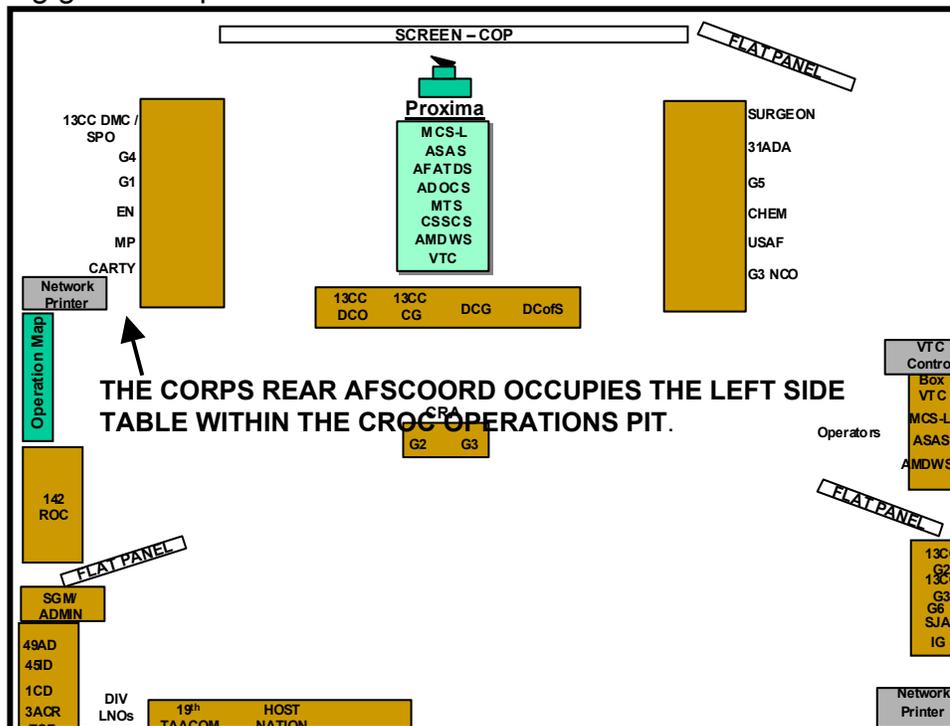
Corps Rear Area CP



The CROC FSE has two HMMWVs and a SICUPS. It locates next to the CROC and provides an area to do planning and battle tracking outside of the CROC tent. It moves forward with the jump and establishes commo and prepares to receive the main body.

It is critical that the FSNCO links up with the CROC G6 to prior to occupation to ensure all commo requirements and architecture are in place to support the mission.

POC for location with in the Corps Rear AO is the CROC SGM located with 13th COSCOM during garrison operations.



THE CORPS REAR AFSCOORD OCCUPIES THE LEFT SIDE TABLE WITHIN THE CROC OPERATIONS PIT.



RCP FSE



Responsibilities

- Orchestrate Fire Support ISO rear operations.
- Coordinate the integration of US and Allied fires in the Corps rear area.
- Review and assess rear threat in coordination with Rear G2.
- Assist with the Rear IPB.
- Coordinate TCF fires when employed.
- Update Battle Update Briefing slides.
- Monitor LOC security, UGF clearance and base cluster security.
- Maintain situational awareness, specifically, status of all fire support assets available to the force, including FA, Army aviation, USAF, and naval gunfire.
- Advise RCP on all Fire Support matters.
- Coordinate and process target attack ISO rear operations.
- Be prepared to conduct Battle Hand-over with the Corps MCP



RCP FSE



ADP

The RCP FSE relies on three digital systems for the clearing and coordination of fires, the Automated Deep Operations Coordination System (ADOCS), the Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS) and the Fire Support Client (FS CLIENT). FSE also uses TACLAN for the dissemination and integration of information with adjacent and subordinate units.



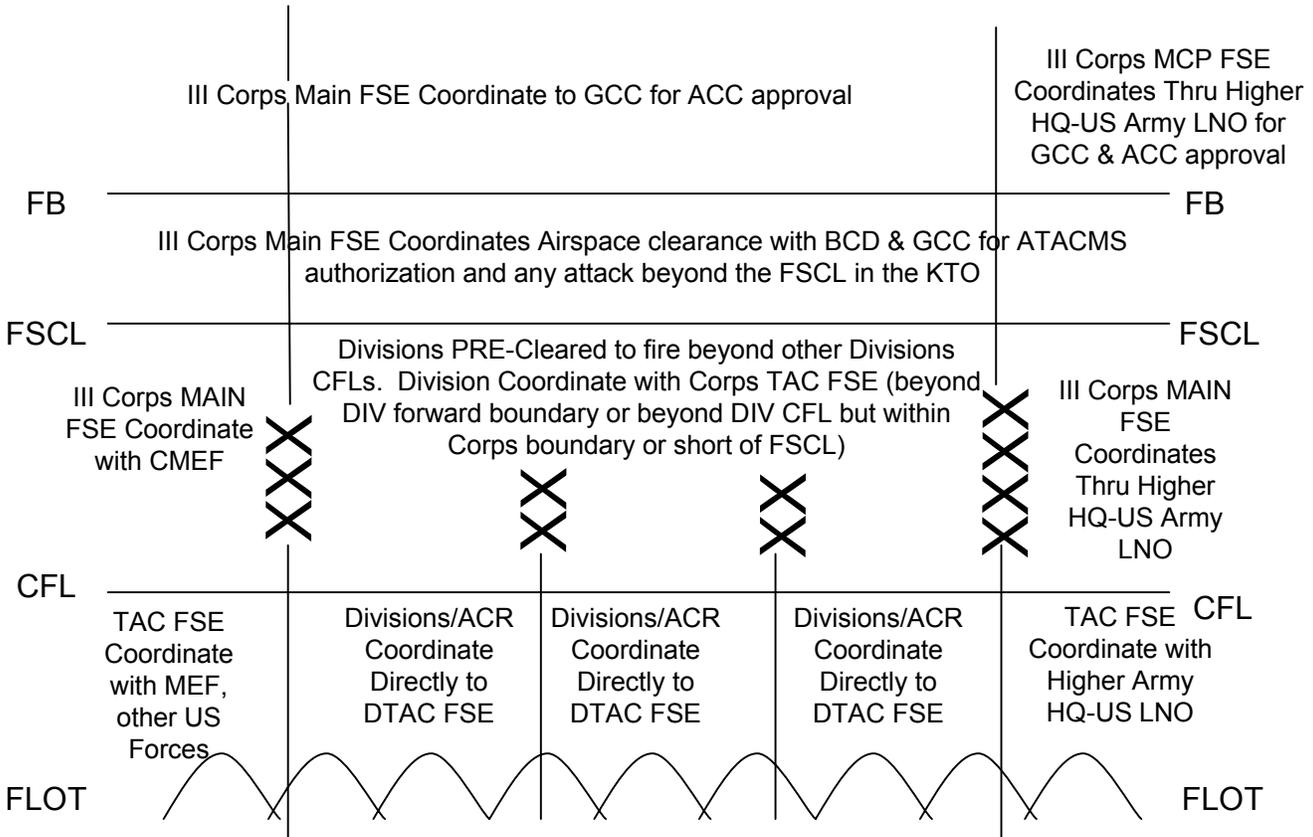
BATTLE DRILLS



- **CLEARANCE OF FIRES**
- **FSCM AND TARGET MANAGEMENT**
- **KILLBOX MANAGEMENT**
- **ATACMS MISSIONS**
- **TIME SENSITIVE SURFACE TARGETS (TSST)**

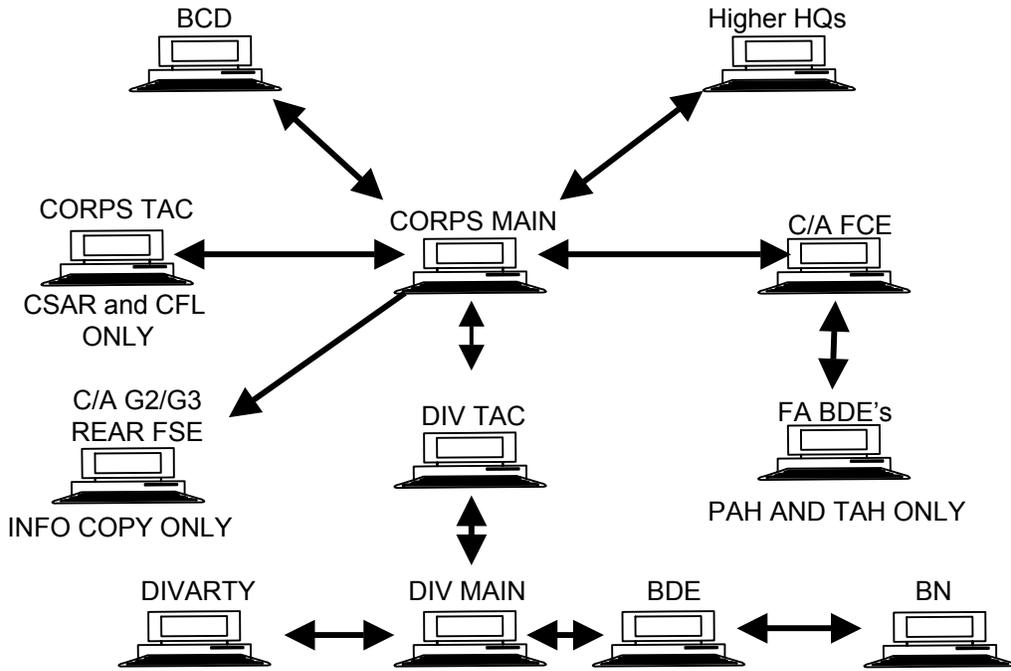


Cross Boundary Clearance of Fires



1. PURPOSE. To identify and explain Cross Boundary Clearance of Fires.
2. SCOPE. Applicable to Corps Artillery staff section, subordinates units, and all fire support agencies supporting III Armored Corps.
3. PROCEDURES. Divisions clear fires from DTAC FSE to DTAC FSE for fires in Division Areas. Divisions establish CFLs that allow other elements to use surface to surface fires beyond the CFL without additional coordination. ALL FSEs must have a common set of graphics to include DIV NFAs and RFAs to make this efficient. Corps MAIN FSE will clear fires outside of the Corps area beyond adjacent Corps' or Allied CFLs. Corps Main FSE will get approval for pre-cleared fires beyond adjacent CFLs. The MAIN FSE must clear all attacks beyond the FSCL through the GCC (with the exception of TSST fires). See figure above

FSCM AND TARGET MANAGEMENT (1 of 2)



1. FSCM Naming Procedures. All FSCMs established or requested within III(US)Corps will be assigned an 8 character alphanumeric name using the format TTHH1111.

a. The first 2 characters (TT) denote the FSCM type using the two character codes below:

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| NA - no fire area | CL - coordinated fire line |
| RA - restricted fire area | AA - airspace coordination area |
| RL - restricted fire line | FB - forward boundary |
| FL - fire support coord line | FA - free fire area |

b. The next two characters (HH) indicate the establishing HQ. These are the same as the two-letter target number block of the HQ establishing or requesting the FSCM. (See D-6, FSE Internal TACSOP).

c. The last 4 digits (1111) are a serial number. The serial number corresponds to the owning units target block number. For example, a measure called FLTA0003 denotes the 3rd fire support coordination line established by CFC. An RFA called RAKA0047 would be the 47th one established by III(US)Corps or the Corps asset assigned that target block number.

2. An EXCEL spread sheet is made for quick reference for matching real names with numbers.
3. Each establishing HQ's must check to ensure that they are not building duplicate FSCMs
4. A lower HQ FSCMs will not override an higher HQs FSCMs.

5. Corps MAIN FSE will coordinate request for FSCL changes with Higher HQ. Recommended FSCL changes and triggers for changes must come from the Daily Targeting meetings. The FAIO needs to report planned FSCL changes to Corps FSE Main after each meeting. Requests for FSCL changes must be sent to Higher HQ twelve hours in advance of the requested change.



FSCM AND TARGET MANAGEMENT (2 of 2)



RFA/NFA/PTL Coordination and deconfliction.

1. The FSE will establish a webpage for the purpose of timely exchange of critical information for clearing fires in the Corps area of operation.

a. The webpage will be maintained by the FSE. Using a designated Laptop.

b. There will be a search feature, to quickly reference individual areas.

c. MCP FSE will update Corps RFA/NFA/PTLs. MSCs will be responsible for updating their own.

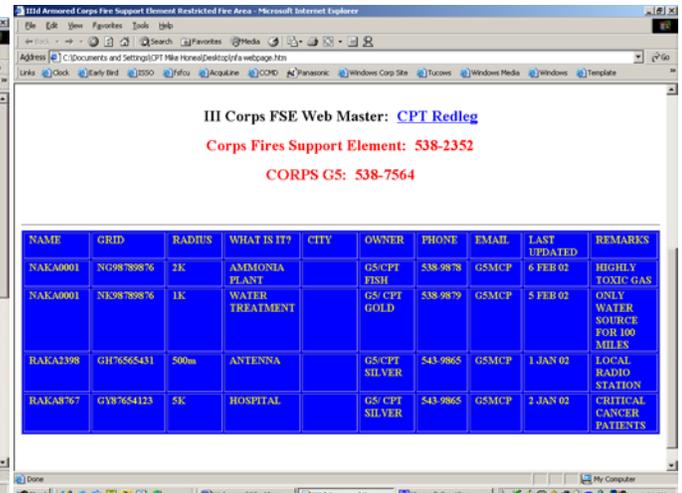
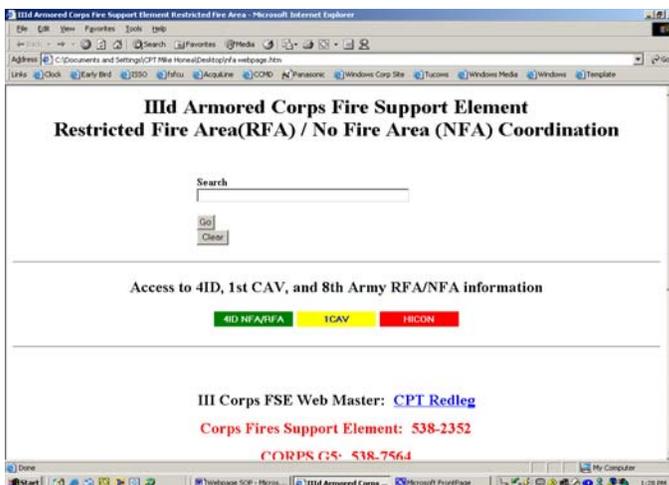
(1) Divisions will establish their own webpages for NFA/RFA/PTL deconfliction.

(2) The Corps page will have a link to the division pages.

d. Contributing Corps agencies will send additions and changes to the MCP FSE via TACLAN.

2. The establishment of the webpage will be in coordination with the G6 and will have a link on the MAIN/TAC/REAR Webpages. It will be designed in accordance with applicable guidance and regulations.

3. See example figures below.





Kill Box Management



Definition: Kill Boxes (KB) are designed to concentrate fires, air power, and intelligence collectors beyond the FSCL and normally short of the FB.

III Corps FSE ADOCS Server coordinates changes to Kill Boxes with higher HQs and the BCD.

Nomination of preplanned requests for inclusion on the ITO, should include color designation for activation, and desired times in effect if known.

Once the ATO is published, the AI planner, ECC OPS and ALO analyze the preplanned nomination ensuring the current situational requirements are met.

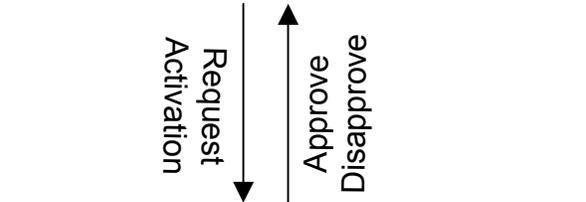
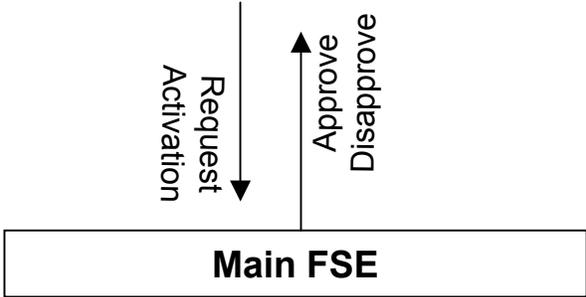
Color	Purpose	Component	Ceiling
Red	No Fires		0 ft MSL
Blue	ACC Fires	ACC	0 ft MSL
None	Not Active		7000 ft MSL
Purple	Joint Fires	Multiple	10000 ft MSL
Green	GCC Fires	GCC	20000ft MSL
Brown	CMFC Fires	CNCC/CMFC	20000 ft MSL

Note: III Corps Main FSE is responsible to nominate Kill Boxes for activation beyond the FSCL working closely with ECC, TAC FSE and MSCs. MCP FSE consolidates all requests of MSCs, deconflicts and synchronizes ATO execution within the CORPS ZOA, and nominates up new / changes to requests to the BCD via ADOCS. Divisions are responsible for opening ACAs short of the FSCL within Division boundaries. If the DIV boundary doesn't go all the way to the FSCL, TAC FSE will open ACAs in the Corps Area.

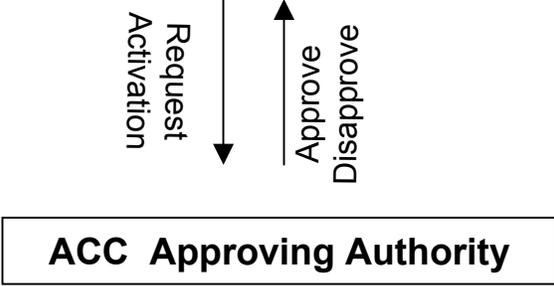
Flow Chart to Activate / Change Kill Box Color Designation

Subordinate MSCs

Kill Box Alpha-Numeric Designation & color? Effective Times & Length?



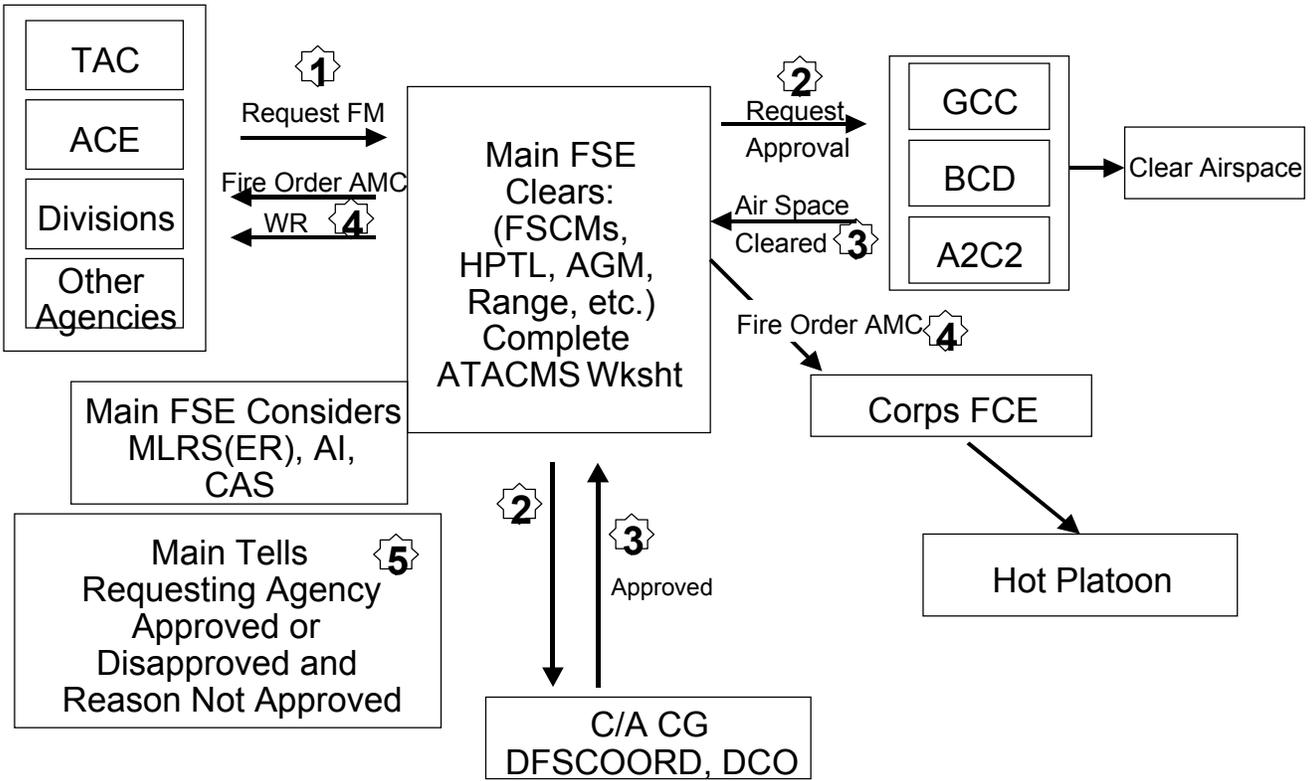
GCC / BCD (Between FSCL & FB)



ACC Approving Authority



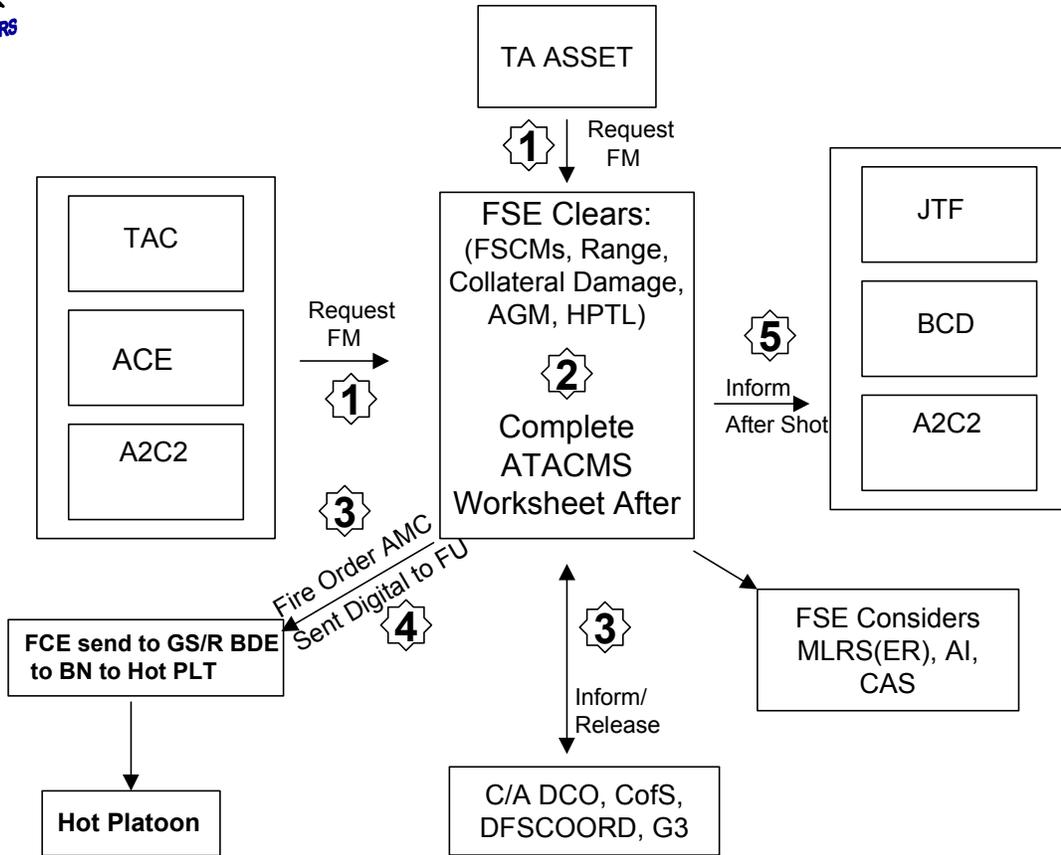
ATACMS Flow Chart



1. PURPOSE. To identify and explain ATACMS Flow Chart.
2. SCOPE. Applicable to Corps Artillery staff section, subordinates units, and all fire support agencies supporting III Armored Corps.
3. PROCEDURES. (1) Fire Mission (FM) transmitted digitally to MAIN FSE. Main FSE sends FM Request to GCC and BCD via ADOCS for approval after clearing fires. Higher headquarters must clear airspace for all ATACMS missions unless specified in the OPORD such as "Fire and Inform" for Time Sensitive Surface Targets. See also Figure # "TSST Flow Chart". (2) Main FSE fills out ATACMS worksheet and expeditiously obtains approval from approval authority after clearing fires. (3) When cleared by higher headquarters and approved by Corps authority, sends mission digitally to Corps FSE (4) either as AMC or WR. (5) If WR mission, MAIN FSE notifies requestor of "shot". If AMC mission, MAIN FSE notifies requestor when ready and waits for shot from requestor. If mission is denied at any level, requestor will see what level denied mission on ADOCS. Corps MAIN FSE will notify requestor of reason for denial via ADOCS message or by phone.



TSST Flow Chart



1. PURPOSE. To identify and explain TSST Flow Chart.
2. SCOPE. Applicable to Corps Artillery staff section, subordinates units, and all fire support agencies supporting III Armored Corps.
3. PROCEDURES. Higher HQ identifies TSSTs in their OPORD. These targets are usually long shooters or WMD Delivery systems. Based on that OPORD, III US Corps is normally given permission to fire beyond the FSCL or use ATACMS to attack the target and then inform higher. The Target Acquisition (TA) Asset (1) can be any source that meets the HPTL and AGM. Fire Missions (FM) from higher (1) are usually considered a Mission, not a Request For Fires. Those FMs from higher are considered cleared to fire without further coordination. MAIN FSE Clears fires (2) and sends the mission digitally to the FCE as AMC, who sends it digitally to the FU (3). At the same time, MAIN FSE gets approval for release from the Release Approval Authority. When approved, give a voice command to fire (4) to the FCE. Upon EOM, inform higher headquarters (5) via ADOCS and TACLAN e-mail. Follow up periodically with the CARTY Microsoft Excel spread sheet that captures all ATACMS missions fired.

References (1 of 2)

GENERAL	D-1
MAIN FSE	D-1-1
PHYSICAL LAYOUT	D-1-A-1
EQUIPMENT LIST	D-1-B-1
LOAD PLAN	D-1-C-1
15 DOS REQUIREMENTS	D-1-D-1
REQUIRED PUBLICATIONS	D-1-E-1
INFORMATION OPERATIONS	D-1-F-1
HEADS-UP DISPLAY	D-1-G-1
MAIN BATTLE DRILLS	D-1-H-1
LSA REQUIREMENTS	D-1-I-1
FSE MDMP GENERAL RESPONSIBILITIES	D-1-J-1
CROSS-WALK WITH STAFF SECTIONS	D-1-K-1
TAC FSE	D-2-1
PHYSICAL LAYOUT	D-2-A-1
EQUIPMENT LIST	D-2-B-1
LOAD PLAN	D-2-C-1
15 DOS REQUIREMENTS	D-2-D-1
REQUIRED PUBLICATIONS	D-2-E-1
HEADS UP DISPLAY	D-2-F-1
ASSAULT FSE	D-3-1
PHYSICAL LAYOUT	D-3-A-1
EQUIPMENT LIST	D-3-B-1
LOAD PLAN	D-3-C-1
15 DOS REQUIREMENTS	D-3-D-1
REQUIRED PUBLICATIONS	D-3-E-1
REAR FSE	D-4-1
PHYSICAL LAYOUT	D-4-A-1
EQUIPMENT LIST	D-4-B-1
LOAD PLAN	D-4-C-1
15 DOS REQUIREMENTS	D-4-D-1
REQUIRED PUBLICATIONS	D-4-E-1
BATTLE DRILLS	D-5-1
ATACMS	D-5-A-1
DIGITAL FIRE MISSION PROCESSING	D-5-B-1
VOICE FIRE MISSION PROCESSING	D-5-C-1
CLEARANCE OF FIRES	D-5-D-1
OVERLAYS AND GRAPHICS	D-5-E-1
FSCM MANAGEMENT	D-5-F-1
FSCM NUMBERING	D-5-G-1
TARGET NUMBERING	D-5-H-1
AI/CAS PLANNING	D-5-I-1
KILLBOX MANAGEMENT	D-5-J-1
TIME SENSITIVE TARGETS	D-5-K-1
BATTLE HAND OVER (MAIN TO TAC)	D-5-L-1
BATTLE HAND OVER (TAC TO MAIN)	D-5-M-1
URBAN AREAS AND PROTECTED TARGETS	D-5-N-1
REPORTS	D-6-1
BATTLE UPDATE BRIEFING	D-6-A-1
EQUIPMENT STATUS REPORT	D-6-B-1
FIRES REHEARSAL	D-7-1
AGENDA	D-7-A-1
HOW WE ARE GOING TO FIGHT	D-7-B-1
FAIO	D-8-1
ARTILLERY LNO	D-9-1
ADOCS OPERATIONS	D-9-A-1
EQUIPMENT	D-9-B-1
PRE-DEPLOYMENT ACTIONS	D-9-C-1
ACTIONS UPON REPORTING	D-9-D-1



References (2 of 2)



CFC PUB 2-3	COMBINED AND JOINT INTELLIGENCE ANALYSIS AND PRODUCTION, 1 JUN 00
CFC PUB 2-4.2	MOBILE TARGETS BDA TTPs, 1 JUN 00
CFC PUB 2-4.3	FIXED TARGETS BDA TTPs, 1 JUN 00
CFC PUB 2-4.5	COMBINED AIR INTELLIGENCE ANALYSIS AND PRODUCTION, 1 JUN 00
CFC PUB 3	OPERATIONAL CONCEPTS, 1 JUL 00
CFC PUB 3-1	SHAPING OPERATIONS, 1 JUL 00
CFC PUC 3-1.1	KILL BOX OPERATIONS, 1 JUL 00
CFC PUB 3-1.2	COMBINED UNCONVENTIONAL WARFARE TASK FORCE, 1 JUL 00
CFC PUB 3-2	CLOSE OPERATIONS, 1 JUL 00
CFC PUB 3-2.1	COUNTERFIRE OPERATIONS, 1 JUL 00
CFC PUB 3-3.4	AC-130 OPERATIONS, 1 MAY 99
CFC PUB 3-4.1	TARGETING OPERATIONS, 1 JUL 00
CFC PUB 3-4.2	INFORMATION OPERATIONS, 1 JUL 00
CFC PUB 3-4.3	ELECTRONIC WARFARE OPERATIONS, 1 JUL 00
CFC PUB 3-4.4	BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESMENT, 1 JUL 00
CFC PUB 3-4.5	COMMON OPERATIONAL PICTURE, 1 JUL 00
CFC PUB 3-4.7	COMBINED PSYCHOLOGICAL OPERATIONS, 1 JUL 00
CFC PUB 3-6	COMBINED AVIATION FORCE OPERATIONS, 1 MAY 99
CFC PUB 3-7	SUPPORT OPERATIONS, 1 MAY 99
CFC PUB 3-7.3	SPACE OPERATIONS, 1 MAY 99



CARTY

C.3.1

SHAPING OPERATIONS



III CORPS TACTICAL SOP

TABLE OF CONTENTS



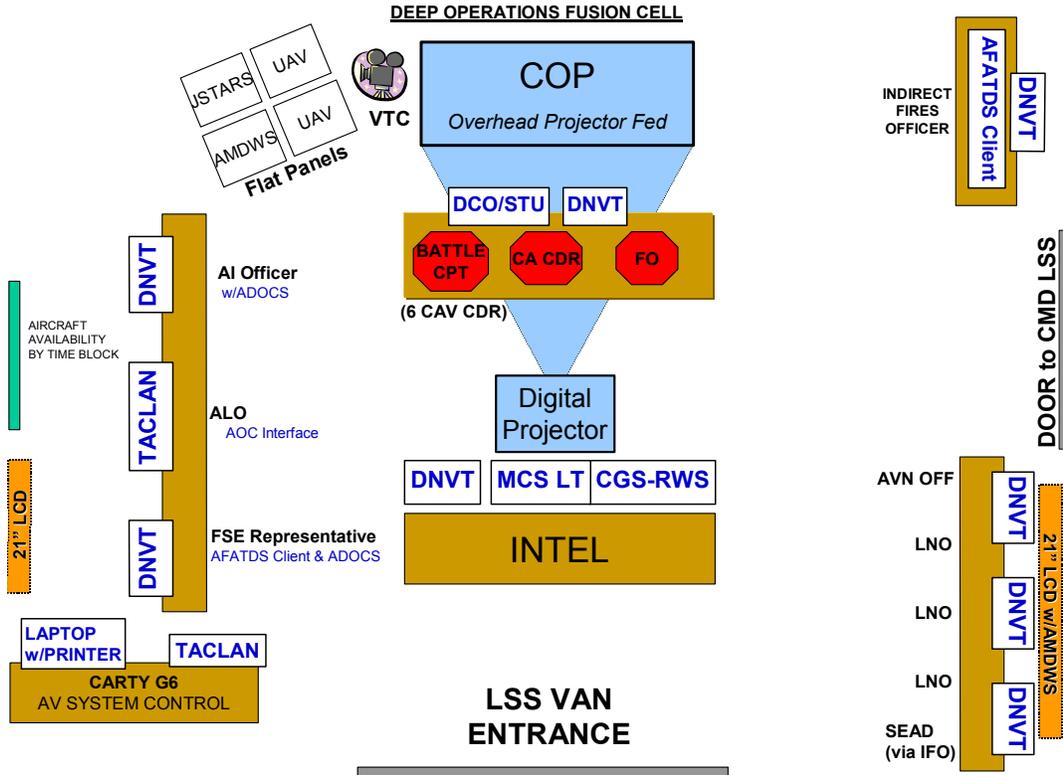
- C.3.1 SHAPING OPERATIONS
 - C.3.1.1 ECC EXECUTION
 - C.3.1.1.1 ORGANIZATION
 - C.3.1.1.2 FUNCTIONS
 - C.3.1.1.3 OPERATIONS
 - C.3.1.1.4 ADP
 - C.3.1.2 ECC PLANS
 - C.3.1.2.1 ORGANIZATION
 - C.3.1.2.2 FUNCTIONS
 - C.3.1.2.3 OPERATIONS
 - C.3.1.2.4 ADP
 - C.3.1.3 ECC JUMP/ASSAULT CP
 - C.3.1.2.1 ORGANIZATION
 - C.3.1.2.2 FUNCTIONS
 - C.3.1.2.3 OPERATIONS
 - C.3.1.2.4 ADP
 - C3.1.4 BATTLE RHYTHM
 - C3.1.5 TEAM ECC RESPONSIBILITIES
 - C3.1.6 BATTLE DRILLS
 - C.3.1.6.1 AI/CAS (SEE ANNEX M to III C/A TACSOP)
 - C.3.1.6.2 JSEAD/EW (SEE ANNEX M to III C/A TACSOP)
 - C.3.1.6.3 ATACMS (SEE ANNEX M to III C/A TACSOP)
 - C3.1.7 REFERENCES



EFFECTS COORDINATION CELL (ECC)



ORGANIZATION



MANNING ROSTER

DAY SHIFT

FUSION OFF: 13A/O5
 BATTLE CPT: 13A/O4-03
 NCOIC-13F40
 ECC LSS SPC-e E4
 CF OFF-131A
 AFSCOORD-13A/04-03
 AFATDS/ADCS OPR
 G2 TGT OFF-35D/O3
 C/A G2 OFF-35D/O3
 ALO-11F4U/O5
 AI OFFICER-13A/03
 SEAD PLANNER-13A/O3
 LNO's-13A/O3

NIGHT SHIFT

Corps FSCOORD-07
 FUSION OFF: 13A/O5
 BATTLE CPT: 13A/O4-03
 NCOIC-13F40
 ECC LSS SPC-e E4
 CF OFF-131A
 AFSCOORD-13A/04-03
 AFATDS/ADCS OPR
 G2 TGT OFF-35D/O3
 C/A G2 OFF-35D/O3
 ALO-O5
 AI OFFICER-13A/03
 SEAD PLANNER-13A/O3
 LNO's-13A/O3

SWING SHIFT

ECC CHIEF-13A/O6
 IO OFF-O4
 PSYOPS OFF-O4
 SPACE OPS OFF-O4
 G2 COLL MGR-35D/O4
 SJA - 03
 C/A G2- 05
 SWO
 SOCOORD-18C/O4/O5
 ADE
 ENG



ECC EXECUTION



FUNCTIONS/TASKS

- Allocate attack resources to engage Shaping HPTs
- Ensures adequacy of the force commander's guidance for targets beyond the FSCCL and short of the command's forward boundary.
- Integrate and synchronize corps/ division shaping assets with joint force systems.
- Coordinating the allocation of collection assets to perform BDA functions early in the planning phase
- Coordinate the integration of all combat, CS, and CSS assets, to include communications means, and ensuring their availability at the critical place and time
- Nominate HPTs that cannot be acquired or attacked with available assets to the next higher HQ for consideration and action
- Interface with joint targeting coordination board (JTCCB) and BCD
- Target Updates – 8, 4, & 2 Hours Out
- Monitors the tactical situation, to include: Status of current/decisive and sustainment operations to continually assess their relationship to shaping operations
- Confirm and validate sensor reports to determine if the original decide criteria for Shaping targets remains valid



ECC EXECUTION



OPERATIONS

The III Corps Effects Coordination Cell (ECC) is responsible for the execution of all Corps Shaping Operations in support of (ISO) the Corps scheme of maneuver. III Corps shaping operations effect the Corps Battle space with lethal and non-lethal fires. The ECC fuses all BOSS functionality in a synchronized effort for execution, supported by fused intelligence. The Corps combines deep maneuver, lethal and non-lethal fires and IO, all supported by intelligence, to prosecute the Shaping fight. Shaping operations are not simply the Corps attacking an enemy force in depth with attack helicopters. Specifically, III Corps Shaping Operations can include, but are not limited to a synchronized effort of Air Interdiction, Close Air Support, Attack Aviation, Electronic Warfare, Naval Gunfire and Field Artillery supported by fused Intelligence. They are the sum of all activities that influence when, where, and in what condition the enemy forces can be committed against Corps' Decisive Fight. Shaping operations against enemy forces not yet in contact establish these conditions for success in decisive operations by stripping away the enemy's ability to concentrate combat power, attack in depth, and mass his artillery.

The III Corps Artillery Commander is the Executive Agent for the III Corps Commander for the conduct of Corps Shaping Operations. The Fusion Officer directs execution within the Execution Cell. Resident within ECC Execution are the BOSS's specified in the previous manning roster. These BOSS Elements are tethered to their respective section via ATTCS or ADOCS to provide automated and streamlined execution as well as connectivity with HICON/Theater.

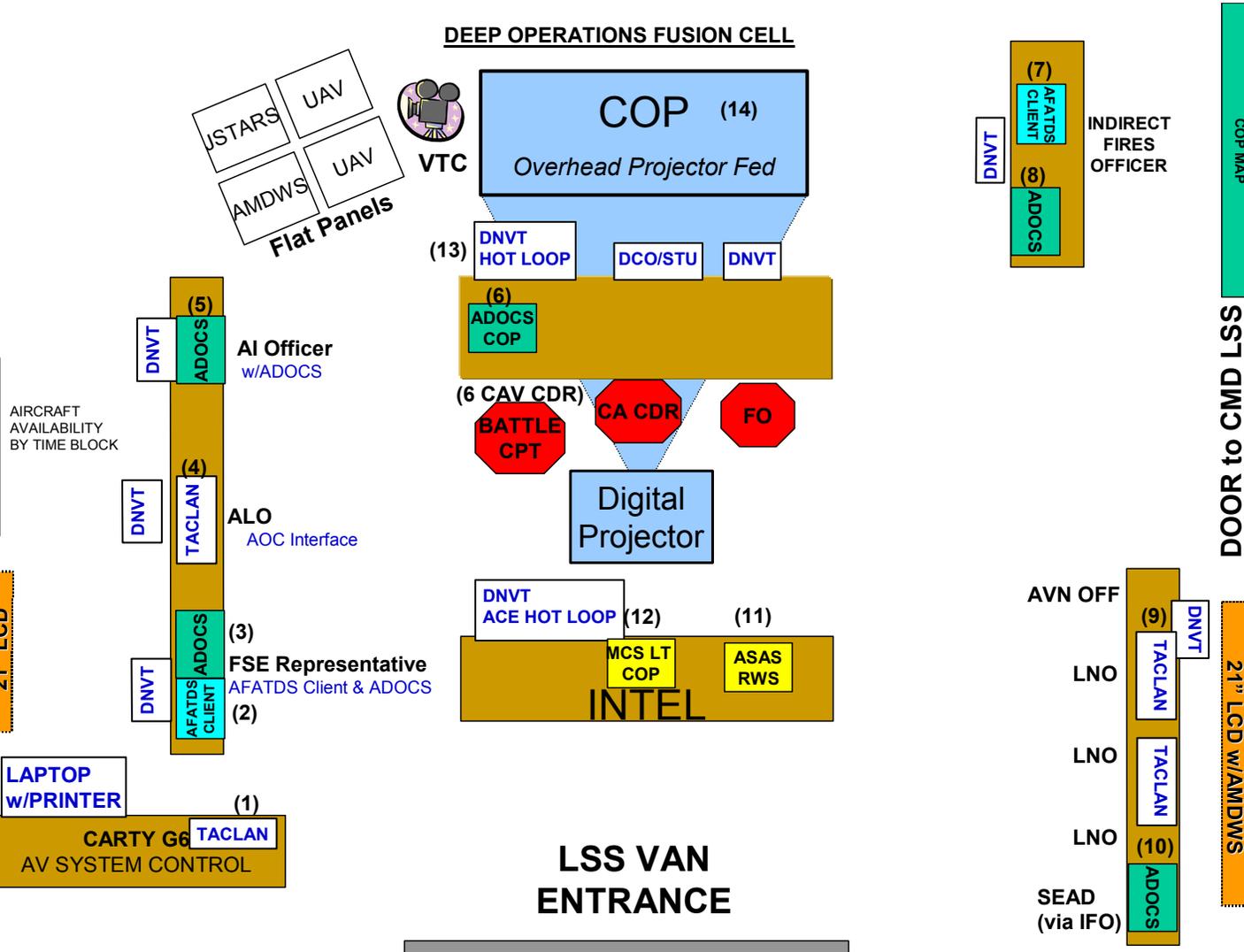


ECC EXECUTION

OPERATIONS

(For further details see C.3.1.6 Battle Drills and C.3.1.4 Battle Rhythm or III ACA TACSOP, Shaping Operations)

ADP



NOTE: The above diagram illustrates C4I Architecture resident in ECC Execution. See FOLLOWING table for use and connectivity requirements for each device .



ECC EXECUTION

ADP

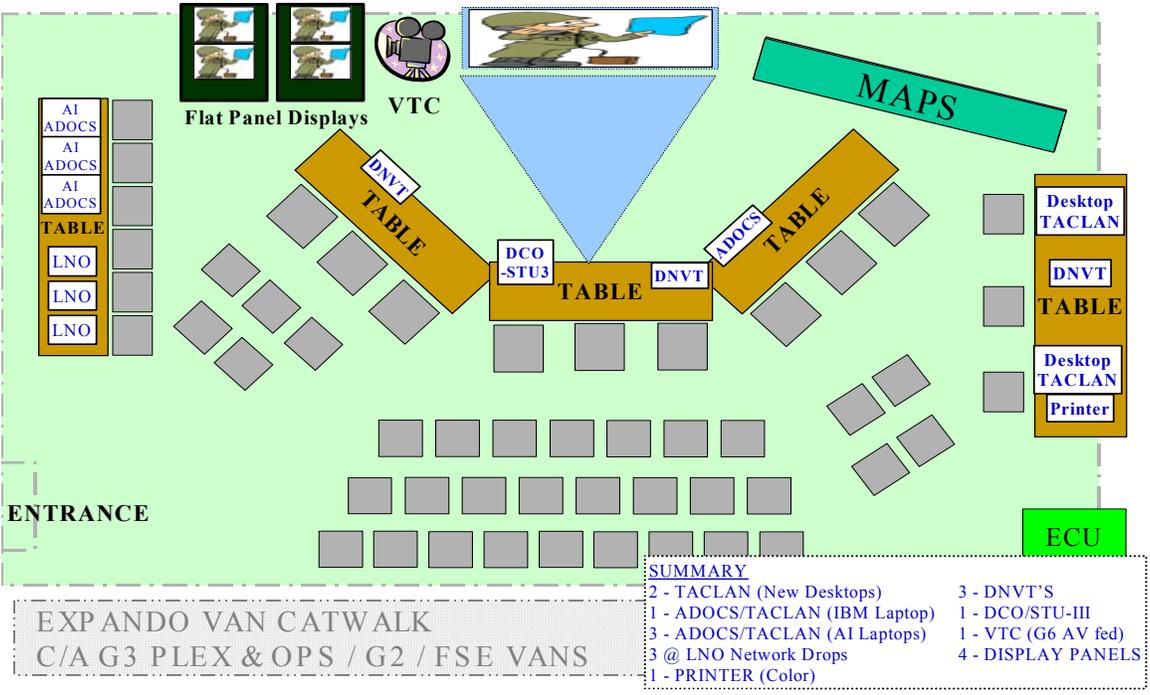


COMPUTER #	TYPE DEVICE	CONNECTIVITY/USE
(1)	TACLAN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Primary computer for exchange of tactical information and access to III Corps TACLAN - Briefing computer when applicable
(2)	AFATDS CLIENT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Connectivity to FSE AFATDS for automated fire missions - Provides CF COP, FSCM management & fire support coordination for the FSE AFSCOORD Representative - SEAD execution and planning
(3)	ADOCS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Connectivity with BCD, HICON, & Theater for EAC fire support coordination (ie. Killbox, ACA, FSCL change requests) - Seamless automated message traffic between EAC and DOCC Execution for engagement of TCT/TST's and fleeting HPT's - SEAD execution and planning
(4)	TACLAN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - ALO primary computer for exchange of tactical information and access to III Corps TACLAN - Connectivity to ASOC
(5)	ADOCS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - AI planners connectivity to HICON, BCD for execution of ATO (ie. 8-4-2 Updates) - Connectivity with BCD Plans & Execution, AOC, & HICON for re-tasking/re-directing XINT
(6)	ADOCS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Primary ADOCS COP computer that displays. - CF COP, - During Deep ATKs it is used for graphical COP of Corps & MSC deep atks depicting RTEs/EAs & ELINT w/threat rings during execution, etc.
(7)	AFTDS Client	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Secondary means for CF COP unless a pure AFATDS Architecture exists - Automated fire mission processing of HPT's acquired beyond FSCL
(8)	ADOCS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - CF COP - Management and oversight of Corps Target Acquisition Assets (ie. Search Azimuths, Zone/ sensor boundry management) - Automated fire mission processing of HPT's acquired beyond FSCL
(9/10)	TACLAN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Primary computer for exchange of tactical information and access to III Corps TACLAN for LNO's to share while in LSS during execution
(11)	ASAS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - RED COP
(12)	MCS LT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Corps COP (RED/BLUE)
(13)	DNVT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Deep ATK Hotloop with supporting aviation
(14)	COP DISPLAY	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Normally MCS except during execution. Projector accepts 4 feeds and display can be slit into quarters, facilitating VTC feed/BUB, MCS, ADOCS and ASAS



ECC PLANS ORGANIZATION

ECC PLANNING CELL (Planning Tent)



MANNING ROSTER

DAY SHIFT

SHAPING OPS
PLANNER:13A/O4
BATTLE CPT: 13A/O4-03
NCOIC-13F40
BRIEFING SPC- 71L01
BRIEFING SPC-71L01

NIGHT SHIFT

SHAPING OPS
PLANNER:13A/O4
BATTLE CPT: 13A/O4-03
NCOIC-13F40
BRIEFING SPC- 71L01
BRIEFING SPC-71L01

SWING SHIFT

ECC CHIEF-13A/O6
IO OFF-O4
PSYOPS OFF-O4
SPACE OPS OFF-O4
G2 COLL MGR-35D/O4
SJA – 03
C/A G2- 35D/O5
C/A G2 PLANNER-
35D/O4
SWO
SOCOORD-18C/O4/O5
ADE
ENG



ECC PLANS



FUNCTIONS/TASKS

- Plans, coordinates, and synchronizes force shaping operations in close coordination with the Main CP FSE, targeting team, and joint FS elements.
- Ensures adequacy of the force commander's guidance for targets beyond the FSCL and short of the command's forward boundary.
- Focuses on dominating the enemy's: Fire support means, Command and control systems, Air defenses, Tempo of operations, Reinforcing elements, Installations and supplies.
- Develop and submit warning orders and FRAGO's in support of Shaping operations to Corps G3 for publication
- Maintain current/future and decisive/shaping/sustaining operations situational awareness
- Contributes to development of FSCM to support Shaping operations, to include: Airspace coordination areas/kill boxes, restrictive fire lines. Phase lines/forward boundaries to delineate the area of responsibility between the joint force, corps, and division and FSCL.
- Select Shaping targets and the designate the focus/employment of long range intelligence
- Develop and refine for approval the AGM, TSS, HPTL, and BDA requirements with focus on Shaping operations



ECC PLANS OPERATIONS

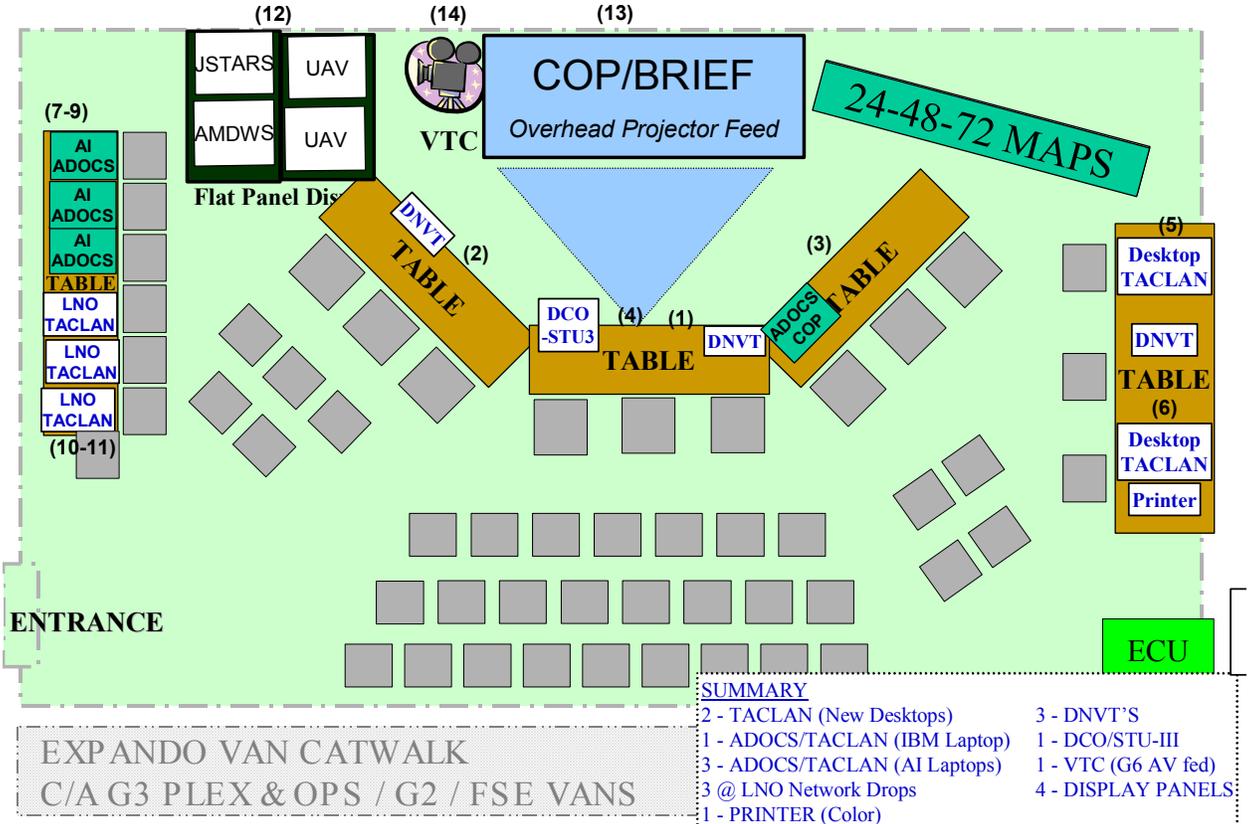


The III Corps Effects Coordination Cell (ECC) is responsible for the planning of all Corps Shaping Operations in support of (ISO) the Corps scheme of maneuver. As mentioned previously, the III Corps Artillery Commander is the Executive Agent for the III Corps Commander for the conduct of Corps Shaping Operations. The ECC Plans Cell Conducts continuous planning of Corps shaping operations. This planning is a modified war gaming out to 96 hours considering Corps Scheme of Maneuver (action), enemy decision points (reaction), modification or validation of planned shaping operations (counteraction). Most of the Shaping/Shaping Operations is developed, refined and synchronized in a series of meetings; Pre-targeting, Targeting, Decision Brief, Synchronization and GO/NO GO (See C.3.1.4 and C.3.1.5). All BOSS elements have an important role in the planning to provide synergy supported by fused intelligence. The planning focus is to develop and refine shaping operations 96 hours in advance. This is to insure that Corps shaping is submitted within the respective theater battle rhythm for ATO/ITO development. (See C.3.1.4, C.3.1.5, and C.3.1.6 and III Corps Artillery TACSOP, Shaping Operations for more details.)

ECC PLANS

ADP

ECC PLANNING CELL (Planning Tent)



DEVICE/ COMPUTER #	TYPE DEVICE	CONNECTIVITY/USE
(1)(2)(3)(16)	MICROPHONES	- All microphones interface with (14) the VTC Suite and provide the audio during various meetings during VTC Broadcast. (15) is a microphone that has a cable and can be moved throughout the Plans Tent to the individual speaking, if they are not near the head tables.
(4)	Projector	- Primarily used for briefings to project slides onto screen, but can also be used to project COP feeds.
(5) (6)	TAACLAN/BRIEFING COMPUTERS	- Primary computer for exchange of tactical information and access to III Corps TAACLAN - Briefing computers used for briefing production and interface w/(4) projector
(7)-(9)	TAACLAN	- AI planners connectivity to HICON, BCD for AI & Pre-planned CAS Nominations. Used to build and refine the Air Support Request (ASR) as the deep operations plan is developed. - Connectivity with BCD Plans & Execution, AOC, & HICON for re-tasking/re-directing XINT



ECC PLANS

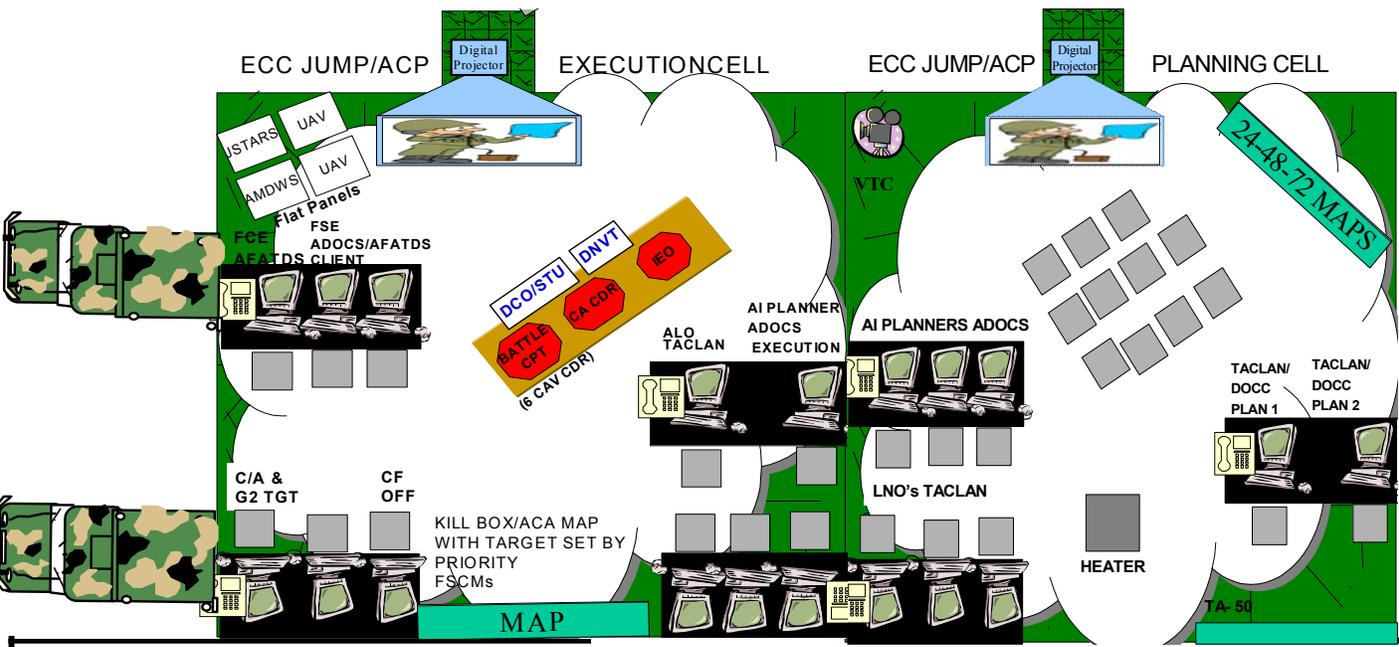


ADP

DEVICE/ COMPUTER #	TYPE DEVICE	CONNECTIVITY/USE
(10-12)	ADOCS	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- AI planners connectivity to HICON, BCD for execution of ATO (ie. 8-4-2 Updates)- Connectivity with BCD Plans & Execution, AOC, & HICON for re-tasking/re-directing XINT
(13)	COP DISPLAY & BRIEFING SCREN	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Primary screen used for briefings. The projector has the capability of accepting multiple feeds from RGB cable, however it only displays one feed at anytime.. Usually display ADOCS CF COP or MCS.
(14)	VTC Sutie	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Usually left on an running continuously and used for situation awareness and to receive continual guidance from the CDR. Used commonly as command and control puposest.
(15)	FLAT PANELS	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Used to display situational awareness & COP feeds.



ECC JUMP/ACP ORGANIZATION



MANNING ROSTER EXECUTION

DAY SHIFT	NIGHT SHIFT	SWING SHIFT
SHAPING OPS	SHAPING OPS	ECC CHIEF-13A/O6
PLANNER:13A/O4	PLANNER:13A/O4	IO OFF-04
BATTLE CPT: 13A/O4-03	BATTLE CPT: 13A/O4-03	PSYOPS OFF-04
NCOIC-13F40	NCOIC-13F40	SPACE OPS OFF-04
BREIFING SPC- 71L01	BREIFING SPC- 71L01	G2 COLL MGR-35D/O4
BRIEFING SPC-71L01	BRIEFING SPC-71L01	SJA – 03
		C/A G2- 35D/O5
		C/A G2 PLANNER-35D/O4
		SWO
		SOCOORD-18C/O4/O5
		ADE
		ENG



ECC JUMP/ACP ORGANIZATION



MANNING ROSTER PLANS

DAY SHIFT	NIGHT SHIFT	SWING SHIFT
SHAPING OPS PLANNER:13A/O4 BATTLE CPT: 13A/O4-03 NCOIC-13F40 BREIFING SPC- 71L01 BRIEFING SPC-71L01	SHAPING OPS PLANNER:13A/O4 BATTLE CPT: 13A/O4-03 NCOIC-13F40 BREIFING SPC- 71L01 BRIEFING SPC-71L01	ECC CHIEF-13A/O6 IO OFF-04 PSYOPS OFF-04 SPACE OPS OFF-04 G2 COLL MGR-35D/O4 SJA – 03 C/A G2- 35D/O5 C/A G2 PLANNER-35D/O4 SWO SOCOORD-18C/O4/O5 ADE ENG

FUNCTIONS

Same as ECC Execution & Plans

ADP

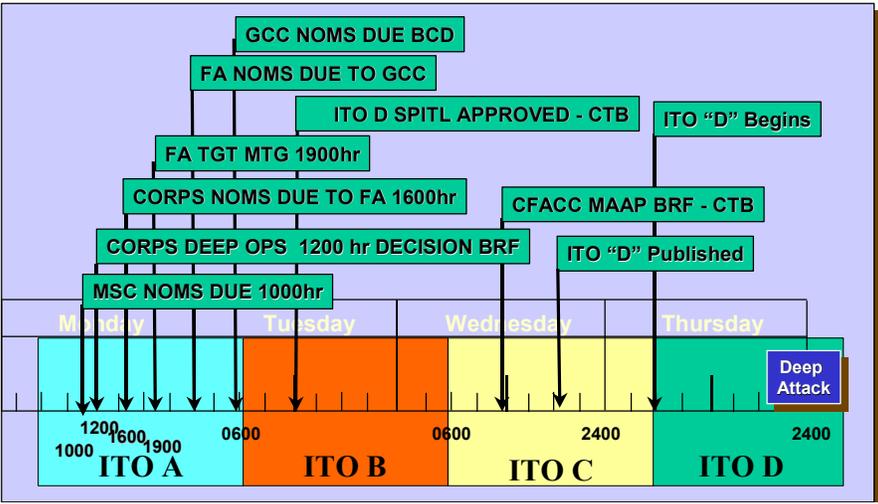
No change



ECC BATTLE RHYTHM

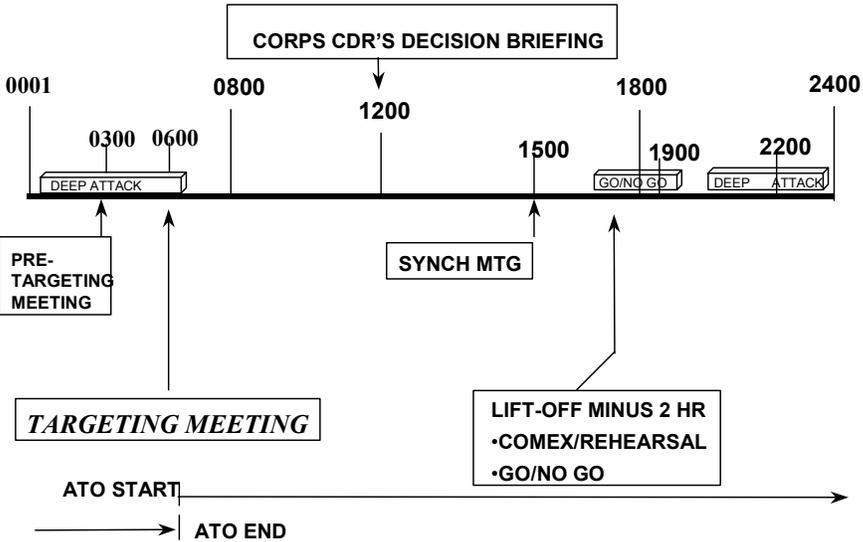
ATO/ITO CYCLE

Because the Air Power from the Air Force is such an essential portion of Corps Shaping Operations the Corps Battle Rhythm is synchronized with the theater battle rhythm to insure the Corps AI Nominations are sourced by the Air Operations Center. Below is a depiction of the typical ATO/ITO Cycle. It is evident from below that shaping operations begin initial planning 96 hours in advance and are continually refined until execution.



ECC DAILY BATTLE RHYTHM

**For details on each meeting and Corps Staff/BOSS Responsibilities see III ACA Shaping Operations SOP.





TEAM ECC RESPONSIBILITIES

BOSS DELIVERABLES

The below table specifies the deliverables that each BOSS/Staff Agency is responsible for the Pre-Targeting Meeting, Targeting Meeting, Decision Brief, Synchronization Meeting, and Go/No Go Brief. It is essential that this information is complete and provided for each meeting to maintain efficiency throughout the Corps targeting process.

STAFF/MEETING	PRE-TARGETING MTG	TARGETING MTG	DECISION BRIEF
	Pre-targeting meeting is a working group meeting, held at 0300 (L) daily, with the purpose of reviewing deep operations 24-72 hrs and developing Corps deep operations plan for 96 hrs. Below is listed the deliverables that each Staff agency contributes to the meeting. It is essential that each representative listed below comes to the meeting prepared to discuss listed topics in detail.	The targeting meeting is a briefing to the C/A Deputy Commander held at 0600 (L) daily, discussing the results of the Pre-targeting meeting. Each Staff Agency discusses similar topics as the pre-targeting meeting, but the decision brief slides are finalized for approval. The purpose of the meeting is to ensure that the DCO is familiar with Corps deep operations 24-96 hrs and to get approval of all deep operations before the decision brief to the Corps Commander. Each Corps Deep Operation is in ITO <i>integrity. There are four deep</i>	The decision brief is a briefing to the Corps Commander or his designated representative. The purpose of this briefing is to get approval of the Corps Deep Operations for the next 24-96 hrs, and the HPTL/AGM for each of the future ITO/ATOs. The C/A Deputy Commander is the facilitator for the briefing and each BOSS/Staff Agency representative is the subject matter expert for his or her BOSS.
G3 DEEP OPERATIONS PLANNER	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Friendly situation slide illustrating Corps scheme of maneuver for the next 24-96 hrs (timelines, decision points, etc). * Discuss any modifications to the Corps H-Hr sequence * Assess Deep Operations Targeting Objectives validity 24-72 hrs and develop TGT OBJ's for 96 * Assess Targeting Priorities validity 24-72 hrs and develop TGT PRIs for 96 hrs. * Review HPTL and AGM 24-96 and modify accordingly based on changes. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Friendly situation slide illustrating Corps scheme of maneuver for the next 24-96 hrs (timelines, decision points, etc). * Discuss any modifications to the Corps H-Hr sequence * Assess Deep Operations Targeting Objectives validity 24-72 hrs and develop TGT OBJ's for 96 * Assess Targeting Priorities validity 24-72 hrs and develop TGT PRIs for 96 hrs. * Review HPTL and AGM 24-96 and modify accordingly 	SAME AS TARGETING MEETING
FAIO	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Capture changes to HPTL and AGM and modify according to respective ITO/ATO *Revise HPTL/AGM 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Capture changes to HPTL and AGM and modify according to respective ITO/ATO *Revise HPTL/AGM according to DCO Guidance. 	SAME AS TARGETING MEETING



TEAM ECC RESPONSIBILITIES

BOSS DELIVERABLES

STAFF/MEETING	PRE-TARGETING MTG	TARGETING MTG	DECISION BRIEF
G2 TARGETING	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Coordinate w/Corps G2 and brief the enemy situation slide providing BDA last 24 hrs, Enemy situation 24-96 hrs Combat Power & TSS.(2). Ensure that enemy situation is consistent with that being briefed during the upcoming BUB * Brief the Most Significant Threat that illustrates the enemy's most significant threat to Corps Operations focusing on enemy maneuver and artillery units that can immediately affect the Corps. Specifically identify those units most significant 24-96 hrs. Ensure that enemy situation is consistent with that being 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Brief the enemy situation slide providing BDA last 24 hrs, Enemy situation 24-96 hrs Combat Power & TSS.(2). Ensure that enemy situation is consistent with that being briefed during the upcoming BUB * Brief the Most Significant Threat that illustrates the enemy's most significant threat to Corps Operations focusing on enemy maneuver and artillery units that can immediately affect the Corps. Specifically identify those units most significant 24-96 hrs. Ensure that enemy situation is consistent with that being briefed during the 	SAME AS TARGETING MEETING
SEAD PLANNER	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Participate in meeting to identify changes for deep attack targets, EA's, & Routes used for each ITO. * Revise slides prior to targeting meeting with appropriate changes for each respective ITO/ATO * Be prepared to brief accurate information for each SEAD TGT attacked for each ITO/ATO (Complimentary/Local). Inclusive information is: TGT #, TGT Desc., TSS(Time of AcQ-TOT), This information should be available for each ITO/ATO and categorized as COMP/Local SEAD TGT. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Revise slides prior to targeting meeting with appropriate changes for each respective ITO/ATO * Using the SEAD Slide graphically depict SEAD ISO each deep operation per ITO and be prepared to discuss accurate information for each SEAD TGT attacked for each ITO/ATO (Complimentary/Local). Inclusive information is: TGT #, TGT Desc., TSS(Time of AcQ-TOT), This information should be available for each ITO/ATO and categorized as COMP/Local SEAD TGT. 	SAME AS TARGETING MEETING



TEAM ECC RESPONSIBILITIES

BOSS DELIVERABLES

STAFF/MEETING	PRE-TARGETING MTG	TARGETING MTG	DECISION BRIEF
STAFF WEATHER OFFICER	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Discuss impact of Illumination Data, Temperature, Winds, Visibility, Precipitation, Ceilings and any other weather based on projected forecast (specifically addressing Impact on Weapons/Systems/ as they relate to our Current Deep Operations) 24-96 hours to cover all ITO/ATO's in development. * Highlight any changes to weather based on what was previously projected during planning. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Discuss impact of Illumination Data, Temperature, Winds, Visibility, Precipitation, Ceilings and any other weather based on projected forecast (specifically addressing Impact on Weapons/Systems/ as they relate to our Current Deep Operations) 24-96 hours to cover all ITO/ATO's in development. * Highlight any changes to weather based on what was previously projected during planning. 	SAME AS TARGETING MEETING
AI/CAS PLANNER	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Brief AI/Pre-planned TGTs attacked from previous ITO/ATO and any BDA or mission success status. * Brief AI/Preplanned CAS TGTs (Highlighting those approved on SPITL/JPITL or on ITO/ATO): TGT Description, desired effects, TOT, purpose, and recommending agency for each ITO/ATO. TGTs should be briefed in priority order. * Monitor any changes for AI/Pre-planned CAS priorities and modify respective ATO/ITO priorities. * Be prepared to address XINTavailable for the next day ITO/ATO and any TGTs not resourced. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Brief AI/Pre-planned TGTs attacked from previous ITO/ATO and any BDA or mission success status. * Brief AI/Preplanned CAS TGTs (Highlighting those approved on SPITL/JPITL or on ITO/ATO): TGT Description, desired effects, TOT, purpose, and recommending agency for each ITO/ATO. TGTs should be briefed in priority order. * Monitor any changes for AI/Pre-planned CAS priorities and modify respective ATO/ITO priorities. * Be prepared to address XINTavailable for the next day ITO/ATO and any TGTs not resourced. 	SAME AS TARGETING MEETING



TEAM ECC RESPONSIBILITIES

BOSS DELIVERABLES

STAFF/MEETING	PRE-TARGETING MTG	TARGETING MTG	DECISION BRIEF
G3 AVN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Discuss Corps Deep Attack Operations for each ITO/ATO. Specifically address ATK AVN CBT Strength (current ITO only), Ingress/Egress RTEs, EAs, BPs, TOT, Lift OFF/XFLOT/RP/TOS/TOT DTGs, JSEAD, A2C2 for each ITO/ATO. * Monitor changes to deep attack priorities during NTG and adjust accordingly. * Prepare Deep ATK Sketch to graphically depict Corps Deep ATK for each ITO/ATO. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Discuss Corps Deep Attack Operations for each ITO/ATO. Specifically address ATK AVN CBT Strength (current ITO only), Ingress/Egress RTEs, EAs, BPs, TOT, Lift OFF/XFLOT/RP/TOS/TOT DTGs, JSEAD, A2C2 for each ITO/ATO. * Monitor changes to deep attack priorities during NTG and adjust accordingly. * Prepare Deep ATK Sketch to graphically depict Corps Deep ATK for each ITO/ATO. 	SAME AS TARGETING MEETING
G2 COLLECTIONS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Brief the Collection Plan including IR/ISR/HUMINT etc. specifically addressing priorities, focus, and timeline coverage, tgt development/situation development for each ITO/ATO. * Monitor Corps TGT Priorities and adjust accordingly per changes. * Prepare Collection Matrix and HUMINT Collection Plan slides to reflect revised collection focus for TGT MTG. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Brief the Collection Plan including IR/ISR/HUMINT etc. specifically addressing priorities, focus, and timeline coverage, tgt development/situation development for each ITO/ATO. * Monitor Corps TGT Priorities and adjust accordingly per changes. * Prepare Collection Matrix and HUMINT Collection Plan slides to reflect revised collection focus for TGT MTG. 	SAME AS TARGETING MEETING
C/A G3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Brief III C/A capabilities, strength, FA Scheme MVR, Radar/MLRS/cannon RNGs. Be prepared to address ER/ATACMS status and SEAD support. * Prepare slides that graphically depict above for each ITO/ATO. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Brief III C/A capabilities, strength, FA Scheme MVR, Radar/MLRS/cannon RNGs. Be prepared to address ER/ATACMS status and SEAD support. * Prepare slides that graphically depict above for each ITO/ATO. 	SAME AS TARGETING MEETING



TEAM ECC RESPONSIBILITIES

BOSS DELIVERABLES

STAFF/MEETING	PRE-TARGETING MTG	TARGETING MTG	DECISION BRIEF
EW/IO/PSYOPs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Brief planned/coordinated dedicated/complimentary non-lethal JSEAD, Leaflett, Psyops, and IO supporting the Corps for each ITO. * Prepare a slide that graphically depicts the above support for each ITO. * Monitor and adjust according to any changes resulting from Pre-TGT MTG revised Corps Priorities and address issues/impact. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Brief planned/coordinated dedicated/complimentary non-lethal JSEAD, Leaflett, Psyops, and IO supporting the Corps for each ITO. * Prepare a slide that graphically depicts the above support for each ITO. * Monitor and adjust according to any changes resulting from Pre-TGT MTG revised Corps Priorities and address issues/impact. 	SAME AS TARGETING MEETING
MAJOR SUBORDINATE COMMAND DOCC LNO	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Address respective MSC's scheme of MVR for each ITO/ATO period discussed (24-96 hrs). * Brief MSC Deep Atk TGTs for each ITO/ATO. Be prepared to address in detail listed for Corps Deep ATK/G3 AVN. Identify any A2C2/FSCM issues not previously identified. * Address MSC CDRs issues/concerns based on Corps Shaping Operations. * AVN LNO provide information listed above in G3 AVN. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Address respective MSC's scheme of MVR for each ITO/ATO period discussed (24-96 hrs). * Brief MSC Deep Atk TGTs for each ITO/ATO. Be prepared to address in detail listed for Corps Deep ATK/G3 AVN. Identify any A2C2/FSCM issues not previously identified. * Address MSC CDRs issues/concerns based on Corps Shaping Operations. * AVN LNO provide information listed above in G3 AVN. 	SAME AS TARGETING MEETING



TEAM ECC RESPONSIBILITIES

BOSS DELIVERABLES

STAFF/MEETING	SYNCHRONIZATION MTG	GO/NO GO BRIEF
	The synchronization meeting is facilitated by the C/A CofS at 1500 (L) daily with the purpose of synchronizing all BOSS ISO Corps Deep Operations. Endstate for the meeting is finalization of all information in the synchronization matrix for ITO/ATO 24-96 hrs.	The GO/NO GO Brief is a briefing to the Corps Commander for final approval to execute the Corps Deep Attack. The C/A CDR is the facilitator and all BOSS Primaries are present. <i>The briefing is at H-2</i>
G3 DEEP OPERATIONS PLANNER	Input information IAW Synchronization Matrix (See Annex M to III C/A TACSOP)	Complete input IAW Annex M to III C/A TACSOP
FAIO	Input information IAW Synchronization Matrix (See Annex M to III C/A TACSOP)	Complete input IAW Annex M to III C/A TACSOP
G2 TARGETING	Input information IAW Synchronization Matrix (See Annex M to III C/A TACSOP)	Complete input IAW Annex M to III C/A TACSOP
SEAD PLANNER	Input information IAW Synchronization Matrix (See Annex M to III C/A TACSOP)	Complete input IAW Annex M to III C/A TACSOP
STAFF WEATHER OFFICER	Input information IAW Synchronization Matrix (See Annex M to III C/A TACSOP)	Complete input IAW Annex M to III C/A TACSOP
AI/CAS PLANNER	Input information IAW Synchronization Matrix (See Annex M to III C/A TACSOP)	Complete input IAW Annex M to III C/A TACSOP
G3 AVN	Input information IAW Synchronization Matrix (See Annex M to III C/A TACSOP)	Complete input IAW Annex M to III C/A TACSOP
G2 COLLECTIONS	Input information IAW Synchronization Matrix (See Annex M to III C/A TACSOP)	Complete input IAW Annex M to III C/A TACSOP
C/A G3	Input information IAW Synchronization Matrix (See Annex M to III C/A TACSOP)	Complete input IAW Annex M to III C/A TACSOP
EW/IO/PSYOPs	Input information IAW Synchronization Matrix (See Annex M to III C/A TACSOP)	Complete input IAW Annex M to III C/A TACSOP
MAJOR SUBORDINATE COMMAND DOCC LNO	Input information IAW Synchronization Matrix (See Annex M to III C/A TACSOP)	Complete input IAW Annex M to III C/A TACSOP



REFERENCES



1. III CORPS ARTILLERY TACSOP
2. CFC AIR GROUND OPERATIONS SOP – AGO-SOP
3. CFC COUNTER FIRE PUBLICATION – CFC CF PUB
4. CFC ELECTRONIC WARFARE PUBLICATION – CFC EW PUB
5. CFC KILL BOX SOP – CFC KB PUB
6. DEEP OPERATIONS KOREA – DOP-K
7. CFC TARGETING SOP – CFC TGT PUB
8. CFC AC-130 SOP – CFC AC-130 PUB
9. ADOCS OPERATORS MANUAL



ALO



C.3.2

AIR SUPPORT



AIR SUPPORT

TABLE OF CONTENTS



- C.3.2 AIR SUPPORT
 - C.3.2.1 COMMAND AND CONTROL
 - C.3.2.2 TCP - ALO/TACP
 - C.3.0.2.1 ORGANIZATION
 - C.3.0.2.2 OPERATIONS
 - C.3.2.3 MCP - ALO/PLANS/ASOC/SWO
 - C.3.0.3.1 ORGANIZATION
 - C.3.0.3.2 OPERATIONS
 - C.3.2.4 RCP - TALO
 - C.3.0.4.1 ORGANIZATION
 - C.3.2.4.2 OPERATIONS



AIR



Command and Control

- The JFACC commands and controls the theater air operations through the Theater Air Control System (TACS)
- The TACS plans/coordinates/directs air operations throughout the area of operations
- The Air Operations Center (AOC) is the senior element of the TACS
- The Corps ALO reports directly to the AOC Director or Commander



TCP AIR



Personnel

DAY SHIFT

NIGHT SHIFT

ALO
ETAC
ROMAD

ALO
ETAC
ROMAD

Officers	2
NCOs	2
Enlisted	2
Total	6



TCP AIR



Responsibilities

The primary functions of the ALO are to:

- Advise the CG or designated representative on all USAF matters/CAS capabilities and receive guidance on tasking priorities
- Coordinate with the DFSCOORD and FSO

The primary functions of the ETAC and ROMAD are to:

- Receive immediate CAS requests from the ASOC
- Coordinate CAS missions with the FSE/Targeting NCO
- Receive approval for CAS missions from CGs designated representative

NOTE: The TCP will be modified for contingent JTF taskings to include ECC Fusion Cell and ASOC personnel as required



TCP AIR



ADP

ALO Requirements:

- The TCP ALO relies on the TACLAN and DVNT to coordinate with the ASOC/Corps ALO/ECC/Division ALOs
- A Global Command and Control System (GCCS) to enhance communication with the ECC/AOC for AI/XINT coordination/updates and any additional CAS requirements

ETAC/ROMAD Requirements:

- Predominantly rely on TACLAN to coordinate CAS requests/approvals with the ASOC
- Two DVNTs and one DCO (STU-III) provide additional/backup communication capability with the ASOC and also allow direct contact to Division/Brigade ALOs
- Also monitor the Air Force air request net (AFARN) through the GRC-206 system (setup within the TCP area) and the PRC-117 (portable FM/VHF/UHF/SATCOM radio)



MCP AIR



Personnel

DAY SHIFT

CORP ALO

ALO (ECC)

*ASOC Director

*Fighter Duty Off (2)

*Air Battle Manager

*Sr Fighter Duty Tech (2)

*Fighter Duty Tech (6)

*Radio Maint (3)

*Intel Officer

*Intel Airman

*Comm Officer

*Comm Specialist

*Satellite Comm (6)

*Elect/Comp Spec (3)

*Logistics Planner

*Supply NCO (2)

*Vehicle Control/Maint (6)

*Information Manager NCO

*Computer Operator (5)

*Power Production (4)

*Environmental Cntrl Spec

*Personnelist

*First Sergeant

**Staff Weather Officer

**Weather Manager

**Lead Forecaster

**IMETS Operator

**Forecaster

**LZ Observer/Aircrew
Briefer

*ASOC

**Weather



MCP AIR



Personnel

NIGHT SHIFT

- ALO (ECC)
- *Fighter Duty Off (2)
- *Air Battle Manager
- *Sr Fighter Duty Tech (2)
- *Fighter Duty Tech (6)
- *Radio Maint (3)
- *Intel Officer
- *Intel NCO
- *Comm Officer
- *Satellite Comm (6)
- *Elect/Comp Spec (3)
- *Supply NCO
- *Vehicle Control/Maint (2)
- *Computer Operator
- *System Controller (3)
- *Power Production (4)
- *Personnelist

- **Staff Weather Officer
- **Weather Manager
- **Lead Forecaster
- **IMETS Operator
- **Forecaster
- **LZ Observer/Aircrew Briefer

- *ASOC
- **Weather

Officers	16
NCO	49
Enlisted	38
Total	103



MCP AIR



Functions

The primary functions of the ALO are to:

- Represent AFFOR (typically the JFACC/CFACC)
- Serve as the ASOC Director
- Serve as senior air advisor to the CG
- Advise AOC of air effort needed to fill Army requirements
- Ensure air assets are used in the most effective manner commensurate with the current threat, battlefield situation and disposition of friendly air defense weapons

The primary functions of the ECC ALO (as part of the Fusion Cell) are to:

- Assist corps staff with the development of fire support plans and supporting air sorties
- Plan/coordinate/track/update AI and XINT missions for future and current ATO/ITO
- Plan/coordinate CAS requirements for future ATO/ITOs
- Inform TCP/Division ALOs of potential CAS targets in close proximity of the FSCL



MCP AIR



Functions - cont

The primary functions of the ASOC are to:

- Receive, coordinate and process requests for immediate CAS (requests are transmitted over the Air Force Air Request Net (AFARN) from battalion/brigade/division/corps TACPs)
- Fill approved CAS requests from distributed sorties or by authorized diversion of preplanned sorties
- Assist corps staff plan/execute localized J-SEAD
- Coordinate airspace requests with III Corps air defense through the corps A2C2
- Receive and disseminate the Air Tasking Order/Integrated Tasking Order (ATO/ITO)

The primary functions of the SWO are to:

- Serve as POC for environmental support
- Provide climatological/weather/illumination/data
- Provide 24/48/72 hour weather outlook bulletins and 24 hour Weather Effects Matrix (WEM) data to G2 staff
- Coordinate with G2/G3/G3 Air/Chemical/ECC/ASOC staffs as required
- Assist G2 prepare IPB by providing analyzed weather data and advice



MCP AIR



ADP

ALO Requirements:

- The ALO relies on the TACLAN and DVNT to coordinate with his deployed assets and the Air Operations Center (AOC)/theater command elements

ECC ALO Requirements:

- The air element in the ECC uses the TACLAN and DVNT to coordinate AI/XINT/CAS missions
- A Global Command and Control System (GCCS) to enhance communication with the AOC for AI/XINT coordination

SWO Requirements:

- The SWO relies on SIPR net, NIPR net and DSN connections to receive weather data
- Additionally they require two TACLAN connections and 2 DVNTs to relay weather forecasts/information throughout the corps



MCP AIR



ADP - cont

ASOC Requirements:

- The Army supplies connectivity to the TACLAN and ADOCS LAN to a router or hub that feeds four laptops on the TACLAN and one laptop on the ADOCS LAN. There are eight phones, either DNVTs or DSVTs, connected to the MSE phone network. We also use two DCO lines (STU-III/commercial).
- We use Air Force communication links accessed by satellite for TBMCS, NIPR, SIPR, phones and orderwire (intercom system). TBMCS consists of four local servers, six laptops and four workstations. We use one to five systems to connect to the NIPR net and one or two systems to connect to the SIPR net. The 3865 Phone Switch provides secure voice communications from eight DSVTs and two DCO lines. All voice and data communications go through FCC-100s to the SATCOM.



RCP AIR



Personnel

DAY SHIFT

NIGHT SHIFT

TALO
ROMAD

TALO

Officers	2
Enlisted	1
Total	3



RCP AIR

Responsibilities

The primary functions of the Theater Airlift Liaison Officer (TALO) are to:

- Assist and advise the commander on the asset availability and capabilities of fixed-wing airlift
- Facilitate, expedite, and monitor logistics requests nominated for delivery by fixed-wing airlift, especially immediate/emergency requests
- Act as secondary information source for the mission planning, validation, scheduling, and tracking of requested fixed-wing airlift through mission execution
- Operate the Advanced Airlift Notification and Coordination Network for immediate and emergency fixed-wing airlift requests

The primary functions of the Radio Operator, Maintainer, and Driver (ROMAD) are to:

- Ensure GRC-206 radio is fully functional
- Monitor GRC-206 radio for transmissions
- Assist the TALO as necessary



RCP AIR



ADP

- The TALO relies on a combination of STU-III secure voice and fax, TACLAN, NIPR net, DVNT and PRC-117 (portable FM/VHF/UHF/SATCOM radio) to coordinate fixed-wing airlift support



G3 AVN



C.3.3

ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL – AVIATION



AVIATION and ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND and CONTROL (A2C2)



. PART C.3.3 AVIATION/A2C2

- A2C2 ELEMENTS
- AREA OF RESPONSIBILITY
- ACMR NAMING CONVENTION
- A2C2 INFORMATION FLOW
- AIRSPACE CONTROL MEASURE PROCEDURES
- AIRSPACE CONTROL MEASURE REQUEST
- ASSIGNED AIRSPACE ALTITUDES
- AIRSPACE DIMENSIONS FOR PLANNING
- ATACMS PROCEDURES



A2C2 ELEMENTS



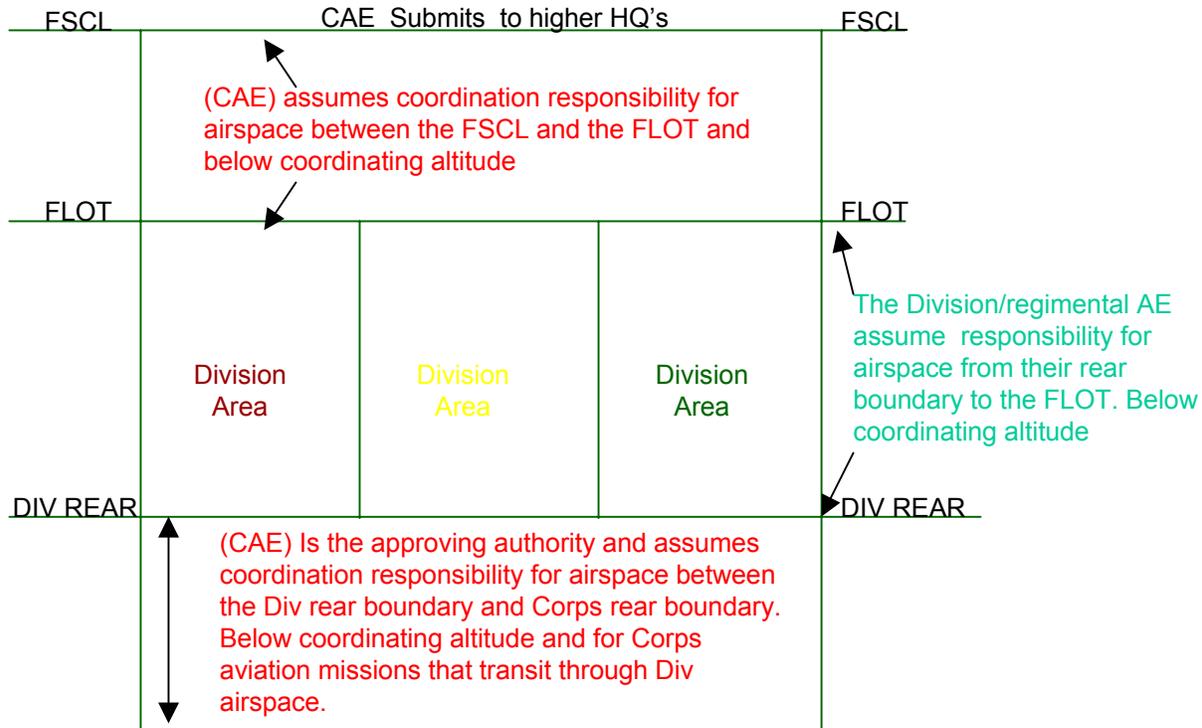
- The Corps Airspace Element (CAE) is intended to be the primary airspace coordinating agency within the corps. The Corps A2C2 Officer supervises the day-to-day activities of the CAE. In most cases, the Corps G3 Aviation Officer (para 120, line 18) is designated Corps A2C2 Officer. The CAE representatives are collocated in close proximity to the Effects Coordination Cell (ECC) in either the Main or the Forward CP. The TAC and Rear CPs may organize a CAE on a case-by-case basis.
- FM 100-103 provides doctrinal guidance for organization of A2C2 elements. III Corps MTOE 52401LFC11, effective 16 OCT 00 authorizes manning as outlined below:

CAE

	<u>Main/Forward CP</u>	<u>TAC CP</u>	<u>Rear CP</u>
Corps A2C2 Officer	PARNO 120/LIN 18		
A2C2 Cell w/ATS Augmentation	Theater ATS Augmentation		Theater ATS Augmentation
Aviation Officer	PARNO 120/LIN 18 double-hatted	PARNO 102/LIN 12	
Air Liaison Officer	USAF	USAF	USAF
Fire Support Officer/Element	X	X	X
Air Defense Officer/Element	31 ADA BDE	31 ADA BDE	X
G2 CM&D Liaison	PARNO 116/LIN 02 or 03	PARNO 101/LIN 03	



AREA OF RESPONSIBILITY



- This annex assumes III Corps is given Airspace Control Authority below the coordinating altitude/coordination level from the corps rear boundary forward to the fire support coordination line (FSCCL). III Corps further delegates responsibility for airspace coordination, deconfliction, and synchronization to subordinate A2C2 elements within their respective sectors/zones.
 - The Corps A2C2 Element (CAE) retains coordination responsibility for airspace between the FSCCL and the FLOT.
 - The division/regimental A2C2 elements has coordination responsibility for airspace from their rear boundary to the FLOT.
 - The CAE assumes coordination responsibility for the airspace between the division rear boundaries and the corps rear boundary. Standard Use Army Aviation Flight Routes (SAAFRs) and Air Information Centers (AICs) facilitate airspace control in this region.
 - The CAE conducts the coordination for the use of airspace outside of corps boundaries, beyond the FSCCL and cross MSC boundaries.



AIRSPACE CONTROL MEASURE NAMING CONVENTION/PROCEDURES

UNIT	Air Corridors/ SAAFRs	Engagement Areas	Restricted Operations Zones
101st Airborne Division (AASLT)	Stones/Minerals	Tropical Islands	000 - 099
	BLUE	BLUE	
1st Cavalry Division	Trees	Periodic Table Elements	100 - 199
	YELLOW	YELLOW	
3rd Armored Cavalry Regiment	Dogs	Asian Cities	200-299
	BROWN	BROWN	
4th Infantry Division	Fish	European Cities	300 - 399
	GREEN	GREEN	
504th MI Battalion (AE)	N/A	N/A	400 - 499
6th Cavalry Brigade	Birds	Weapons/Tools	500 - 599
	RED	RED	
III Corps Artillery	N/A	N/A	600 - 699
Other Unit #1	MLB Teams	Baseball Stadiums	700 - 799
	BLACK	BLACK	
Other Unit #2	NFL Teams	Football Stadiums	800 - 899
	BLACK	BLACK	
Other Unit #3	NBA Teams	Basketball Arenas	900 - 999
	BLACK	BLACK	

• Airspace Control Measure Coordination Procedures

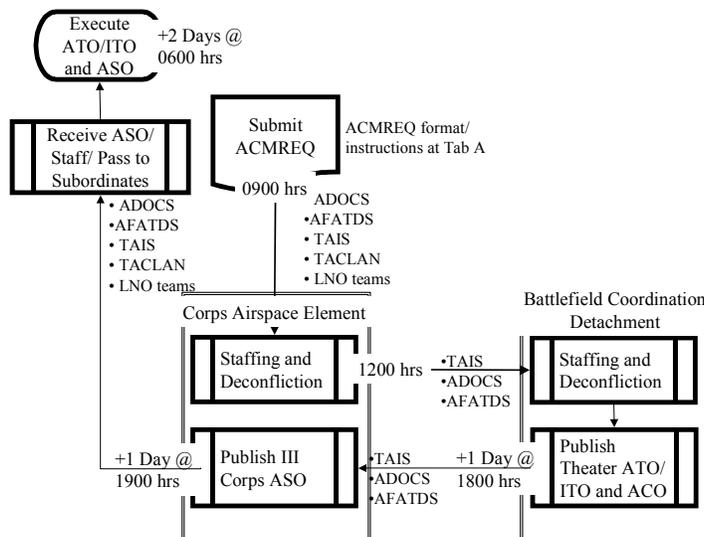
- ACMs are preceded by the ATO/ITO cycle in which they are planned/effective (i.e., B-Barracuda is a 4ID(M) corridor planned/effective during ATO/ITO B). “Publishing” an ACM in ADOCS allows all server terminals to access that ACM. The host terminal must “publish” the ACM (post to the A2C2 overlay), and then “send” using the COMS pull down.
- Coordination requirements will be conducted via digital means when possible. The Corps primary digital airspace coordination information passing system is currently the Automated Deep Operations Coordination System (ADOCS). All ADOCS non-compatible systems operators are required to submit coordination requirements to the CAE via tactical electronic mail (TACLAN) in the appropriate message (ACMR) format.



A2C2 INFORMATION FLOW



- Airspace Control Measure Request (ACMR) flow is outlined in Figure below. Units should note that a request submitted at 0900 hrs on X Day is not effective until the ATO/ITO (and associated ACO/III Corps ASO) 45 hours later (i.e., an ACMR submitted at 0900 hrs on 1 May (ATO/ITO Cycle A) is not effective until 0600 hrs on 3 May (ATO/ITO Cycle C). ACMR submission through intermediate headquarters to the BCD is often required and is theater-specific.
- The flow outlined in Figure below applies for both planned and unplanned ACMRs. The daily ASO is preceded by WARNOs, as able, given preliminary feedback on ACMRs from the BCD.
- Airspace Control Measure Requests.
 - Submit airspace control measures requests to Corps ATS LNOs NLT 24 hours prior to the planned ATO cycle (theater dependent).
 - ATS LNOs input the ACMRs into the TAIS or ADOCS and if needed deconflict the ACMR with the other members of the A2C2 Element and the requesting unit based on the Corps commander's priorities (As published in FRAGO).
 - Once deconflicted, the ATS LNOs will forward the Corps' requests to the higher headquarters' G3 Air or the BCD, as appropriate and disseminate to all MSC's.
 - The BCD's A2C2 Element then coordinates requests with the JFACC or ACA for approval.



ACMR and ACO/ASO Flow



AIRSPACE CONTROL MEASURE REQUEST

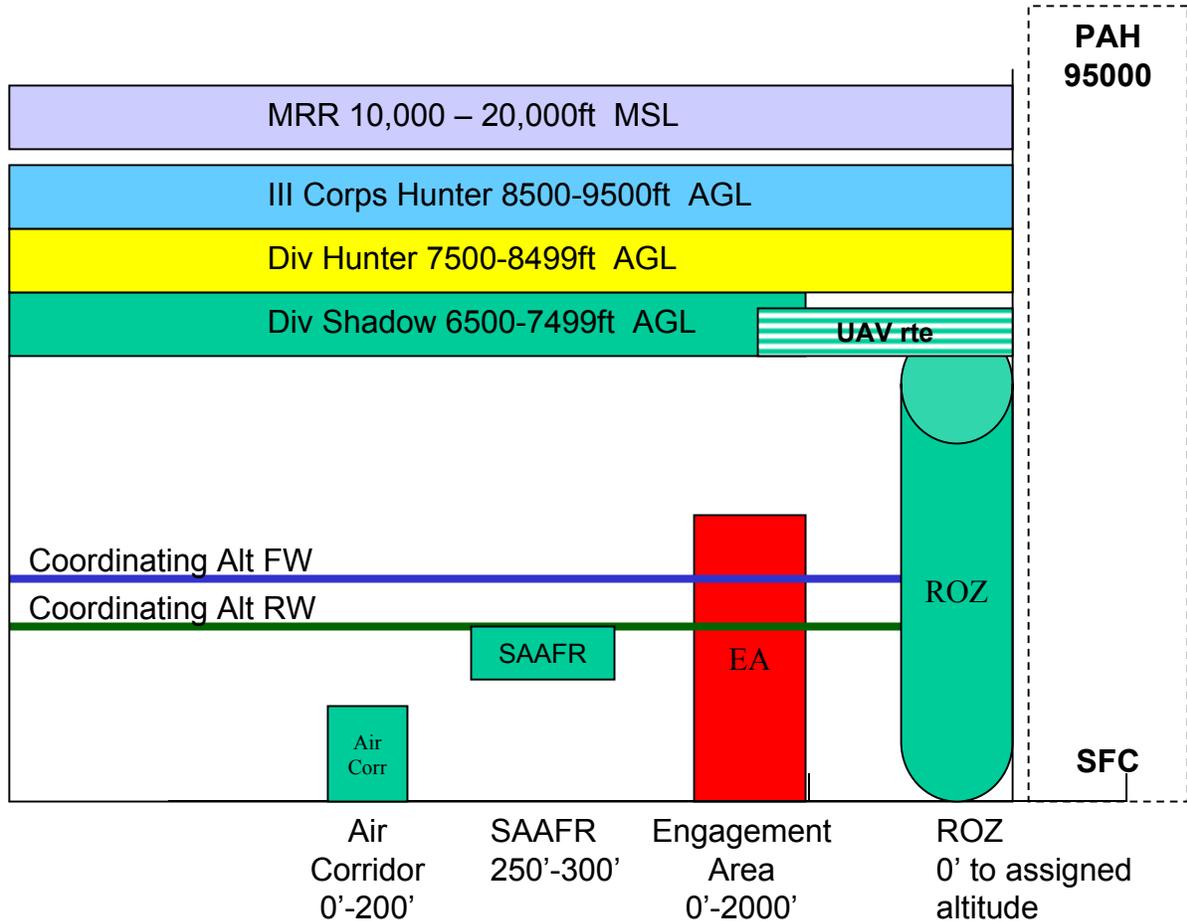


LINE 1 - DATE AND TIME 250900LAPR00 (DTG)
 LINE 2 - UNIT 4ID(M) (Unit Making Report)
 LINE 3 - REQUESTING UNIT 1-4 ATKHB (Agency Requesting Airspace)
 LINE 4 - TYPE ROZ (Type of Airspace)
 LINE 5 - AIRSPACE 401 (Name of Airspace)
 LINE 6 - PURPOSE Shaping Attack C2 (Purpose of Special Use)
 LINE 7 - TRANSIT establish voice communications with Dragon Tango prior to penetration on frequency in LINE 16/17 (Transit Instructions)
 LINE 8 - FROM 272200LAPR00 (DTG to be Established)
 LINE 9 - UNTIL 280200LAPR00 (DTG Disestablished)
 LINE 10- AREA circle (Description of the Area to be Defined (Boundary or Circle)
 LINE 11- COORDINATES AB11112222 (UTM or Six-Digit Grid Coordinate With MGRS Grid Zone Designator)
 LINE 12- WIDTH/RADIUS 3 km (Width or Radius)
 LINE 13- LOWER surface (Lower Altitude of Designated Area to Nearest 100 Feet or Ground Level)
 LINE 14- UPPER 1000' (Upper Altitude of Designated Area to Nearest 100 Feet)
 LINE 15- CONTACT Dragon Tango (Call Sign of Control Agency)
 LINE 16- PRIMARY FH400 (Primary Frequency or Frequency Designator)
 LINE 17- SECONDARY FH401 (Secondary Frequency or Frequency Designator)
 LINE 18- NARRATIVE none (Free Text for Additional Information Required for Clarification of Report)
 LINE 19- AUTHENTICATION CPT Patterson (Report Authentication)

- Submit daily at 0900 hrs. Daily submission on, for example, D-Day, is for requested ACMs to be effective in conjunction with the D+2 ATO/ITO (i.e., ACMs submitted at 0900 hrs during ATO/ITO A will not go into effect until ATO/ITO C).
- Submission is required for all ACMs in some theaters. At a minimum, submit ACMRs to the CAE if affected airspace crosses the FSCL, any corps-level boundary, or extends above the coordinating altitude/coordination level.
- Submit requests to the CAE via ADOCS, TACLAN, MSE/STU-III, or LNO teams.
- Blank request may be found in public folders.



ASSIGNED AIRSPACE ALTITUDES



• Airspace dimensions for planning

- UAV missions must have three ACM requests to be complete.
 - Launch and recovery site (center point grid with radius)
 - Transition corridor to get UAV to search area (2k width with altitude same as search area)
 - Search area (no larger than 10 min by 10 min), can have up to three for each ATO cycle
- Air corridor
 - Altitude is 0'-200' AGL
 - Will be 1k in width
- C2 ROZ/ TRACK
 - Up to 4k in width
 - Altitude 2001' – 4000' AGL



AIRSPACE DIMENSIONS FOR PLANNING



- Airspace Control Measure Request (ACMREQ) are used to request a defined block of airspace. These areas include:
 - Drop Zones (DZs)
 - Landing Zones (LZs)
 - Pick-up Zones (PZs)
 - Ground free-fire zones
 - Jettison areas
 - Staging areas
 - Restrictive fire plans
 - Rescue recovery zones
 - Aircraft airspace usage requirements
 - Jointly accepted airspace control measures are:
 - Restricted Operations Zone (ROZ)
 - High Density Airspace Control Zone (HIDACZ)
 - Standard-Use Army Aviation Flight Route (SAAFR)
 - Minimum Risk Route (MRR)
 - Coordinating altitude.
- TYPES OF AIRSPACE REQUEST:
 - High Density Airspace Control Zone (HIDACZ)
 - Airspace in which there is a concentrated employment of numerous and varied weapons and airspace users
 - HIDACZ has defined dimensions, which usually coincide with geographical features or navigational aids
 - The maneuver commander normally controls access to a HIDACZ
 - Maneuver commander can also direct a more restrictive weapons status within the HIDACZ
 - Minimum Risk Route (MRR)
 - A temporary corridor of defined dimensions recommended for use by high-speed, fixed-wing aircraft
 - MRR's dimensions vary, normally 2k width; the route may change frequently and may extend below the coordinating altitude
 - Altitude is 10,000'-20,000' MSL, but may be adjusted to meet mission requirements



AIRSPACE DIMENSIONS FOR PLANNING (CON'T)



- Standard-Use Army Aviation Flight Route (SAAFR)
 - Route in Corps and division rear areas for movement of Army aviation assets. SAAFRs do not require ACA approval
 - Division A2C2 Elements develop corresponding SAAFRs in their rear area ensuring they tie into the Corps SAAFRs
 - Altitude will be 250'-600' AGL
 - Width is 2k
 - Avoid using the same areas identified for MRRs
- Air Corridors
 - A restricted air route for Army aircraft
 - Are temporary in nature and used to synchronize and deconflict Army aircraft operations from other airspace users (e.g., FS, UAVs, CAS, etc)
 - If a coordinating altitude has been established, the ground force commander implements an air corridor
 - If a coordinating altitude has not been established, the ACA, at the request of the ground commander, establishes an air corridor.
 - Will only be established for the duration of the mission plus a buffer for planning to ensure the airspace is available to other airspace users when not in use.
- Base Defense Zone (BDZ)
 - An air defense zone established around an airbase and limited to the engagement envelope of the short-range weapon systems defending that base. Specific operational procedures are necessary for aviation users of this airspace.
 - Controlling units must specify entry and exit points and IFF procedures.
 - Provide center point grid, radius, and altitude of the zone
- Weapons Free Zone (WFZ)
 - Air defense zone established to protect key assets and facilities, other than air bases
 - Weapon systems may be fired at any target-not positively identified as friendly
 - Aircrews must avoid WFZs or coordinate with the controlling authority to enter or transit.
 - Provide center point grid, radius, and altitude of the zone.
 - Units request through Corps ATS LNOs using the USMTF ACMREQ template.



ATACMS PROCEDURES (HASTY)



- Clearing ATACMS

- ATACMS launch deconfliction is accomplished using a hasty and deliberate method via ADOCS and voice.
 - The hasty deconfliction method is triggered by an event, which alerts the FSE to a non-planned ATACMS launch.
 - FSE Provides a WARNO with the following information to the CAE that ATACMS launch procedures have been initiated:
 - launch/impact locations
 - maximum altitude affected
 - target engagement window (time before targetable data expires)

- CAE

- Notifies the ASOC/BCD of pending ATACMS engagement details using FSE's alert order over ADOCS, MCS, or secure voice communications
- Identify potential conflicts with ongoing US Army aviation operations and initiates procedures, as necessary, to clear aircraft from danger airspace
- Receive notification from the ASOC when all USAF aircraft are clear and forward status to the Corps FSE

- ASOC

- Determines whether USAF aircraft are clear of danger airspace (takes on the order of 5 minutes)
- If not clear, requests assistance from the Air Operations Center (AOC) to clear non-CAS aircraft from danger airspace (takes on the order of 15 minutes)
- If not clear, clear all CAS aircraft from danger airspace using secure voice communications through unit FACPs
- Determines when all USAF aircraft are clear of danger airspace and notifies the CAE



ATACMS PROCEDURES (DELIBERATE)



- Deliberate Deconfliction

- This is accomplished as with all other airspace user requirements in the course of establishing the Corps Airspace Order (ASO)
- Deliberate deconfliction likely results in block time place holders until the tactical situation further refines likely target engagement windows
- Final deconfliction is accomplished using the hasty procedures

- Cross-Boundary Deconfliction

- The unit in whose area the ATACMS target rests must perform procedures similar to those outlined above
- Adjacent units may deny the request for cross-boundary engagement with ATACMS if :
 - The adjacent unit is capable of engaging the nominated target with organic/supporting assets in a timely manner
 - The adjacent unit does not consider the target of high enough priority to warrant immediate engagement
 - The adjacent unit is unable to clear aircraft from danger airspace



ADE



C.4

AIR DEFENSE



PART C.4

AIR DEFENSE



- C.4.1 Unit Air and Missile Defense (AMD) Checklist
- C.4.2 Corps Air Defense Officer Responsibilities
- C.4.3 Air Defense Element (ADE) Responsibilities
- C.4.4 AMD Operations



TACTICAL COMMAND POST



ADE PERSONNEL

ADE

DAY SHIFT

AD OPS OFFICER (O4)
ASST OPS SGT (E5)
ADMIN ASST (E4)

NIGHT SHIFT

OPS SGT (E8)
OPS ASST (E5)
OPS ASST SPEC (E4)



MAIN COMMAND POST



ADE PERSONNEL

ADE

DAY SHIFT

CHIEF OF AD OPS (O5)
ASST OPS SGT (E7)
ASST OPS SGT (E5)
ADMIN ASST (E4)

NIGHT SHIFT

ASST AD OPS OFF (O3)
ASST OPS SGT (E7)
OPS ASST SPEC (E4)
OPS ASST SPEC (E3)



AIR DEFENSE



C.4.1 Unit AMD Checklist – Questions Every Unit Should Ask

- **How is my unit receiving early warning of an air or missile attack?**
- **Does my unit have TTP to respond when alerted of an air or missile attack (Dynamite/Lookout)?** Passive and Active Air Defense Measures
- **Is my unit a tactical ballistic missile (TBM) target (COSCOM, DMAIN, DREAR, MSC Assembly Area, Aviation Assembly Area)?**
 - If Yes, have we coordinated for placement within a Patriot Firing Battery TBM coverage area?
- **Does my unit have short-range air defense [(SHORAD) - Stinger, Avenger, Linebacker] protection?**
 - If Yes, do they understand my air defense priorities?

C.4.2 Corps Air Defense Officer

- **Corps Air Defense Officer (31ADA Bde CDR):** serves as the Corps Air and Missile Defense Coordinator (AMDCOORD)
 - Coordinates and integrates air and missile defense
 - Develops and recommends AMD priorities
 - Prepares AMD Estimate and Annex G



AIR DEFENSE



- Advises the Corps Commander on overall AMD status
- Sets the Corps' WCS (Weapons Control Status), ADW (Air Defense Warning), and Local ADW (LADW)
- AMD Early Warning Broadcast Network (TACSAT/FM)

C.4.3 Corps Air Defense Element

- **Corps Air Defense Element:** assigned to 31st ADA BDE with duty at III(US) Corps.
 - Executes many of the responsibilities of the Corps AD Officer (AMD Estimate, Annex G)
 - Deploys with the Corps TAC and Main CPs
 - Coordinates AMD between 31ADA BDE, internal and external Corps AD units (Higher HQ, EAC ADA HQ, USAF CRC, Divisional SHORAD BNs and ADADOs, 3ACR ADA Btry, and other AD units)
 - Tracks and updates all pertinent AD information:
 - + AMD Priorities
 - + Engagements
 - + Enemy Intel/Analysis
 - + Unit Location/Mission
 - + Airspace Control Measures/Shaping Attack Missions
 - Member of the Corps Plans Team (CPT)



AIR DEFENSE



C.4.4 AMD OPERATIONS (Active and Passive)

- **Air Defense Warnings (ADWs):** theater-level characterizations of the air threat.
 - *ADW Red:* hostile air attack imminent or in progress
 - *ADW Yellow:* hostile air attack probable
 - *ADW White:* hostile air attack not likely
- **Local Air Defense Warnings (LADWs):** used to alert the force of an impending local air threat.
 - *LADW Dynamite:* hostile air attack inbound or attacking now. Requires immediate response.
 - *LADW Lookout:* hostile air attack is in our area of interest, but not yet threatening - still time to react.
- **AMD Priorities:** developed for short-range air defense (SHORAD) and PATRIOT assets for each phase.
 - Utilizes the Corps Commander's guidance; METT-TC; IPB and the four factors of criticality, vulnerability, recuperability and threat (CVRT)
- **Weapons Control Status (WCS):**
 - *Weapons Free:* engage target not positively identified as friendly (only used within a HAFEZ or WFZ).
 - *Weapons Tight:* engage targets only positively identified as hostile.



AIR DEFENSE



- *Weapons Hold*: engage target(s) only in self defense or in response to a formal order.
- **Early Warning (EW)**: originates from multiple sources [Air Operations Center (AOC), Sector Operations Center (SOC), Control and Reporting Center (CRC), Airborne Warning and Control System (AWACS), Sentinel Ground Based Sensor (GBS), Patriot Radar or others]
 - 31ADA Brigade disseminates EW to each Corps MSC digitally across the Air and Missile Defense Workstation (AMDWS) and verbally via TACSAT and/or FM radio
- **Counter-Air Operations**:
 - *Defensive counterair (DCA)*: III Corps units and subordinate ADA units provide DCA support by defeating threat air and missile platforms through integrated early warning and all arms for air defense, while using passive measures (dispersion, concealment) to minimize impacts of attacks.
 - *Offensive Counter-air (OCA)*: Airfields, rotary wing assembly areas, and TBM support nodes/C2 are exceptional shaping targets with high payoff. ADA units nominate potential targets to the ECC and ACE through predictive IPB and current operational picture.
- **Hostile Criteria**: ROE is different for every theater. Ensure all ADA units have the current ROE and airspace control order (ACO).



ENG



C.5

MOBILITY, COUNTER-MOBILITY, AND SURVIVABILITY



ENGINEER

TABLE OF CONTENTS



- **C.5.1 HOW ENGINEERS FIGHT**
 - C.5.1.1 RESPONSIBILITIES
 - C.5.1.2 RECONNAISSANCE & INTELLIGENCE
 - C.5.1.3 RIVER CROSSING OPERATIONS
 - C.5.1.4 OBSTACLE AND DENIAL OPERATIONS
 - C.5.1.5 MAPPING, CHARTING, AND GEODESY PROCEDURES
 - C.5.1.6 FACILITIES / ENVIRONMENTAL OPERATIONS
- **C.5.2 – BATTLE COMMAND**
 - C.5.2.1 COMMAND POST FUNCTIONS / RESPONSIBILITIES / OPERATIONS
 - C.5.2.1.1 ASSAULT/TAC CP
 - C.5.2.1.2 MAIN CP
 - C.5.2.1.3 REAR CP
 - C.5.2.2 COMMAND AND CONTROL (“HOW ENGINEERS EXECUTE C2”)
 - C.5.2.2.1 ENGINEER INFORMATION FLOW
- **C.5.3 – REPORTS**
 - C.5.3.1 ENGINEER REPORTS MATRIX
 - C.5.3.2 ENGINEER SITUATION REPORT (ENSITREP)
 - C.5.3.3 ENGINEER SPOT REPORT (ENGSPOTREP)
 - C.5.3.4 OBSTACLE PLAN
 - C.5.3.5 MINEFIELD REPORTS (MINEWARN) AND (MINEREC)
 - C.5.3.6 RIVER CROSSING REPORT MATRIX
 - C.5.3.7 TOPOGRAPHIC REPORT (TOPOREP)



HOW ENGINEERS FIGHT *Responsibilities*



Corps Engineer is 420th ENG BDE CDR

C2 & Task organizes ENG Forces

Determines priority of ENG support and effort

Establishes Engineer Work Line (EWL)

Liaisons with ENG elements of higher and adjacent HQ

C2 Relationships

Corps EN units DS or OPCON

Attached to MSCs only if logistical constraints require this relationship.

EAC ENG units are assigned to the corps engineer brigade unless otherwise specified.

ENG PIR

- (1) Location of obstacles
- (2) Airfield recons/surveys
- (3) New roads or trails
- (4) Damage on main or alternate supply routes
- (5) Available engineer materials
- (6) River Surveys (Dams, Bridges, Water Flow)

ENG FFIR:

- (1) Location and status of obstacles (enemy and friendly)
- (2) Status of Main Supply Routes, fixed bridging, & road networks for movement & resupply
- (3) Status of airfields and potential airfield sites
- (4) Availability / location of engineer equipment, facilities, & materials (friendly and enemy).
- (5) Weather effects on operations.
- (6) Status of friendly engineer units.
- (7) Loss of Military Bridging Assets.



HOW ENGINEERS FIGHT *River Crossing Operations*



Requires:

- Cross-BOS analysis of conditions to be met,
- Clearly identify go/no-go criteria
- Conditions set by subordinate units must be nested with those set by higher headquarters & briefed at BUBS

C2 Relationships: C² for division river crossing operations are IAW FM 90-13. Normal Corps level river crossing C² may be as follows:

- Crossing Force Commander (CFC) is the DCG.
- Crossing Force Engineer (CFE) is Corps EN Bde Dep Cdr or GP Cdr.
- Crossing Area Commander (CAC) the same as CAE, SIB or BCT.
- Crossing Area Engineer (CAE) a engineer Bn under the En GP.
- Crossing Site Commander (CSC) an officer from the Bridge Company/ies.

Responsibilities:

- Normally an EN Group maintains the corps bridge park(s).
- MSCs submit requests for follow-on bridging to the TAC CP.
- Corps EN validates requests & authorizes release of bridge stocks.
- The Corps Engineer Brigade coordinates movement of bridge stocks forward to the requesting MSC.
- As combat conditions permit, the crossing force engineer replaces assault bridging by repairing or upgrading existing bridges, and/or emplacing other bridges assets to make the assault bridging assets available for future operations. Operational bridging is emplaced before recovering assault float bridging.



HOW ENGINEER FIGHTS

River Crossing Operations (cont...)



The checklist below is a tool to assist Engineers to track River Crossing Operations.

CENTERLINE

Div cleared routes				
Local Security				
CFZs activated				
ADA umbrella in place				
Smoke emplacement				
Assault crossing				
Maintain smoke during rafting & bridging				
Secure far shore				
Local Security				
Eliminate direct and observed indirect				
Sufficient bridging available				
Rafting				
Bridging				
Crossing area established				
HA				
CFA				
ERP				
TCP				
DECON/Recovery				
Access route status				
Near shore status				
Far shore status				
Egress route status				
Go - No Go Criteria				



HOW ENGINEERS FIGHT *Obstacle and Denial Operations*



Obstacle Planning

- Corps Engineer provides obstacle guidance & restrictions
- Engineer, Fire Support Officer, and G3 coordinate to tie in obstacles with fire support, observation and direct fire systems.
- The Corps obstacle plan delineates areas of responsibility & identifies Corps directed targets, reserve targets, denial targets, and specifies obstacle restrictions.
- MSCs submit obstacle plans to the Engineer at the Corps TAC. Obstacle zone intent and corner point locations for obstacle zones are required.
- The corps engineer will review MSC obstacle and the Corps G3 will modify proposed MSC obstacle plans based on current Corps objectives.

Obstacle Resourcing

- Annex F (Engineer) Corps OPORD provides initial MSC class IV allocation by obstacle package type and quantity.
- MSCs use Class IV and V barrier material packages to identify requirements to Corps.
- MSCs identify forward supply points for obstacle and barrier material.

Obstacle Restrictions:

- No Bridges of \geq Military Load Class 60 may be destroyed without permission of the III Corps Commander or the III Corps G3.
- Requests for destruction of bridges MLC 60 or greater will include a bridge analysis and justification.
- If the Corps Commander, a general officer in the Corps Command Group or the Corps G3 cannot be contacted and a MLC 60 bridge is in imminent danger of capture, the demolition guard commander may execute, but only when under direct fire.



Obstacle Packages



13th COSCOM pre-configures packages and pushes forward to MSC's ensuring that user gets a complete package. MSC's will provide location and identify receiving units. Request for material not addresses in standard packages follows normal supply requisition procedures.

PACKAGES:

A - PACKAGE Road Crater, 40(L)x25(W)x8(D) ft. "V" shaped)(RD

<u>NSN</u>	<u>DODIC</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>QTY</u>	<u>WT</u> (lbs)	<u>CUBE</u> (ft)	<u>PALLETS</u>
1375-00-088-6691	M421	40lb SHAPED CHG	6ea	390	12	NEG
1375-00-028-5146	M039	40lb CATERING CHG	10ea	520	14	NEG
1375-00-935-6139	M032	11b TNT (DEMOLITION)	48ea	53.0	0.5	NEG
1375-00-180-9356	M456	DETONATING CORD	1000ft	30.0	1.0	NEG
1375-00-028-5151	M670	FUSE, TIME	100ft	1.0	0.1	NEG
1375-00-756-1865	M130	ELETRIC CAP ¹	10ea	Neg	Neg	NEG
1375-00-756-1864	M131	NON-ELETRIC CAP ¹⁴	10ea	Neg	Neg	NEG
1375-00-691-1671	M766	FUSE IGNITOR ¹⁴	10ea	Neg	Neg	NEG
1375-00-028-5118	K180	MINE, AT M15 ²	6ea	294	5.4	NEG
1375-00-589-7309	K092	MINE, AP, M16 ^{2/3}	4ea	46	1.8	NEG
Total (lbs.)				1334	34.8	1
Total (Stons)				0.67		

Note1: Conventional (1) items will be deleted in the MDI package and supplemented with the following items:

<u>NSN</u>	<u>DODIC</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>QTY</u>	<u>WT</u> (lbs)	<u>CUBE</u> (ft)	<u>PALLETS</u>
1375-01-415-1232	ML47	NON-ELECTRIC CAP M11 ⁴	12ea	NEG	NEG	NEG
1375-01-415-1231	MN03	NON-ELECTRIC CAP M13 ⁴	8ea	NEG	NEG	NEG
1375-01-415-1233	MN06	NON-ELECTRIC CAP M14 ⁴	5ea	NEG	NEG	NEG
1375-01-415-1235	MN08	M81 IGNITOR ⁴	10ea	NEG	NEG	NEG
1375-01-415-1229	ML45	M9 HOLDER	10ea	NEG	NEG	NEG
Total (lbs)					NEG	NEG
Total (Stons)					NEG	NEG

Note2 MOPMS module will be the authorize equivalent package in the case that reference items are not available.

Note3: To be use only in the Korea scenario only.

Note4: Initiation systems must be moved in separate vehicle.



Obstacle Packages



B - PACKAGE Bridge Demolition (2 Lane, Class 60)

<u>NSN</u>	<u>DODIC</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>QTY</u>	<u>WT</u> <u>(lbs)</u>	<u>CUBE</u> <u>(ft)</u>	<u>PALLETS</u>
1375-00724-7040	M023	DEMOLITIONS, C4	6bx	240.0	4.8	NEG
1375-00-180-9356	M456	DETONATING CORD	3000ft	74.0	2.6	NEG
1375-00-028-5151	M670	FUSE, TIME	100ft	1.0	0.1	NEG
1375-00-756-1865	M130	ELETRIC CAP ¹⁴	10ea	Neg	Neg	NEG
1375-00-756-1864	M131	NON-ELETRIC CAP ¹⁴	20ea	Neg	Neg	NEG
1375-00-691-1671	M766	FUSE IGNITOR ⁴	10ea	Neg	Neg	NEG
1375-00-028-5118	K180	MINE, AT M15 ²	6bx	294	5.4	NEG
1375-00-589-7309	K092	MINE, AP, M16 ²³⁴	1bx	46	14.1	NEG
5975-00-156-3253		STRAP, TIE DN (ZIP TIE)	100ea	Neg	Neg	NEG
Total (lbs.)				<u>655</u>	<u>27</u>	<u>1</u>
Total (Stons)				<u>0.33</u>		

Note¹: Conventional (1) items will be deleted in the MDI package and supplemented with the following items:

<u>NSN</u>	<u>DODIC</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>QTY</u>	<u>WT</u> <u>(lbs)</u>	<u>CUBE</u> <u>(ft)</u>	<u>PALLETS</u>
1375-01-415-1231	MN03	NON-ELECTRIC CAP M13 ⁴	8ea	NEG	NEG	NEG
1375-01-415-1233	MN06	NON-ELECTRIC CAP M14 ⁴	5ea	NEG	NEG	NEG
1375-01-415-1232	ML47	NON-ELECTRIC CAP M11 ⁴	30ea	NEG	NEG	NEG
1375-01-415-1235	MN08	M81 IGNITOR ⁴	10ea	NEG	NEG	NEG
1375-01-415-1229	ML45	M9 HOLDER	10ea	NEG	NEG	NEG
Total (lbs.)				NEG	NEG	NEG
Total (Stons)						

Note²: May be substituted with MOPMS pack.

Note³: To be use only in the Korea scenario.

Note⁴: May substitute with 90ea (1bx) M14 AP mines (NSN 1345-00-028-5108 DODIC K092).

Note⁴: Initiation systems must be moved in separate vehicle.

C - PACKAGE MNDF-MINEFIELD, ROW (DISRUPT/FIX)

This package contains all requirements for one doctrinal disrupt minefield (250mx100m) or one doctrinal fix minefield (250mx120m). Increasing minefield width can be accomplished by ordering multiple packages. This logistical package is designed to support current mine laying doctrine.



Obstacle Packages



C - PACKAGE MNDF-MINEFIELD, ROW (DISRUPT/FIX)

This package contains all requirements for one doctrinal disrupt minefield (250mx100m) or one doctrinal fix minefield (250mx120m). Increasing minefield width can be accomplished by ordering multiple packages. This logistical package is designed to support current mine laying doctrine.

<u>NSN</u>	<u>DODIC</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>AMT</u>	<u>WT</u> (lbs)	<u>CUBE</u> (ft)	<u>PALLETS</u>
1354-00-028-5118	K180	Mine, AT, M15 ¹	60ea	2400.0	55.6	2
1345-00-729-4263	K181	Mine, AT, M21 ¹	96ea	2184.0	100.8	3
1370-00-752-8060	L495	Flares, Trip	1bx	50	3.4	NEG
5660-00-262-9914		Picket, Long U	222ea	1444.0	15.0	2
5660-00-921-5516		Concertina, Wire	120ea	1566.0	18.0	3
9905-01-066-9547		Gauntlets, Wire Hndl	10pr	NEG	NEG	NEG
6260-01-178-5559		Chem Lights, red	10BX	NEG	NEG	NEG
5975-00-156-3253		Mines Marking Signs	100ea	20	2	NEG
5975-00-156-3253		Strap, Tie DN (ziptie)	200ea	NEG	NEG	NEG
Total (lbs)				<u>7664</u>	<u>194.8</u>	<u>10</u>
Total (Stons)				<u>2.91</u>		

D - PACKAGE MNFB-MINEFIELD, ROW (TURN/BLOCK)

<u>NSN</u>	<u>DODIC</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>QTY</u>	<u>WT</u> (lbs)	<u>CUBE</u> (In)	<u>PALLETS</u>
1354-00-028-5118	K180	Mine, AT, M15	180ea	8272	151.2	6
1345-00-729-4263	K181	Mine, AT, M21	384ea	8717	361	8
1345-00-589-7303	K092	Mine, AP, M16 ³⁴	84ea	945	14.1	1
	L495	Flares, Trip	32ea	25.0	1.7	
9905-01-066-9547		Gauntletes, Wire Hndlr	10pr	NEG	NEG	NEG
5660-00-262-9914		Picket, Long U	222ea	1444.0	15	2
5660-00-921-5516		Concertina, Wire	120ea	1566.0	18	3
9905-01-066-9547		Mines Marking Signs	100ea	NEG	NEG	NEG
6260-01-178-5559		Chem Lights, red	10BX	NEG	NEG	
5975-00-156-3253		Strap, Tie DN (ziptie)	200ea	NEG	NEG	NEG
Total (lbs.)				<u>20969</u>	<u>561</u>	<u>18</u>
Total (Stons)				<u>9.59</u>		

Note³: Korean Theater use only.

Note⁴: May be substituted with 90ea (1bx) M14 AP mines (NSN 1345-00-028-5108 DODIC K092).



Obstacle Packages



E - PACKAGE MOPMS, RELOAD

Employed to close lanes and gaps in minefield, at chokepoints, to reinforce obstacles, to emplace point minefields, and for protective mining. Package can be used to emplace one disrupt minefield (280mx 70m), one fix minefield (280m x 105m), or six point minefields.

<u>NSN</u>	<u>DODIC</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>QTY</u>	<u>WT</u> (lbs)	<u>CUBE</u> (In)	<u>PALLETS</u>
1345-01-160-8909	K022	Dispenser & Mine Grd	6ea	1050	34.2	1
5660-00-262-9914		Picket, Long U	111ea	722.0	7.5	1
5660-00-921-5516		Concertina, Wire	80r	276	3	2
9905-01-066-9547		Mines Marking Signs	100ea	20	2	NEG
5975-00-156-3253		Strap, Tie DN (ziptie)	200ea	NEG	NEG	NEG
Total (lbs.)				<u>2068</u>	<u>46.7</u>	<u>4</u>
Total (Stons)				<u>1.034</u>		

Employed to protect/secure facilities and positions, reinforce obstacles, or impede enemy troop movement. Can use to construct 300m of concertina wire fence, six 11 row wire roadblocks, or 1200m of fratricide fence.

<u>NSN</u>	<u>DODIC</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>QTY</u>	<u>WT</u> (lbs)	<u>CUBE</u> (In)	<u>PALLETS</u>
1370-00-752-8060	L495	Flares, Trip	2bx	50	3.4	NEG
9905-01-066-9547		Gauntlets, Wire Hndl	10pr	NEG	NEG	NEG
5660-00-262-9914		Picket, Long U	222ea	1440	15	2
5660-00-921-5516		Concertina, Wire	80rl	552	6	2
5660-00-882-9141		Wire Barbed, 2rl	4rl	184	2	NEG
9905-01-066-9547		Mines Marking Signs	100ea	20	2	NEG
5975-00-156-3253		Strap, Tie DN (ziptie)	200ea	NEG	NEG	NEG
5660-00-270-1589		Picket, Short, (U)	111ea	59	0.8	1
Total (lbs.)				<u>2205</u>	<u>29.2</u>	<u>5</u>
Total (Stons)				<u>1.12</u>		

G - PACKAGE:TWO MAN FIGHTING POSITIONS

For construction materials for 20 two-man fighting positions

<u>NSN</u>	<u>DODIC</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>QTY</u>	<u>WT</u> (lbs)	<u>CUBE</u> (In)	<u>PALLETS</u>
8105-00-270-1589		Sandbags	6000ea	2400	60	1
5600-00-262-9914		Picket, Long (U)	444ea	2888	30	4
5450-01-430-2081		Overhead Cover	20ea	100	100	5
Sub Total				<u>5388</u>	<u>190</u>	<u>13</u>
Total (Stons)				<u>3.10</u>		



Obstacle Packages



H - PACKAGE MR-Breach Kit, MICLIC Reload

<u>NSN</u>	<u>DODIC</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>QTY</u>	<u>WT</u> (lbs)	<u>CUBE</u> (In)	<u>PALL</u> ETS
1375-01-113-4189	M914	INERT Line Charge	2ea	5700	81.4	2
1340-01-118-2838	J143	Rocket MICLIC 5inch	4ea	800	6.3	1
9905-01-066-9547		Mines Marking Signs	70ea	10	2	
9905-00-527-4997		Traffic Cones ¹	60ea	120	80	
5600-00-262-9914		Pickets, Long (U)	111ea	722	7.5	
8345-00-174-6865		VS-17 Panels	10ea	NEG	NEG	
6260-01-074-4229		Chem LTS (Green)	40ea	NEG	NEG	
6260-01-178-5559		Chem LTS (Red)	40ea	NEG	NEG	
6260-01-196-0136		Chem LTS (Yellow)	40ea	NEG	NEG	
6260-01-218-5146		Chem LTS (White)	40ea	NEG	NEG	
5975-00-156-3253		Strap, Tie DN (Zip Tie)	400ea	NEG	NEG	
Sub Total				<u>7352</u>	<u>177.2</u>	<u>3</u>
Total (Stons)				<u>3.676</u>		

Notes:

All (¹) items may be substituted with the following marking materials:

9905-01-068-8638	HEMMS POLES	70EA	1BX	25.0	2.5
9390-01-066-9542	MARKING TAPE	2X3600FT	1BX	10.0	2.0

I - PACKAGE (Volcano Refill PKG)

<u>NSN</u>	<u>DODIC</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>QTY</u>	<u>WT</u> (lbs)	<u>CUBE</u> (In)	<u>PALLETS</u>
1345-01-233-2029	T087	CNNSTR Mine XM87	160ea	7400	150.5	2
5600-00-262-9914		Pickets, Long (U)	555ea	760	37.5	5
5660-00-921-5516		Concertina, Wire	160r	1104	12	4
9905-01-066-9547		Mines Marking Signs	200ea	20	4	
5975-00-156-3253		Strap, Tie DN (Zip Tie)	400ea	Neg	Neg	
Sub Total				<u>9274</u>	<u>202</u>	<u>11</u>
Total (Stons)				<u>4.63</u>		

Notes:

Volcano can be emplaced by 5 ton truck, M548, or Blackhawk helicopter. The system has three field selectable, self-destruct times (4 hours, 48 hours, 15 days).

Except for the mounting hardware, there is total commonality between air and ground Volcano systems.



HOW ENGINEERS FIGHT *Obstacle and Denial Operations(cont...)*



Minefield Lane Width Requirements

Foot path	1m
One way vehicle lane	4.5m
Two way vehicle lane	10m

Minefield Lane Marking Requirements

- Units mark Initial tactical lanes or bypasses per breaching unit SOP.
- Prior to III Corps follow-on forces passing through the lane, the lane is expanded and marked:

Marker	Day	Night
Far recognition Marker	Manned Traffic Control Point (TCP) with two VS-17 panels* orange side facing out.	TCP with four green (chemical) lights across top of panel.
Intermediate recognition	Same as above without TCP.	Same as above without TCP.
Funnel guide	2 meter tall pole with orange color facing friendly side.	Yellow (chemical) marking lights on friendly side.
Entrance / exit markers	2 meter tall pole with orange on friendly side.	Red (chemical) marking lights on friendly side.
Left-side marker	2 meter pole every 5 meters with orange on friendly side.	Red (chemical) marking lights on friendly side.
Right marker	2 meter pole every 5 meters with orange on friendly side.	White (chemical) marking lights on friendly side.

*In lieu of VS 17 panels, use plywood painted orange.
Distances may be adjusted based on METT-T.

- The MSC Engineer/will furnish a prepared copy of DA Form 1355/1355-1R (Minefield Report) to the Corps Engineer TAC CP.
- The Corps Engineer at the MAIN CP consolidates obstacle information & distributes information to the Corps, adjacent, and higher headquarters via MCS-L



HOW ENGINEERS FIGHT

Mapping, Charting and Geodesy Operations



Command and Control:

- The 555th En Co (TOPO) is DS to corps & assigned to the corps engineer brigade.
- The corps Engineer directs and tasks topographic reproduction, terrain analysis, and geodetic survey operations.
- Divisions are assigned separate terrain detachments
- One topographical survey platoon to support airfield and artillery requirements.

Responsibilities:

Assistant Corps Engineer:

- Sole mission tasking authority for the 555th En Co.
- Monitors topographic production throughout the Corps to insure production assets and data are being effectively utilized.
- Prioritizes and deconflicts production requirements

Commander, 555th En Co (TOPO):

- Corps Topographic Officer.
- Provides the full range of topographic support to III Corps.
- Monitors the status of all taskings & reports conflicts to the Corps Topographic Engineer.
- Provides terrain analysis augmentation to the Assistant Corps Engineer.

Terrain Analysis Products:	
Cross-country movement (CCM).	Key terrain (KT).
Fields of fire/observation (FF/FO).	Hydrology (H).
Lines of communication (LOC).	Zones of entry (ZOE).
Cover and concealment (CC).	Image maps
Obstacles (natural/man-made or tactical) (O).	
River Studies	



HOW ENGINEERS FIGHT

Facilities / Environmental Operations



Command and Control: Corps Engineer Liaisons with the ENCOM, TSC, and The Corps of Engineers. Environmental Reports from MSCs will be shared across commands.

Responsibilities:
Engineers at all levels must balance tactical necessity with environmental protection measures.

Corps Tactical Environmental Responsibilities	
Air emissions	Noise
Drinking water	Pesticides
Wastewater	Historic and cultural resources
HAZMAT	Endangered species
Solid waste	Spill prevention
Medical waste	Response planning.
POL	

Host Nation Real Estate The III Corps Engineer Area Damage Control (ADC) Officer plans and executes Host Nation Real Estate submission requirements

Facilities Requirements for operations of short duration (90 days or less) shall normally be met by using existing facilities. Available Operation and Maintenance (O&M) funds shall be used to the extent possible. The corps will normally not be involved in Military Construction (MILCON).



BATTLE COMMAND ASSAULT/TACTICAL CP



Mission: Provides critical C² functions in support of the corps engineer during the current fight. ≤ 24 Hours.

- Focused on corps close engineer operations. Shaping and rear operations monitored only for their effect on close operations.
- May be located as far forward as the main CP of a division conducting the corps's main attack or with a counterattacking force during the defense.

Functions:

- Synchronizes EN support of corps close operations.
- EN portions of corps WARNORDs and FRAGOs
- Maintains current EN situation and EBA information
- Assesses the current EN support to the tactical situation.
- Assisting in the acquisition of terrain imagery products .
- Monitors status of EN logistics
- Provides close operation EN situation information.
- Monitors corps shaping and rear operations
- Tracks and consolidate threat and friendly obstacle information and provides it to the corps main CP EN cell.
- Puts obstacles into MCS-L database.



BATTLE COMMAND MAIN CP



Mission Provides EN support to the current OPS, Plans, corps Shaping Operations Coordination Cell, and intelligence cells of the main CP under the direction of the ACE. Maintains EN situational awareness of the current fight and plans for future EN operations. 24 to 48 hours. EN support to future corps operations, maintaining close coordination between all corps CP EN sections.

Current Operations Functions

- Corps level river-Xing and large-scale breaching operations
- Broadcasts site conditions, emplaced bridging, and cleared-lane information to the corps rear EN CP and the CORPS EN BDE CP.
- Writes EN FRAGOs in coordination with the CORPS EN TAC CP.
- Puts obstacles into MCS-L database.
- Disseminates information on bridging and engineer equipment and supplies, mines and demolitions, and map supplies.

Plans Functions

- Plans engineer future corps shaping, close, and rear operations
- Prepares EN estimates and EBAs and OPLANS & CONPLANS
- Topographic and terrain imagery products
- Plans Corps control measures
- Provide future corps operations information to EN located at the TAC, and rear CPs along with the brigade CP plans cell

CECC Functions

- Nominates high-payoff countermobility targets
- Recommends and synchronize corps-directed SCATMINE.
- Determine mobility and survivability requirements for corps field artillery brigade, ADA and aviation brigade operations and movements



BATTLE COMMAND REAR COMMAND POST



Mission Synchronizes sustainment and Area Damage Control engineering effort for the corps with the engineer brigade and across the BOS. Provides engineer support to security operations and terrain management for sustainment of the corps.

- The engineer corps rear supports the rear operations cell and a CSS cell. The rear EN CP is close the COSCOM CP for security, life support, & coordination, but both CPs are separate & distinct.

Functions

Corps Rear Operations Center

Monitors and synchronizes engineer effort across BOS. Provides EN info to the Corps Staff.

Rear CP CSS cell.

- Plans and synchronizes execution of general engineering missions throughout the corps rear area.
- Tracks and broadcasts the engineer conditions of corps MSRs
- Coordinates with MCC and MPs to facilitate battlefield circulation.
- Engineers maintain status of large-scale construction operations.
- Coordinate with the corps RTOC concerning base cluster defense requirements.



G1/G4



C.6

SERVICE SUPPORT



SERVICE SUPPORT TABLE OF CONTENTS

APPENDICES

- C.6.1 LOGISTICS
- C.6.2 INSPECTOR GENERAL
- C.6.3 TRANSPORTATION
- C.6.4 PERSONNEL
- C.6.5 LEGAL
- C.6.6 RELIGIOUS SUPPORT
- C.6.7 III CORPS SURGEON



C.6.1 LOGISTICS

REQUESTING CLASSES OF SUPPLY

- CLASS I (FOOD)
 - MSC WILL REQUEST CLASS I FROM CORPS MATERIAL MANAGEMENT CENTER.
 - MSC WILL REQUEST CLASS I USING DA 2058-R IN WARTIME OR DA 3294 AND DA 3161 DURING PEACE TIME.
 - THE RATION CYCLE WILL BE 2-3-2 AND MEAL CYCLE IS T-MRE-T.
- CLASS II (SUPPLY ITEMS)
 - UNITS WILL REQUEST ITEM THROUGH NORMAL CHANNELS.
- CLASS III
 - UNITS WILL FORECAST REQUIREMENTS TO 13TH COSCOM 72 HOURS IN ADVANCE USING LOSTAT REPORT.
 - 13TH COSCOM WILL ESTABLISH LOGISTICAL COORDINATION POINT FOR 3000 GALLONS OR MORE .
 - REFUEL ON THE MOVES (ROM) ARE MSC RESPONSIBILITY.
 - 13TH COSCOM, IF AVAILABLE, WILL SUPPORT MSC WITH ROM IF IT IS BEYOND MSC CAPABILITIES.



LOGISTICS

REQUESTING CLASSES OF SUPPLY

- CLASS IV (BARRIER MATERIAL)

- INITIAL ALLOCATIONS ARE DISTRIBUTED UON EXECUTION OF OPORD.
- REQUESTS FOR ADDITIONAL PACKAGES GO TO G-4 AND ARE APPROVED BY G-3
- PACKAGES ARE CONFIGURED AS:
 - PACKAGE A - ROAD CRATER
 - PACKAGE B - BRIDGE DEMO
 - PACKAGE C - MNDF MINEFIELD
 - PACKAGE D - MNDF MINEFIELD
 - PACKAGE E - MOPMS, RELOAD
 - PACKAGE F - UNIVERSAL WIRE
 - PACKAGE G - 2 MAN FIGHTING
 - PACKAGE H - MICLIC RELOAD
 - PACKAGE I - VOLCANO REFILL



LOGISTICS

REQUESTING CLASSES OF SUPPLY

- CLASS V (AMMUNITION)
 - REQUISITION WILL BE BASED ON THE CORPS CSR
 - CORPS WILL TRANSPORT CLASS V TO THE CSG ASPs/ATP AND TO DIVISIONAL ATPs
 - NON-DIVISIONAL UNITS MUST COORDINATE WITH COSCOM FOR CLASS V SUPPORT ON AN AREA BASIS.
 - STANDARD COMBAT CONFIGURED LOADS ARE:
 - ALPHA 155MM ICM
 - BRAVO 155MM HE MIX
 - CHARLIE 155MM FASCAM
 - DELTA 155MM FASCAM LONG
 - ECHO 155MM MULTIPURPOSE
 - FOXTROT 120MM MAIN GUN
 - GOLF 25MM AND TOW
 - HOTELINF. ANTI TANK MISSILE
 - INDIA INF. SMALL ARMS
 - JULIETTE 4.2IN MORTAR
 - KILO CONV. MINES
 - LIMA MINES
 - MIKE DEMOLITIONS
 - NOVEMBER AH-64
 - OSCAR AH-1
 - PAPA 2.75" ROCKET



LOGISTICS

REQUESTING CLASSES OF SUPPLY

- CLASS V (CONT.)

- QUEBE MLRS
- ROMA ATACMS
- SIERRA SIGNAL
- TANGO ADA STINGER
- UNIFORM SPT SMALL ARMS
- VICTOR VOLCANO MINES
- XRAY BREACHING

- CLASS VI

- IAW CORPS OPLANs AND OPORDs

- CLASS VII (MAJOR END ITEM)

- COMMAND CONTROLLED ITEMS ARE MANAGED BY G-4 IN COORDINATION WITH G-3.
- BATTLE LOSS REPORT CONSTITUTES A VALID REQUEST FOR DESTROYED CL VII CONTROLLED ITEMS.
- 13TH COSCOM WILL AUTOMATICALLY REQUEST TROOP-INSTALLED ITEMS.
- NON COMMAND CONTROLLED ITEMS ARE REQUESTED THROUGH CMMC



LOGISTICS

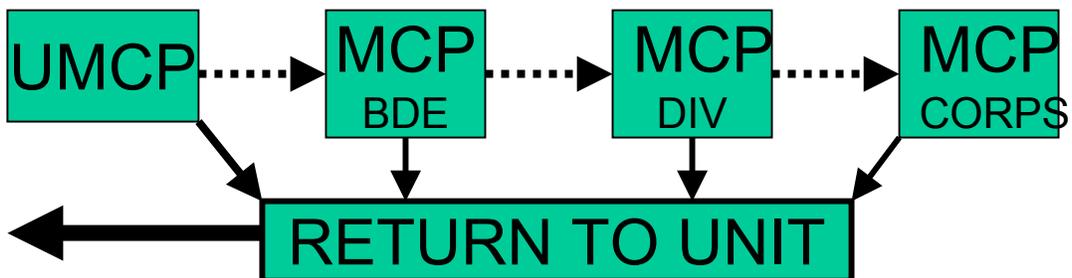
REQUESTING CLASSES OF SUPPLY

- CLASS VIII (MEDICAL)
 - REQUESTED THROUGH SUPPORTING MEDICAL SERVICE UNIT.
- CLASS IX (REPAIR PARTS)
 - UNIT REQUESTS PARTS FROM DSU.
- CLASS X (CIVIL / MILITARY SUPPLY)
 - IAW CORPS OPLAN.
- EMERGENCY RESUPPLY
 - MSCs WILL SUBMIT REQUEST THROUGH G-3.



LOGISTICS SERVICE

- MAINTENANCE
 - EQUIPMENT WILL BE REPAIRED AS FAR FORWARD AS POSSIBLE.
 - PRIORITY FOR MAINTENANCE SUPPORT FROM 13TH COSCOM IS ESTABLISHED BY CORPS G-3.
 - 13TH COSCOM WILL PROVIDE MSTs TO MSCs ON AN AS-REQUIRED BASIS.
- EQUIPMENT EVACUATION
 - BMO EVACUATES EQUIPMENT PRIMARILY TO UNIT MAINT. COLLECTION POINT.





LOGISTICS SERVICE

- MAINTENANCE (CONT.)
 - UNIT LEVEL CONTROLLED SUBSTITUTION APPROVED BY BDE CDR OR HIS DESIGNATED REPRESENTATIVE.
 - DS LEVEL CONTROLLED SUBSTITUTION APPROVED BY MSC CSS COMMANDER.
 - CANNIBALIZATION WILL ONLY BE PERFORMED AT DS LEVEL WHEN APPROVED BY DIV DISCOM OR HIGHEST MSC CSS COMMAND AUTHORITY.
- MORTUARY AFFAIRS
 - UNIT WILL RECOVER REMAINS AND EVACUATE TO COLLECTION POINT WITHIN 24 HOURS.
 - DIVISIONS WILL EVACUATE REMAINS AND PERSONAL EFFECTS TO 13TH COSCOM COLLECTION POINT OR TEMPORARY CEMETERY.
- EXPLOSIVE ORDNANCE DISPOSAL
 - UNITS WILL REQUEST SUPPORT THROUGH COMMAND CHANNELS TO S3 / G3
- LABOR AND FIRE FIGHTING
 - HOST NATION LABOR AND FIRE FIGHTING IS REQUESTED THROUGH S5 / G5 CHANNELS.



LOGISTICS SERVICE



- DECONTAMINATION
 - UNIT WILL USE ORGANIC EQUIPMENT PRIOR TO REQUESTING SUPPORT FROM CORPS OR THEATER.
- LAUNDRY
 - PRIORITY OF LAUNDRY SUPPORT IS TO MEDICAL FACILITIES.
 - UNITS WILL REQUEST HOST NATION SUPPORT IF COSCOM SUPPORT IS UNAVAILABLE.
- WATER
 - BULK WATER WILL BE ISSUED AT WATER SUPPLY POINTS.
 - BOTTLED WATER WILL BE ISSUE WITH CLASS I IF AVAILABLE.



C.6.2 INSPECTOR GENERAL



- RESPONSIBILITIES

- PROVIDE CORPS CDR MEANS TO ASSESS CORPS COMBAT READINESS
- ADVISE CORPS STAFF AND SUBORDINATE CMDs ON ITEMS OF CMD INTEREST
- CONDUCT INVESTIGATIONS AND INSPECTIONS AS DIRECTED BY CDR, THE INSPECTOR GENERAL, OR AS PRESCRIBED BY LAW OR REGULATION
- ASSESS ALL ASPECTS OF COMBAT READINESS
- RECEIVE AND PROCESS COMPLAINTS AND IG ACTION REQUESTS FROM SOLDIERS, U.S. CIVILIANS AND LOCAL NATIONALS/THIRD COUNTRY NATIONALS
- IDENTIFY AGENCIES AND ORGANIZATIONS RESPONSIBLE FOR CORRECTIVE ACTIONS
- CONDUCT FOLLOW-UP INQUIRIES AND INSPECTIONS TO ENSURE ISSUES ARE RESOLVED
- CONTROL AND PROTECT IG RECORDS
- EXTRACT AND DISSEMINATE LESSONS LEARNED



INSPECTOR GENERAL

• COMMAND AND CONTROL

–PROVIDE TECHNICAL AND PROCEDURAL GUIDANCE TO SUBORDINATE IGs AND UNITS TO ENSURE UNIFORMITY IN POLICY INTERPRETATIONS

–WILL NOT USURP AUTHORITY OF OTHER DETAILED IGs WITHIN THEIR ESTABLISHED COMMANDS

–IGs OF SUBORDINATE UNITS ASSIGNED TO III CORPS WILL ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS WITH III CORPS IG UPON ASSIGNMENT OR ARRIVAL IN CORPS' SECTOR

• ASSISTANCE

–PROVIDE ASSISTANCE TO CORPS UNITS, TENANT UNITS AND OTHER DESIGNATED UNITS WITH NO DETAILED IGs

–ASSISTANCE, IN A VARIETY OF FUNCTIONAL AREAS, WILL BE PROVIDED TO UNITS WITHIN THE CONSTRAINTS OF AVAILABLE IG RESOURCES

–UNITS ASSIGNED TO, OR MOVING THROUGH THE III CORPS SECTOR WITHOUT DETAILED IGs, WILL RECEIVE ASSISTANCE, ON AN AREA SUPPORT BASIS, AS DETERMINED BY THE CORPS IG



INSPECTOR GENERAL

DAY SHIFT	NIGHT SHIFT
SR IG OFCR	SR IG NCO
IG ASSIST NCO	IG ASSIST NCO
DRIVER/AD MIN	



C.6.3

TRANSPORTATION

MISSION

- Purpose: Prescribe procedures governing transportation support and movements control within III Corps during tactical operations.
- Responsibilities: III Corps G3 – Overall responsibility for coordinating force tracking, tactical movements, and supervising battlefield maneuver.
 - III Corps G4 CTO (Corps Transportation Officer) Coordinates all Corps movement planning and operations with the G3.
 - 13th COSCOM – Coordinates plans throughout from theater to the tactical level. Provides input to movement annexes. Recommends units to support transportation nodes and units to support the distribution system.



TRANSPORTATION RESPONSIBILITIES



49th Movement Control Battalion – Recommends to the CTO surface routes. Coordinates all movement within the CRA and CSA and maintaining communications with forward, rearward, and adjacent movement control units.

Divisions and Separate Brigades:- Controls all movement within their respective areas of responsibility.

Theater Airlift Liaison Officer (TALO) – Validates airlift requests submitted by DTO/G4/S4 and forwards requests to to Corps MCB.

Corps Engineer – Conducts route recon and provides data to G3, G4 and 13 COSCOM. Designates engineer assets to provide damage control to MSR.

Corps Chemical Officer – Provides analysis of enemy chemical capability and potential impact of enemy capabilities along MSR.

Corps ACofS G5/Civil Affairs – Recommends dislocated routes to the CTO.

Corps Signal Officer – Establishes required communication for movement control, traffic control and force tracking coordination.



TRANSPORTATION

AIR DELIVERY/RESUPPLY



Air Delivery/Resupply Request request channels:

- Validation – Assessment of feasibility and value of the airlift requirement.
- Pre-planned Requirements – Air movement requirements are known or projected in advance.
- Short notice Requirements – Immediate and emergency.



TRANSPORTATION

Selection and Marking of Drop Zones:

General. Primary characteristics

- 400-600 wide, 1000-1500 yards long
- Recognizable check points.
- Free of ponds, streams, trees,
- Vehicle accessible.

Equipment

- Panels for day operation.
- Light for night operations.
- Red flares or smoke.



TRANSPORTATION



Transportation Support Procedure Responsibilities

Requesting Unit: Identify to TALO and CTO potential drop zone/landing locations.

- Submit request to 49th MCB.
- Prepare material for air delivery.
- Provide personnel for loading and receiving material.

49th MCB: Arrange for routine Army air transport support. Receive process and task air requests.

Transportation Support Procedures:

- Units in the division will use organic transportation assets to include C2 assets to the DTO.
- Units in the CRA will submit requests to the supporting MCT.

49th MCB will submit as follows:

- Barge and Rail to Host nation support liaison.
- Motor transport to COSCOM transportation assets.
- Air transport: Submit requests to Army Air LNO.



C.6.4 PERSONNEL



MISSION

- ON ORDER, DEPLOY TO A THEATER OF OPERATIONS IN ORDER TO PROVIDE III CORPS SYNCHRONIZED AND SEAMLESS STAFF INTEGRATION OF ALL PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE OPERATIONS (AG, FI, SJA, IG, CHAPLAIN, SURGEON, PMO, PAO, AND RED CROSS) THROUGHOUT THE RANGE OF MILITARY OPERATIONS
- G1 IS OVERALL RESPONSIBLE FOR COORDINATING ALL PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATION PLANS AND POLICY. FUNCTIONALLY, DIRECT RESPONSIBILITY OF THE G1 EXTENDS TO WARTIME PERSONNEL PLANS AND ORDERS, OFFICER PROFESSIONAL MANAGEMENT, SAFETY AND MORALE SUPPORT



PERSONNEL OPERATIONS



COLLECT, ANALYZE AND PROVIDE CSS SITUATION INFORMATION, ANALYSIS, AND COURSES OF ACTION

- COORDINATE PERSONNEL / HUMAN RESOURCE ISSUES WITH THEATER ARMY AND MULTINATIONAL AGENCIES AS REQUIRED
- PREPARE AND MAINTAIN CURRENT PERSONNEL ESTIMATE
- PERFORM PERSONNEL ACCOUNTING AND STRENGTH REPORTING TO MAINTAIN THE READINESS POSTURE OF UNITS
- PERFORM CASUALTY REPORTING OPERATIONS
- ALLOCATE REPLACEMENTS TO MSCs IAW COMMANDER'S GUIDANCE
- SUPPORT RECONSTITUTION EFFORTS AS DIRECTED
- RECOMMEND THE POSITIONING OF CSS UNITS IN THE REAR AREA TO BEST SUPPORT THE OVERALL CORPS OPERATION
- COORDINATE ALL PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATION PLANS AND POLICY
- MORALE SUPPORT, MUSIC SERVICES, AER, EXCHANGE SERVICES, RECREATION SERVICES, CLASS VI AND ARC ICW AG, CORPS CHAPLAIN



PERSONNEL OPERATIONS



- PROPONENT FOR SAFETY ISSUES, RISK MANAGEMENT (ACCIDENT PREVENTION) AND ACCIDENT FLOW REPORTING
- PROCESSING OF US MILITARY PERSONNEL AND ALLIED PERSONNEL RECOVERED FROM ENEMY CONTROLLED TERRITORY
- PERSONNEL SERVICE / ADMIN SUPPORT ICW AG
- COORDINATE AWARDS PROGRAM ICW AG
- CONDUCT CORPS POSTAL OPERATIONS MANAGEMENT ICW AG
- CIVILIAN PERSONNEL MANAGEMENT. RESPONSIBLE TO ADMINISTER US AND NON-US CIVILIAN EMPLOYMENT PROGRAMS USING POTENTIAL LABOR SOURCES IN COMBAT AREAS ICW G5
- COORDINATE PUBLIC AFFAIRS SUPPORT ICW PAO
- COORDINATE PAY SERVICES ICW 3D FIN GRP
- COORDINATE LEGAL SERVICES ICW SJA
- COORDINATE HEALTH SERVICES ICW CORPS SURGEON
- COORDINATE RELIGIOUS MINISTRY SUPPORT ICW CORPS CHAPLAIN



C.6.4 G1/AG OIC/NCOIC

REAR CP OPERATIONS

- ADVISE CG / DCG / 13CC CDR OF ALL PERSONNEL ESTIMATES AND ASSESSMENTS: UNIT STRENGTHS AND REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS
- IMPLEMENT CORPS SAFETY PROGRAM
- MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS USING DNVF, TACLAN W/CSS CLIENT SOFTWARE, CSSCS, CSSTSS
- PREPARE RECURRING BUB DATA
- SUPERVISE AND COORDINATE ALL HUMAN RESOURCE ACTIONS
- MAINTAIN THE DUTY LOG, RECORDS, OPERATIONS MAP AND INFO DISPLAYS
- CONDUCT DETAILED SHIFT CHANGE BRIEFS
- ENSURE MAINTENANCE OF ALL EQUIPMENT
- PREPARE ROUTINE REPORTS
- PROVIDE THE G1/AG C-ROC REPRESENTATIVE WITH REPORTS, MESSAGES, AND PERTINENT INFORMATION
- PREPARE JUMP PLAN
- DRAFT FRAGO INFORMATION AS NECESSARY



G1/AG



REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS

- PERSONNEL LOSS ESTIMATES: CJCS GUIDE 3161 WILL BE USED TO ESTIMATE PERSONNEL LOSSES ICW KNOWN FACTORS, DOCTRINE, AND EXPERIENCE
- PRIORITY OF FILL: G1 RECOMMENDS PRIORITY OF FILL FOR APPROVAL BY THE DCG. PRIORITY OF FILL INDICATES PRIORITY FOR MOS OR MOS GROUPINGS
- PRIORITY OF SUPPORT: G1 RECOMMENDS PRIORITY OF SUPPORT FOR APPROVAL BY THE DCG. PRIORITY OF SUPPORT INDICATES THE PRIORITY BETWEEN MSCs. THE G1 WILL RECOMMEND % OF FILL FOR EACH UNIT LISTED IN THE PRIORITY OF SUPPORT BY TAKING INTO ACCOUNT SUCH FACTORS AS ACTUAL CASUALTIES, CURRENT ABILITY TO INTEGRATE REPLACEMENTS, FUTURE OPERATIONS AND AVAILABLE MOSs.



C.6.4 PERSONNEL BUB



MANNING PERSONNEL STRENGTH

MSC	AUTH	ASGN	% FILL	STATUS
45ID	12274	12274	100%	G
ICD	17331	17324	100%	G
49AD	17550	17549	100%	G
6 CAV	6028	6028	100%	G
CARTY	11890	11890	100%	G
13CC	27618	27618	100%	G
3 ACR	5270	5270	100%	G
TOTAL	97961	97953	100%	G

As of 031800MAR02

MANNING PERSONNEL STRENGTH

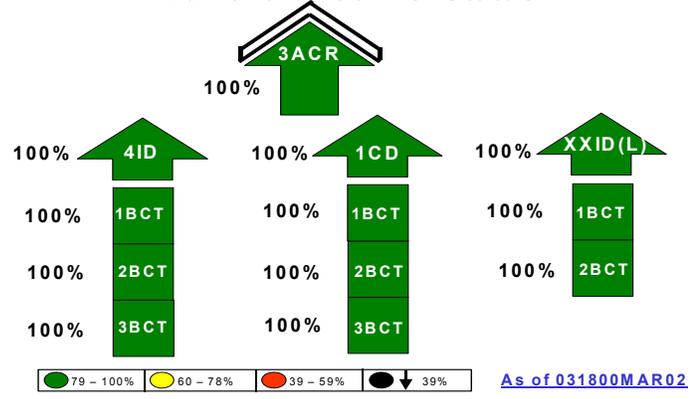
MSC	AUTH	ASGN	% FILL	STATUS
31 ADA	2674	2515	94%	G
3D SIG BDE	6209	6175	99%	G
89TH MP BDE	4642	4642	100%	G
504TH MI BDE	1393	1393	100%	G
420 EN BDE	19291	19291	100%	G
460TH CHEM BDE	2261	2261	100%	G
13TH FIN GRP	482	482	100%	G
3D PER GRP	1661	1661	100%	G
TOTAL	38613	38420	100%	G

As of 031800MAR02

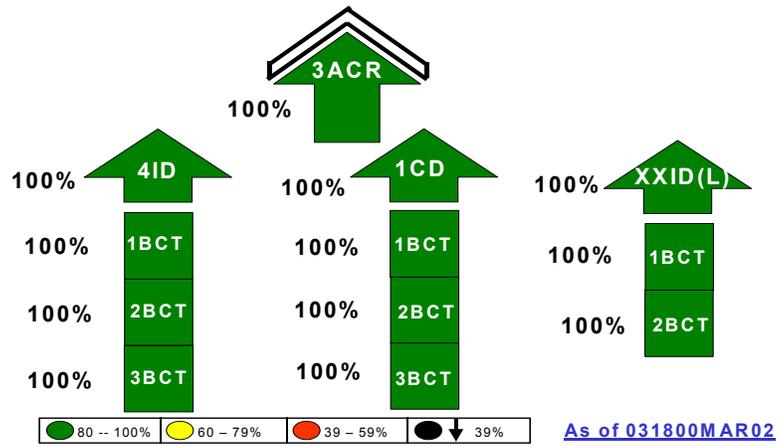


PERSONNEL

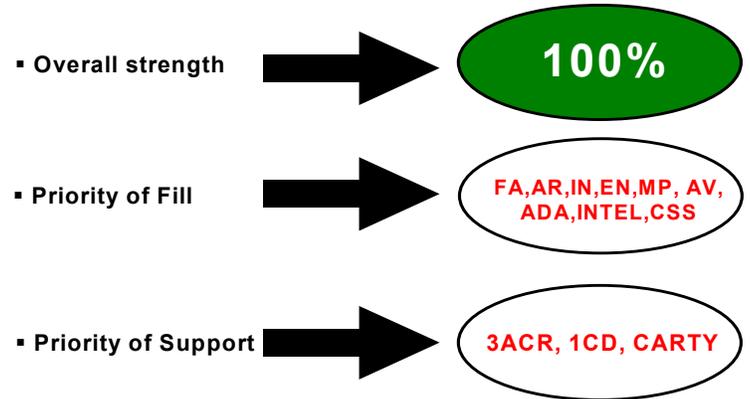
Current Personnel Status



Personnel Status Next 24 Hours



Personnel Assessment Next 72 Hours





C.6.4 FINANCE OPERATIONS



13TH FINANCE GROUP PROVIDES ESSENTIAL FINANCE AND ACCOUNTING SUPPORT WITHIN III CORPS' AREA OF OPERATIONS TO INCLUDE THE FOLLOWING:

- PROVIDE CONTRACT PROCUREMENT SUPPORT
- PROVIDE COMMERCIAL VENDOR SERVICES (CVS)
- SUPPORT III CORPS HOST NATION SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS
- CONDUCT MILITARY PAY, TRAVEL, AND DISBURSING OPERATIONS
- PROCESS ALL DEPLOYMENT TRAVEL VOUCHERS FOR III CORPS' SOLDIERS
- CONDUCT AN AUDIT OF EACH SOLDIER'S MILITARY PAY ACCOUNT
- RESOLVE SOLDIERS PAY INQUIRIES UPON REDEPLOYMENT TO CONUS
- STOP AND START APPROPRIATE PAY ENTITLEMENTS
- PROVIDE PAYMENT SUPPORT TO CONTRACT ELEMENTS WITHIN III CORPS AOR
- TRAIN AND APPOINT PAYING AGENTS FROM THE MSCs AND SEPARATE BRIGADES



FINANCE

SUPPORT OPERATIONS

- ALL SUPPORTED UNITS WILL COORDINATE FINANCE SUPPORT THROUGH THEIR G1/S1 OR THEIR HQ ELEMENT
- FINANCE SUPPORT TO U.S. PERSONNEL ON AN AREA BASIS
- DEPLOYMENT ENTITLEMENTS AND SERVICES BEGIN UPON AUTHORIZATION BY CONGRESS OR THE PRESIDENT
- DUPLICATE COPIES OF LEAVE AND EARNINGS STATEMENTS (LES) WILL BE PROVIDED TO DEPLOYED SOLDIERS
- DIRECT DEPOSIT IS REQUIRED FOR ALL SOLDIERS
- THEATRE COMMANDER WILL ESTABLISH THE FREQUENCY AND DOLLAR AMOUNT LIMITATIONS FOR BOTH CHECK CASHING SERVICES AND CASUAL PAYMENTS



FINANCE

SUPPORT OPERATIONS

- SOLDIERS ARE PROHIBITED FROM EXCHANGING CURRENCY AT OTHER THAN OFFICIAL CURRENCY EXCHANGES (E.G., BANKS, FOREIGN EXCHANGES, HOTELS, ETC.)
- FINANCE BATTALIONS WILL BE AUTHORIZED TO EXCHANGE U.S. DOLLARS INTO LOCAL CURRENCY
- THE CURRENCY CONVERSION RATE WILL FLUCTUATE BASED ON THE OFFICIAL RATE.
- ALL RECONVERSIONS OF FOREIGN CURRENCY BACK TO U.S. DOLLARS WILL OCCUR AT FINANCE OFFICES WITHIN THE AOR PRIOR TO REDEPLOYMENT
- 13TH FG WILL PERFORM BANKING LIAISON WITH LOCAL FINANCIAL INSTITUTIONS AND ESTABLISH LIMITED DEPOSITARY ACCOUNTS WHEN NECESSARY



FINANCE

SUPPORT OPERATIONS

- 13TH FG WILL COORDINATE WITH APPROPRIATE CONTRACTING, RESOURCE MANAGEMENT, AND JAG PERSONNEL TO ENSURE REQUIRED CURRENCY AND SUPPORT IS AVAILABLE.
- PAYING AGENTS MUST CLEAR THEIR ACCOUNTS PRIOR TO REDEPLOYMENT
- CONFISCATED OR FOUND CASH WILL BE COUNTED, SAFEGUARDED, AND TRANSPORTED TO THE NEAREST FINANCE UNIT
- 13TH FG UNITS PROVIDE ENEMY PRISONER OF WAR (EPW) PAY SUPPORT AS REQUESTED



C.6.5 LEGAL



The legal annex will be dependent upon the actual operation. Common sections of the legal annex will include:

References

Situation

Mission

Execution

Coordinating instructions

Each section addressed individually is as follows:



LEGAL



References: are the controlling documents dictating the scope and breadth of operations. These are specifically listed within the particular annex and commonly include:

Relevant SOFA's

International Agreements

UCMJ/Claims/Legal Assistance regulations

International Law

DOD Law of war Program

Standing Rules of Engagement (CJCSI 3121.01A)

Intelligence Law

Fiscal and Environmental considerations



LEGAL



SITUATION:

III Corps Mission: see base order

Investigate: Fratricides/law of War
violations/Rules of Engagement
violations

Legal Authority for Mission: place here
(particular legal basis)

MISSION: “Provide full spectrum legal support to III
Corps”



LEGAL



EXECUTION: OSJA task organizes to support the TAC/Main/Rear

Task Organize support to:

Corps Plans team

Effects Coordination cell

Civil-Military Operations Center

Liaison with International

Organizations/NGO/PVO

Information Operations

Command Operations Cell



LEGAL



Task organize legal support to specifically include:

Military Justice

Claims

Legal Assistance

Contracting support

Environmental issues/concerns

Fiscal considerations coordinate with
military operations

Operational Law



LEGAL



COORDINATING INSTRUCTIONS:

Typically included:

General Order #1

Policy on War Trophies

Temporary refuge and Political asylum

Acquisition during combat operations

Required reports

Fratricide

Law of war Violations

Populated Area Targeting worksheet



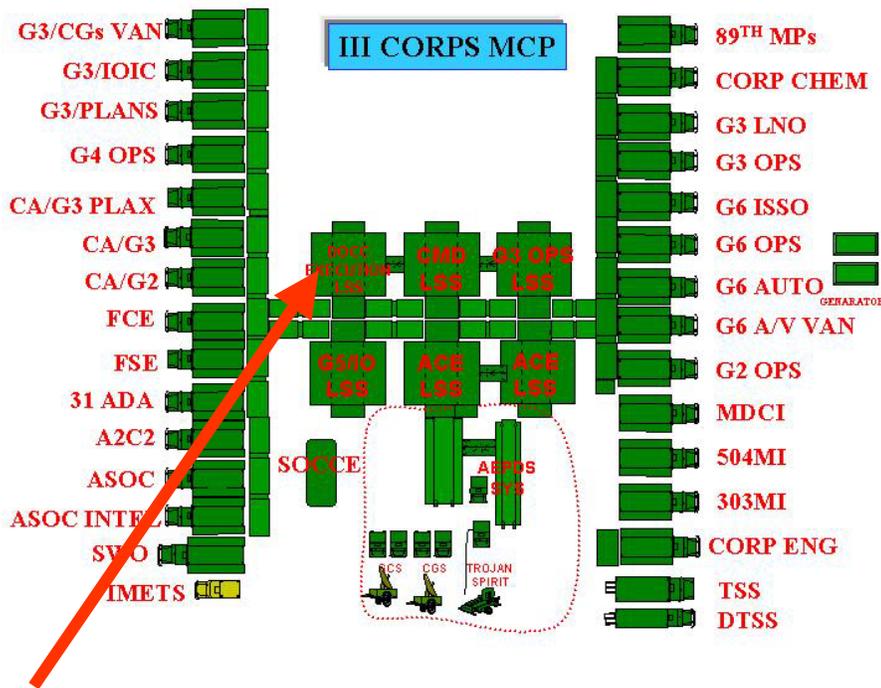
C.6.6 RELIGIOUS SUPPORT MISSION



- III CORPS CHAPLAIN SECTION WILL PROVIDE QUALITY RELIGIOUS SUPPORT THROUGHOUT THE RANGE OF MILITARY OPERATIONS. UPON RECEIPT OF ORDERS, DEPLOY TO A THEATER OF OPERATIONS WITH III CORPS HEADQUARTERS PROVIDING COMPREHENSIVE RELIGIOUS SUPPORT.



Unit Ministry Team C-MAIN OPERATIONS



- CORP UMT CONDUCTS OPERATIONS FROM THE G5/IO LSS.
- PLANS, COORDINATES / EXECUTES RELIGIOUS SUPPORT FOR III CORP OPERATIONS.
- IN COORDINATION WITH G5, ESTABLISHES COMMUNICATION WITH MULTINATIONAL, INTERAGENCY, NON-GOVERNMENTAL ORGANIZATIONS (NGO), PRIVATE VOLUNTARY ORGANIZATIONS (PVO), AND WITH RELIGIOUS LEADERS OF THE HOST NATION.



Unit Ministry Team

C-MAIN OPERATIONS

(Continued)



- MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS USING DNVT, TACLAN, AND CSSCS.
- PREPARE AND MAINTAIN CURRENT RELIGIOUS SUPPORT ESTIMATE.
- PROVIDE INPUT TO THE INFORMATION OPERATIONS WORKING GROUP (IOWG) AS APPROPRIATE.
- SUPERVISE AND COORDINATE ALL RELIGIOUS SUPPORT ACTIONS.
- PROVIDE THE UMT C-ROC REPRESENTATIVE WITH REPORTS, MESSAGES, AND PERTINENT INFORMATION.
- MAINTAIN DUTY LOG, RECORDS, SITUATIONAL UNDERSTANDING AND INFO DISPLAYS.
- CONDUCT DETAILED SHIFT CHANGE BRIEFS.
- ENSURE MAINTENANCE OF ALL EQUIPMENT.
- PREPARE ROUTINE REPORTS.
- PREPARE UMT JUMP PLAN.
- DRAFT FRAGO INFORMATION AS NECESSARY.
- SEE III CORPS CHAPLAIN INTERNAL SOP.



Unit Ministry Team

C-ROC OPERATIONS

(Continued)



- MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS USING DNVF, TACLAN, AND CSSCS.
- PLAN FOR UMT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS AND RECOMMEND UMT PRIORITY OF FILL ASSIGNMENTS TO THE G1/AG.
- PROVIDE RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PLANNING TO RECONSTITUTION/REORGANIZATION OPERATIONS.
- MAINTAIN DUTY LOG, RECORDS, SITUATIONAL UNDERSTANDING AND INFO DISPLAYS.
- CONDUCT DETAILED SHIFT CHANGE BRIEFS
- ENSURE MAINTENANCE OF ALL EQUIPMENT
- PREPARE ROUTINE REPORTS
- PROVIDE THE UMT CMAIN REPRESENTATIVE WITH REPORTS, MESSAGES, AND PERTINENT INFORMATION
- PREPARE UMT JUMP PLAN
- SEE III CORPS CHAPLAIN INTERNAL SOP.



C.6.7 SURGEON FUNCTION



- To command and control corps medical operations
- Developing and coordinating patient evacuation support plans among the Division and Corps medical evacuation elements.
- Coordinating Corps-level health service support for the Corps with the COSCOM and the Corps Medical Brigade..
- Synchronizing health service support with task organization.
- Forwarding medical information and medical threat analysis to the G2.
- Monitors the disposition of captured medical materials.
- Recommends PM countermeasures.
- Coordinates pre- and post-deployment medical threat briefings.
- Monitors the immunization and chemoprophylaxis status of the Corps.
- Planning, coordinating, and prioritizing health services materiel and medical maintenance programs for the Corps.



SURGEON

MEDICAL FUNCTIONAL AREAS

- **Command and control.** III Corps Surgeon provides guidance to units assigned, attached, OPCON, TACON, or in DS/GS of III Corps and establishes policies on Corps Health Service Support (HSS). The Corps HSS is provided on an area basis by units task organized for that purpose.
- **Medical Logistics.** Medical logistics consists of Class VIII resupply, medical maintenance, property accountability, optical fabrication, and blood management.
 - All Class VIII resupply requests are fill or partially fill and pass using by-line requisitioning. The primary means of delivery for routine resupply is by LOGPAK. Alternate means is by directed medical assets or direct exchange. Units will deploy with their basic load of Class VIII and medical equipment repair parts.
- **Resupply Operations.**
 - The BAS will resupply first aid pouches, combat lifesavers, and combat medics. The medical companies will resupply ambulances and the BAS. The DMSO will resupply the medical companies within the division AO.
 - The supporting medical logistics company will resupply the CSH.



SURGEON

MEDICAL FUNCTIONAL AREAS

- **Materiel.** Captured medical materiel will be used to treat EPW patients and the indigenous population. Units will notify the Medical Brigade Headquarters for disposition and intelligence collection.
- **Medical Equipment Maintenance.** Medical equipment maintenance support will be conducted as far forward as possible and on-site when possible.
 - Direct exchange of components is encouraged to increase responsiveness and enhance the fix forward concept.
 - Cannibalization and controlled exchange will be done only in accordance with AR 40-61 and AR 750-1.
- **Optical Fabrication.**
 - The MSMC will support Divisional units for optical fabrication or, if beyond it's capabilities, forward the request to the Medical Logistics Battalion. The ASMC will support non-Divisional units.



SURGEON

MEDICAL FUNCTIONAL AREAS

- **Blood Management.** The management and distribution of blood and blood products is a function of the Joint Blood Program Office (JBPO) within the theater. The Blood Support Detachment is the direct issue source for Hospitals, Forward Surgical Teams(FST), and medical companies.
 - FST will coordinate resupply operations directly with the supporting medical company.
 - Medical companies (division and area support) will coordinate directly with the Blood Support Detachment for resupply.
 - CSH will coordinate directly with the Blood Support Detachment for resupply.
- **Medical Evacuation.** Both Ground and Air evacuation assets are available to support the corps via organic units within the maneuver units and the COSCOM/ Medical Bde. Units will use non-standard (non-medical) platforms when necessary. Medical evacuation may be on a direct support or general (area) support basis.
- **Hospitalization.** Allied personnel, DOD/DA civilians and contractors , and Enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) , may be treated and hospitalized in a U.S. Army Hospital. Local civilians are not entitled to treatment in life threatening emergencies only.



SURGEON

MEDICAL FUNCTIONAL AREAS

- **Area Medical Support.** Area Support Medical Companies and Combat Support Hospitals (CSH) will provide medical support to non-divisional and Corps units. Units are not limited to by support relationships; they will evacuate casualties to the nearest medical unit.
- **Laboratory Services.** Laboratory services are limited to the capabilities found within the medical companies and the combat support hospitals.
- **Veterinary Services.** Veterinary services in the theater includes inspection of subsistence, control of food-borne diseases, examination of food animals, and control of diseases transmitted from animals to humans.
- **Dental Services.** Level III dental care is provided by organic dental services in hospitals and convalescent centers. Area dental support units augment the hospital dental staff for routine dental treatment.
- **Combat Stress Control.** Combat stress control is implemented by mental health personnel organic to units and by specialized CSC units. Soldiers suffering from combat stress will be treated as far forward as possible to maximize RTDs.
- **Preventive Medicine.** Preventive Medicine is provided by organic personnel assigned to the Med Bde/Group₃₉₁ CSHs, and ASMBs.



PART D

ENABLING

OPERATIONS

- **NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE**
- **MILITARY POLICE**
- **INFORMATION OPERATIONS**
- **CIVIL MILITARY AFFAIRS**
- **PUBLIC AFFAIRS**
- **SPECIAL OPERATIONS**
- **ROE**



CHEM



D.1

NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE



CHEMICAL



- **Responsibilities**

- **Units**

- Establish and maintain an NBC defense organization. Standards set in FM 3-100 and AR 350-41
 - Implement and maintain the NBC warning and reporting system (NBCWRS)
 - Provide timely NBC intelligence
 - Develop and implement NBC recon, smoke and decon plans
 - Monitor the stockage and use of NBC supplies and equipment
 - Identify water sources and decon sites in their AO

- **Corps Staff**

- Inform the Corps CDR of NBC issues
 - Recommend NBC priorities of effort and support
 - Provide recommendations for Task Org of NBC assets
 - Conduct NBC IPB, vulnerability and threat assessments

- **Corps Chemical Staff**

- Coordinate NBC logistics with the G4
 - Ensure NBC (contamination, NAIS, etc) and smoke overlays and summary reports are disseminated to the Corps
 - Establish and operate the Corps NBCWRS
 - Establish the NBC Threatcon level
 - Coordinate with G5 for HNS NBC enablers



CHEMICAL



- **NBC Threat Warning System**
 - Corps recommends MSC THREATCON actions
 - Higher NBC THREATCON actions assume lower actions complete
 - Lower NBC THREATCON level does not preclude MSCs from taking actions tied to a higher NBC THREATCON level
 - NBC THREATCON is not synonymous with MOPP
- **NBC Warning and Reporting System**
 - Activated upon deployment based on threat
 - Disseminate reports to higher, adjacent and subordinates
 - Report only first use of NBC using an NBC-1 w/ FLASH precedence
 - Send subsequent attacks using an NBC-2 w/ IMMEDIATE precedence
 - MSCs will follow-up all NBC 1/2 reports with an NBC 5
 - Submit an NBC 5 or clear lane report when encountering an unreported contaminated area
 - Units in a MSC area will report attacks to that MSC's designated NBCC
 - Units in Corps Rear Area will report attacks to their designated Rear Area Operations Center (RAOC) ³⁹⁵



CHEMICAL



- **TBM Guidance**
 - **MSCs will check each TBM impact for contamination**
 - **When full reconnaissance cannot be completed, notify Corps**
 - **Prioritize reconnaissance by proximity to:**
 - **MSRs/ASRs/LOCs**
 - **Current/planned AAs/BPs/airfields**
 - **Logistics bases**
 - **Any area that will impact future operations**
- **Strike Serial Numbers**
 - **MSCs with NBCEs will assign a five character code.**
 - **Leading character represents the MSC**
 - **The next three numeric characters reflect the number of the attack against that MSC.**
 - **Final character identifies the type of attack. N, B, or C**
 - **III Corps NBCC will add three additional characters to the beginning to identify the sequential number of the attack**
 - **III Corps will designate an eight character code for strikes occurring outside of the Corps AO**
 - **First Four characters will be zeroes**
 - **The next three will identify sequential number of the attack**
 - **Final character will represent the type of attack. N, B, C**



CHEMICAL



- **Contaminated Area Lane Marking**
 - Initial
 - According to unit SOP
 - Send a Clear Lane Report to III Corps
- **Requests for NBC Support**
 - Forward requests for Task Org changes through G3 channels. All requests will include a Task and Purpose for Chemical assets
 - Requests for NBC support beyond organic capability will be sent to 460th CM BDE with CC to III Corps Chemical
 - III Corps will set priorities for NBC support in the OPLAN.
- **NBC Coordination**
 - Smoke
 - Coordinate with adjacent units, Corps G2, A2C2, and the Corps NBCC
 - Coordinate for use of another MSC's Decontamination Point
 - Coordinate when NBC Recon operations cross MSC boundaries



CHEMICAL



- **FPOL and RPOL**
 - Stationary unit is responsible to provide NBC support during these operations
 - METT-TC and prior coordination can override this protocol
 - Exchange following information:
 - NBC strike information
 - Confirmed/Suspected contaminated areas
 - Clear lanes through contamination
 - Designated contaminated routes
- **MOPP**
 - III Corps will designate the minimum MOPP Level
 - Subordinate units can raise MOPP levels in their own areas
 - Under no circumstance will a subordinate direct a lower MOPP level than that set by III Corps
- **Biological and Chemical Sampling**
 - A sampling control element will be established in theater
 - III Corps will designate sample transfer points.
 - Requests for bio sampling will be processed through III Corps NBCC
 - Samples containing plants and animals will be collected by HSS personnel



CHEMICAL



- **Biological and Chemical Sampling (cont)**
 - Other samples will be collected by FOX/BIDS personnel
 - Sample must be collected, sealed, packaged, stored, transported and transferred IAW FM 3-101-4 (use DA 4137)
 - No less than 4 samples will be collected
- **Hazardous Facilities (HAZFACs)**
 - III Corps Chemical, ICW G2 and/or G5, will prepare a listing of civilian NBC hazards
 - List will be updated as additional information is obtained
 - ICW G5 and FSE, all known HAZFACs will be designated as a NFA or RFA.
 - MSCs will report additional HAZFACs in their AO to the III Corps Chemical section
- **Decontamination Sites**
 - MSCs will select decon sites in their AO
 - ICW 460th, RAOCs and MSCs in the CRA will select decon sites for the CRA
 - MSCs and 460th will forward these sites to III Corps NBCC for approval
 - Corps NBCC will coordinate w/ G5 on location of sites. G5 approval is not a requirement to use



CHEMICAL



- **Decontamination Sites (cont)**

- Corps NBCC will compile a list of sites and forward to all units
- MSCs will identify their decon sites using a five character code
 - 1st character refers to the unit-see appendix
 - Next three characters will list the sequential number of site
 - Last character will indicate status
 - A Proposed
 - B Established, vacant
 - C Established, occupied
 - D Established, cached
 - E Closed, used
 - F Closed, unused
 - Established refers to engineer prepared and operational ready

- **Chemical Casualty Treatment**

- Medical treatment at forward MTFs is limited to limb or limb saving
- Chemical Casualties must receive self or buddy-aid prior to reaching an MTF
- All casualties will be deconed prior to being transported to a CSH



CHEMICAL



- **Contaminated Remains**
 - Units will coordinate for REEFER vans to store contaminated remains until decon operations are conducted.
 - At no time will contaminated remains be hastily buried or returned to the US contaminated
- **NBC Class VIII items**
 - Appropriate items will be issued based on threats
 - Resupply will be handled by normal medical/supply channels



CHEMICAL



- **THREATCON Levels**

- **THREATCON: WHITE**
- **ATTACK PROBABILITY: NEGLIGIBLE**
- **DEFINITION:** Enemy is assessed to have no offensive NBC capability.
- **INDICATORS:** Enemy is assessed to have no offensive NBC capability.

- **THREATCON: GREEN**
- **ATTACK PROBABILITY: POSSIBLE**
- **DEFINITION:** Enemy has an offensive NBC capability but there is no indication of intent to use these weapons in the next 12 hours.
- **INDICATORS:**
 - No overt NBC activity.
 - NBC Munitions are not dispersed or deployed to forward sites.
 - Enemy is currently developing NBC weapons.



CHEMICAL



- **THREATCON Levels (cont)**

- **RECOMMENDED ACTIONS:**

- Ensure that all soldiers have been issued necessary individual NBC equipment and check equipment for serviceability.
- Identify decon sites, water sources, civilian NBC hazards in unit areas of operation.
- Develop plans for providing shelter, and disposable coverings for vehicles, equipment, supplies and personnel.
- Check serviceability of collective protective filters for vehicles and shelters.
- Activate NBCWRS.
- MSCs begin designated observer program.

- **THREATCON: AMBER**

- **ATTACK PROBABILITY: PROBABLE**

- **DEFINITION:** There are strong indications that the enemy will use NBC weapons in the immediate future within the your unit's AO or NBC weapons have already been used in theater (outside your unit's AO).



CHEMICAL



- **THREATCON Levels (cont)**

- **INDICATORS:**

- Announced enemy intentions or threats to use NBC weapons.
- NBC munitions have not been deployed or dispersed to forward locations or units.
- Enemy NBC recon elements have been observed with conventional recon assets.
- Enemy use of meteorological radars associated with SSMs have been detected.
- Enemy use of NBC weapons in theater outside of Corps AO

- **RECOMMENDED ACTIONS:**

- Inform all soldiers of increased threat.
- Deploy NBC detection devices and alarms.
- Initiate (periodic, selective, continuous) NBC sentries and monitoring.
- Cover vehicles, supplies and equipment.
- Deploy collective protective shelters. Rehearse entry and exit procedures.
- Issue chemical agent nerve anti-convulscent (CANA).



CHEMICAL



- **THREATCON Levels (cont)**

- **THREATCON: RED**

- **ATTACK PROBABILITY: IMMINENT**

- **DEFINITION: There are strong indications of imminent use of NBC weapons in the unit's AO.**

- **INDICATORS:**

- NBC munitions have been deployed or dispersed to forward locations or units.
- Enemy soldiers have been sighted wearing NBC protective equipment.
- Enemy observed providing NBC warning to its forces.
- Enemy decon elements have been observed with front line units.
- NBC weapons have been used within your unit's AO during current operations. No contamination is present in the your unit's AO.
- NBC attack is in progress in your unit's AO.

- **RECOMMENDED ACTIONS:**

- Inform all personnel of increased threat.
- Implement movement discipline.
- Ensure personnel, equipment and supplies remain covered to the maximum extent possible.
- Begin operation of collective protection shelters and vehicular over-pressure systems.



CHEMICAL



- **THREATCON Levels (cont)**

- **THREATCON: BLACK**
- **ATTACK PROBABILITY: HAS OCCURRED**
- **DEFINITION: NBC contamination is present in the in your unit's AO.**
- **INDICATORS: NA**
- **RECOMMENDED ACTIONS:**
 - **Ensure all reports of contaminated areas are transmitted to Corps NBCC.**
 - **Ensure contaminated areas and clear routes around or through contamination are marked, based upon tactical situation .**
 - **Conduct periodic monitoring of contaminated areas and clear routes to redefine actual areas of contamination as they change.**
 - **Conduct terrain decontamination if the tactical situation requires it.**
- **The Corps will revert to Threat Condition RED when contamination is no longer present in the Corps AO. It will never return to AMBER.**

****NOTE: Land managers report THREATCON Levels for their AO, not Corps AO .**



CHEMICAL



- **MSC REPORTING CODES**

A - 1st Cavalry Division

B - 25th Infantry Division (Light)

C - 101st Airborne Division (Air Assault)

D - 2nd Infantry Division (Mechanized)

E - 4th Infantry Division (Mechanized)

F - 13th Corps Support Command

G - 3rd Armored Cavalry Regiment

H - 6th Cavalry Brigade (Air Combat)

I - 460th Chemical Brigade

J - 49th Armored Division

K - 35th Infantry Division (Mechanized)

L - 38th Infantry Division (Mechanized)

M - 142nd Rear Operations Center

N - III (US) Corps

– **Note: Reporting codes O through ZZ will be used as spares will be made by the III Corps NBCC and will be provided in the NBC annex of the OPLAN or in FRAGOs**



CHEMICAL

- **BIDS EMPLOYMENT**

- **Select three sites for set-up**
 - Primary
 - Alternate
 - Supplemental
- **Good BIDS location will meet the following criteria**
 - Terrain that canalizes the local wind currents to the BIDS
 - Upwind of the force or HVA being covered
 - Transportation network for rapid evacuation of samples
 - Security by supported unit
 - Protection from direct and indirect fire
 - Communications with platoon Cp or supported unit.

- **CDE Consumption Rates**

<u>ITEM</u>	<u>PER 1,000 TROOPS/DAY</u>
FILTER CANISTER	20.88
M291 KIT	15.95
BDO/JSLIST	76.46
GVO/BVO	76.46



CHEMICAL



- **CDE Consumption Rates**

<u>ITEM</u>	<u>PER 1,000 TROOPS/DAY</u>
CP GLOVES	76.46
CP HELMET COVER	09.87
HOOD (M40)	11.29
PAPER M8	03.68
PAPER M9	69.01
NITROGEN CYLINDER	00.30
DS2, 1 1/3 QUART	00.20
DS2, 5 GALLON	05.95
DECON CONTAINER, M13	00.77
NBC MARKING SETS	01.64
M256A1	04.29
BA3517 BATTERY	01.64
M273 MAINTENANCE KIT	00.71
M12A1/M13 GPFU	00.08
M18 GPFU	00.02
M19 GPFU	00.01
M56/M59 GPFU	00.01
M48 GPFU	00.05
M272 WATER TEST KIT	00.91
NAAK, MK-I	01.26
DIAZEPAM INJECTOR (CANA)	00.52
PB TABLETS	33.39
INDIV DECON WATER (GALLON)	15.50
EQUIP DECON WATER (GALLON)	1250.00



PMO



D.2

MILITARY POLICE



89th MP BDE



89th MP BDE conducts combat and combat support operations IOT secure lines of communication, secure HVAs, and destroy Level II threats and disrupt Level III threats in the Corps Rear Area (CRA)



THREAT RESPONSE LEVELS



Overview-

-The intent of threat response levels is to maintain sustainment operations, prevent the premature commitment of the TCF, and to keep MBA forces in the fight

Response Levels-

-**Level I:** Those threats that can be defeated by base or base cluster self-defense measures.

Examples- agents, saboteurs, partisans, terrorist groups, and tactical units of less than platoon size.

-**Level II:** Threats which are beyond the base or base cluster self-defense capabilities but which can be defeated by response forces, usually MP or other available forces with supporting fires.

Example- small tactical units no greater than company size.

-**Level III-** Threats that necessitate combined arms TCF to defeat them.

Example- large tactical units greater than a company size.



REFERENCES.



- a. FM 3-19.1, MP Operations, Mar 2001.
- b. FM 19-4, MP Battlefield Circulation Control, Area Security, and Enemy Prisoner of War Operations, May 93.
- c. FM 19-10, MP Law and Order Operations, Sep 87.
- d. FM 3-19.40, Internment and Resettlement Operations, 1 Aug 2001.
- e. FM 90-40, Rear Battle, Jun 85.
- f. FM 100-16, Army Operational Support, May 95.
- g. FM 90-23, Rear Security Operations, Nov 89.



PMO



PURPOSE. This annex prescribes standing operating procedures, establishes policy, and provides guidance for Provost Marshal/Military Police combat support to III Corps units during all operations. The provisions of this annex will be augmented as necessary in OPLANs and OPORDs, or in exercise directives tailored to meet specific requirements.

SCOPE. This annex applies to all elements under operational control or otherwise attached to III Corps. The functions addressed in this annex come under the purview of the Commander, 89th MP Bde/III Corps PM.

GENERAL. The 89th MP Bde deploys in support of III Corps (or as a contingency force) and conducts maneuver/mobility support, area security, internment and resettlement, law and order, and police intelligence operations. The 89th MP Bde is organized to deploy elements from a platoon to a full brigade consisting of three to six battalions. The brigade has the unique responsibility of performing its mission(s) across the spectrum of military operations. MP assets are assigned at corps, division, and separate brigade level. Requests for military police support will be submitted to the echelon MP commander/Provost Marshal. The III Corps PM coordinates MP operations in III Corps, conducts staff interface with other Major Subordinate Command (MSC) for mutual support, and provides staff and technical supervision for MP battlefield functions.



TACTICAL EMPLOYMENT:



(A) Maneuver and Mobility Support Operations

(M/MS): M/MS operations expedite the movement of combat resources and ensure freedom of mobility along the Corps' Main Supply Routes. Corps military police will recon, secure, and establish traffic control measures along routes to and within their battle-space. They will find alternate road networks to ensure a way is open to move reinforcing troops, fuel, food, and ammunition across their battle-space. MP will expedite rapid movement of units and essential supplies. They will detect and block off contaminated or damaged areas. When MSR's are blocked, MP will locate bypasses and alternate routes to restore the commander's tactical mobility through aggressive reconnaissance and surveillance. Based on METT-TC, the III Corps PM will determine the priority of the MP's M/MS effort. This prioritization will facilitate the movement of critical Corps assets IAW the Corps Commander's intent and concept of the operation. Emphasis is on positive control of movement along MSR's in the Corps' area of operation. MP's will monitor and report route, terrain, and traffic conditions influencing the Corps' movement routes and (MSR's).



PMO



(1) Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance:

Corps MP will conduct route reconnaissance on designated movement routes and MSRs assigned to III Corps. The traffic control plan will be based on the traffic circulation plan prepared at each echelon. MP units will maintain close coordination with highway traffic headquarters at each echelon. MP units will maintain situation maps showing current traffic control posts/patrols and the status of actual or potential choke points.



PMO



(2) Straggler and Dislocated Civilian Control

(DCS): MP will direct able-bodied stragglers to their units, if known, or into replacement channels.

Wounded or ill stragglers will be given first aid and moved to the nearest medical facility. Straggler collection points will be integrated with traffic control and traffic circulation plans. Any tactical intelligence provided by stragglers will be entered into intelligence and tactical operations channels expeditiously. DCS control is a G5 function. Evacuation of DCS is normally a host nation responsibility. When necessary, as determined by a request from the III Corps G5 (or G3), III Corps MP will assist host nation authorities within their capabilities. MP units which encounter DCS hindering movement or operations along MSR's will take action to redirect them to alternate routes and collection points and report the situation immediately through command or operational channels.



PMO



(3) **MSR Regulation and Enforcement**: IAW the corps Mobile Construction Battalion highway regulation plan, engineer route reports, and METT-TC, MP will regulate traffic and enforce movement priorities to keep MSRs open for movement.

(4) **Area Damage Control**: MP will report damage (from hostilities, man-made disasters, or natural disasters) to MSR networks, HN infrastructure, and other assets that impact on the Corps' operation. With HN and/or engineer assistance, MP will help restore the damaged assets or minimize its affect on Corps operations.



PMO



(B) **Area Security (AS)**: MP area security support to III Corps includes assisting in rear operations, response force operations, combating terrorism, physical security, counter-reconnaissance, personal security to the CG and DCG, and assisting overall corps force protection operations. MP conduct area/zone reconnaissance in designated areas of operation. MP provide access control and area security to the III Corps TAC and Main Command Post. MP provide area security to the corps Rear Command Post and conduct response force operations in the Corps Sustainment Area to destroy Level II threats. MP are prepared to delay and disrupt Level III threats until battle handover to the tactical combat force (TCF).



PMO



(1) **Rear Operations**: IAW the Corps RCP and ROC, MP assist base/base cluster commanders by providing response forces and area reconnaissance and surveillance.

(2) **Response Force Operations**: MP units at all levels must ensure adequate planning and coordination has been accomplished with bases, base clusters, and other critical facilities in sector to facilitate the tactical response. This includes, but is not limited to, the exchange of radio frequencies, call signs, designation of fire coordination lines, etc. MP will establish and C2 a sustainment area immediate response force (IRF).



PMO



(C) Internment and Resettlement Operations (I/RO):

Internment and resettlement operations address MP and CID roles in the control of populations (EPW/CI, US military prisoners, and dislocated civilians). This function involves those measures necessary to provide shelter, sustain, guard, protect, and account for populations. Corps MP establish an initial Corps EPW holding area and follow-on locations, evacuate EPWs from division central collection points, and coordinate with echelon above corps (EAC) MPs for evacuation of EPWs from the Corps holding area to the theater camp(s). MP will maximize use of both rotary wing and fixed-wing aircraft for EPW rearward evacuation and coordinate for use of any Corps and HN ground backhaul assets. ICW the G5, MP will assist in the resettlement of refugees and conduct of populace and resource control.



PMO



Enemy Prisoners of War (EPW). A member of an enemy armed force who is captured in war.

(a) Civilian Internee (CI). A civilian who does not qualify as an EPW, but whose internment is deemed necessary by proper authorities (e.g., intelligence) for security reasons.

(b) Detained Person (DP). A civilian who commits belligerent acts against US forces, equipment, etc. and is temporarily detained awaiting transfer of custody to HN authorities.

(2) Transportation of EPWs. Transportation needed to support the evacuation of EPW/CI/DP from division collection points to the Corps holding area will be coordinated between the III Corps PM/CDR, 89th MP Bde, and the III Corps G4. Whenever possible, direct backhaul of EPW/CI/DP from division to theater army will be accomplished using air, ground, or water transportation. The III Corps PM/CDR 89th MP Bde will coordinate with theater army assets to arrange for direct backhaul.



PMO



- (3) Construction of EPW facilities. MP will coordinate with the Corps Engineers, G2, and the G5 for the establishment of the Corps EPW holding area, and 13 COSCOM for logistic support.

- (4) US Military Prisoner Operations: When necessary, MP will temporarily detain and protect US military prisoners and coordinate for their evacuation to appropriate facilities.

- (5) Populace and Resource Control: ICW G5, MP will assist CA and PSYOPS forces in performing populace and resource control. This includes conducting law and order operations/training, displaced civilian movement, crowd control, and security/force protection operations.



PMO



d. Law and Order (L&O) Operations: MP will conduct L&O on critical/serious incidents within the Corps AO. MP will exercise L&O over all units assigned, attached, or OPCON to III Corps. MP and MSC commanders will enforce additional rules and regulations established by the CG for good order and discipline. The III Corps PM/CDR, 89th MP Bde will establish a PMO to C2 L&O operations. Additionally, the PM will coordinate for CID support in the Corps AO. CID will provide an LNO to the PM and/or co-locate their operation with the PMO. MP will also provide customs support, criminal investigations, and assist in establishing multinational police units and training foreign military/civilian police forces.



PMO



- e. Police Intelligence Operations (PIO): ICW the G2 and as a part of the overall HUMINT collection plan, MP will collect, analyze, and disseminate information and intelligence resulting from criminal activities, law enforcement, security operations, and other MP/CID Operations.



G3 IO



D.3

INFORMATION OPERATIONS



INFORMATION OPERATIONS



IO SECTION FUNCTIONS

- Focus on future operations
- Support Major Subordinate Command current operations
- Coordinate the support of Information Operations (IO) resources
- Coordinate, integrate, and deconflict Information Operations
- Perform IO planning, preparation, execution and assessment in concert with other staff sections
- Integrate IO ISO commander's intent
- Establish and operate the Information Operations Cell at the Corps main command post in order to coordinate and synchronize the elements of IO



INFORMATION OPERATIONS



IO SECTION ORGANIZATION

POSITION	DAY	NIGHT
IO Coordinator		<i>Vacant</i>
IO Current Operations Officer		
IO Section NCO		
IO Planner		<i>Vacant</i>
IO Targeting Officer		<i>Vacant</i>
Operations Security Officer		<i>Vacant</i>
Military Deception Officer		<i>Vacant</i>
Electronic Warfare Officer		<i>Vacant</i>
Psychological Operations Officer		<i>Spt Unit</i>
IO Representative to Command LSS		

Unfilled positions may be filled by Land Information Warfare Activity augmentees



INFORMATION OPERATIONS



IO CELL FUNCTIONS

- Coordinate and deconflict each of the separate elements of IO into operations the commander is achieving and exploiting information superiority
- Provide recommendations to the CofS and input to the targeting process
- Coordinate with the next higher echelon to ensure its IO objectives are met and with subordinate echelons to ensure IO objectives of the commander are included in the subordinate's plans as required
- In the targeting process the output of the IO cell meeting is input to the ECC's targeting meeting
- Determine effectiveness of IO
- Develop and submit CG talking points
- Conduct coordination in formal (IO Cell) and less formal meetings IAW battle rhythm



INFORMATION OPERATIONS



IO CELL FUNCTIONS con't

- Established by the G3 to support continuous operations
- Built around the IO section and augmented with experts in the absent IO elements
- Coordinates and synchronizes the execution of IO elements and related activities out to 72 hours
 - 0-24 Hours – execute planned IO
 - 24-48 Hours – validate planned IO
 - 48-72 Hours – gain commander's approval of IO plan
- Exploit emerging IO opportunities
- Conduct perception management
- Prepare the IO Execution Matrix
- Prepare IO-related FRAGOs
- Provide representation to CG's BUB



INFORMATION OPERATIONS



IO CELL ORGANIZATION

IO Coordinator	Chief of Staff
IO Current Operations Officer	Public Affairs Officer
IO Section NCO	G2
IO Planner	G3
IO Targeting Officer	Space Officer
Electronic Warfare Officer	Civil Affairs Officer
Operations Security Officer	Fire Support Coordinator
Military Deception Officer	Staff Judge Advocate
Psychological Operations Officer	Information Assurance Officer

Members of the IO Section

IO staff support external to IO Section



G5



D.4

CIVIL MILITARY OPERATIONS



Civil-Military Operations



CIVIL AFFAIRS (CA) MISSION

To support the Commander's relationship with civil authorities and civilian populace, promote mission legitimacy, and enhance military effectiveness.

Civil-Military Operations (CMO) supports two basic missions:

1. **Combat Operations:**

- Minimize local populace interference of military operations.
- Provide liaison to local, national and international organizations and leverage their support.
- Advise the commander on cultural and moral issues.
- Identify local resources, facilities and support agencies, coordinating for their support of US military operations.
- Develop and maintain a Corps Protective Target List (PTL)

2. **Support and Stability Operations (SASO):**

- Forward the goal of political and economic stability by coordinating for humanitarian assistance (HA), foreign nation support (FNS) resources and military civic action assistance.
- Further work to leverage support from local businesses, as well as national and international organizations and agencies.



Command Posts Organization/Duties

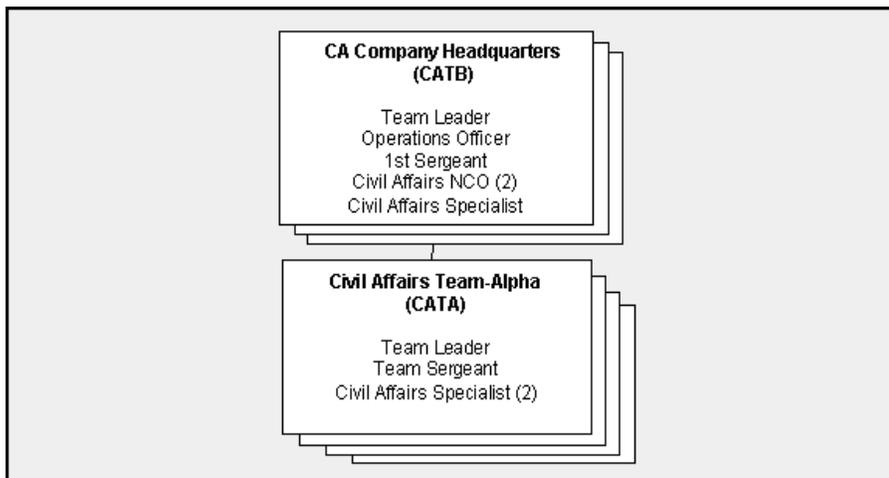
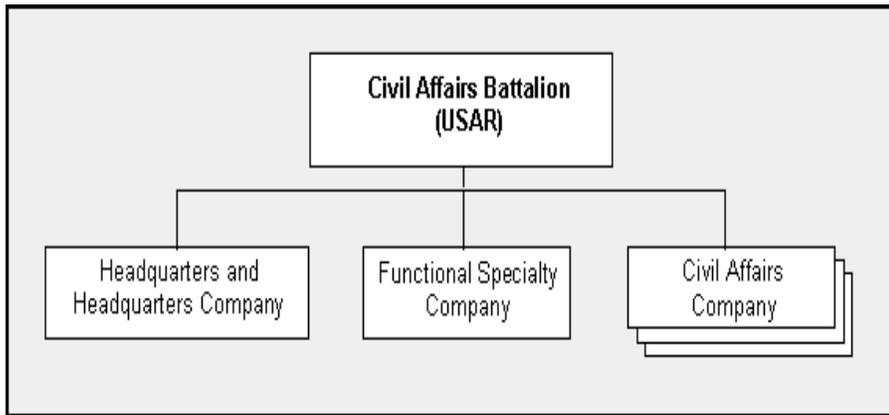
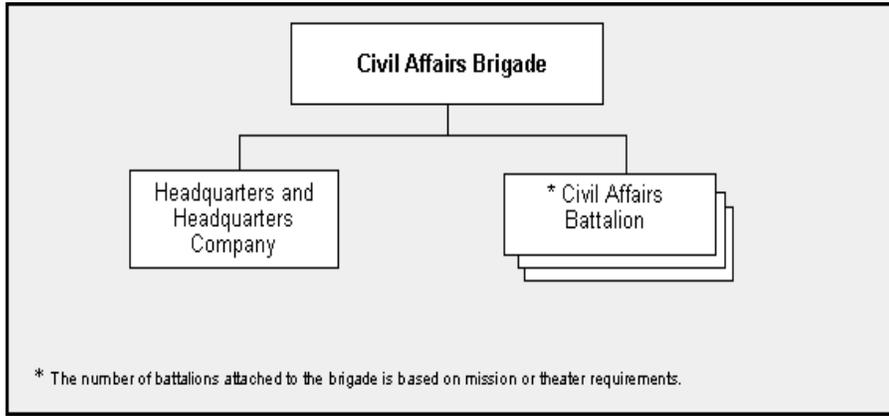


- **TAC** – Staffed by G5 only during CP Main movement
 - Staffed by exception when required (2 pax/24 hrs)
- **Main** – Supports current Ops and 24-72 hr. plans development with focus on combat ops
 - Consolidation of information and reports/requests from MSC G5/S5s
 - Tracking/consolidation of DC/COB reports.
- **Rear** – Primary POC for events in Corps Rear AO
 - Focus on current ops/coordination, battle tracking
 - Facilitates Host Nation Support and Wartime HNS
 - Establishes a Civil-Military Operations Center
 - 72 + hrs. ops planning
 - Lead responsibility for Stability & Support Ops
- **CMOC** – primary link to:
 - Non-governmental organizations (NGOs)
 - International Organizations (IOs)
 - Host Nation (HN) officials and local civilians.
 - Normally located outside Rear CP wire, often in or near a town/population center.
 - Staff size not set and is tailored to the mission
 - Corps staff interfaces/supports the CMOC
 - Staffing allows for 24/7 operation

(See Page D.4.6 for further details)



Civil Affairs Organization





CMO during Combat Operations



- Primary CA missions during Combat Operations:
 - Population and Resource Control (PRC)
 - Humanitarian Assistance (HA)

The Corps G5 will track Dislocated Civilians and Civilians on the Battlefield (DC/COB) reports provided by Major Subordinate Command G5/S5s to insure that Main Supply Routes (MSRs) remain clear and that appropriate actions are being taken to resolve situations.

Definitions:

- DC – Broad term that includes a displaced person, an evacuee, an expellee, or a refugee who does not normally reside in the immediate area.
- COB – Non-displaced civilians who reside in the immediate area and who have not been forced to leave their homes (can return home). They may or may not require assistance.
- Assessments must be conducted to determine the correct status of civilian groups.
- Non-CA units will use the SALUTE report format to report initial contact/observation of DC/COBs. CA Units will use a more detailed CA assessment.



Civil Military Operations Center



- Point of entry for civilians, local and national governments, national and international organizations to communicate issues with military.
- The CA BDE will provide the staffing, tailored to the mission.
- The following Corps staff sections provide CMOC representatives as required in order provide classified information/briefings to military planners and unclassified briefings to the civilian representatives. They also assist in project(s) coordination.

G2 - Briefings/information effects on civilians

G3 - Operational information

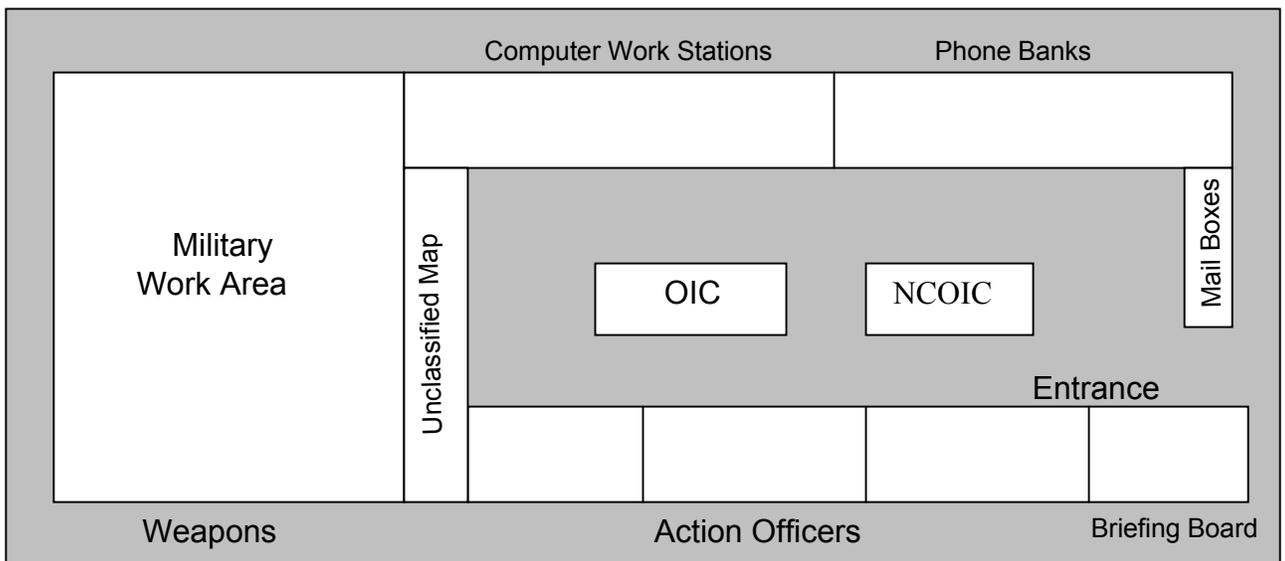
G4 - Coordinated logistics, support needed

PAO - Assist in providing Command statements

SJA - Legal Review

Chaplain - Provide Cultural/Religious information

Engineer - Construction



Sample CMOC Layout



Host Nation Support (HNS)

Wartime Host Nation Support (WHNS)

- **Formal** -HNS is established by treaties in order to provide CSS to units in both peace and wartime. *WHNS* exists only in Korea and is refined during wartime. The formal process for WHNS is called “preplanned WHNS”; items agreed upon are reasonably assured of being available.
- **Informal** – (Broken Field Running) is the process of locating the resource and contracting for the item as needed. Under WHNS this is called “unforeseen requests”; these include requests that were previously disallowed.
- **Functional Area Proponents(FAPs)** – All unit requests are submitted through normal channels. The staff “FAP” (i.e. G1 for personnel, G4 for supplies) will forward requests that cannot be filled to their respective higher “FAP”s.
- **CA units and CMOCs** – will identify and report resources using hasty assessments reports as part of normal operations. The information will be forwarded to the CMOC and FAPs for use in the planning process.
- **G5** - has staff responsibility to assist the FAPs by coordinating with HN and local suppliers to facilitate the acquisition of requested resources.



Protective Target List(PTL)



- The Corps G5 will compile a Corps level PTL. No Fire Areas will be recommended for the following criteria:
- Locations that if damaged or destroyed would effect the ability of the Corps to complete its mission. These sites will normally remain on the PTL unless destroyed.
- Examples are:
 - Weapons of Mass Effects (WME) Sites
 - Facilities (i.e. chemical plant, dams) that if damaged would cause WME.
 - Monuments/buildings identified by the host nation or international authorities of significant importance.Subordinate MSCs will review the ROE. Any additional areas (as per Corps guidance, normally categories of buildings/facilities) may be nominated/added on their PTL.
- These would normally be areas that if damaged or destroyed would effect the MSC's ability to complete missions or cause unnecessary damage/injuries.
- MSC G5/S5s will establish NFAs around Dislocated Civilian (DC) Collection Points or DC Assembly Areas when established.
- The G5 will coordinate with the FSE to insure the PTL is input into AFATDS.



CMO – Support and Stability Operations (SASO)



- CMO during SASO is focused on restoring/establishing a viable political and economic system that deters future combat, strengthens the democratic process and supports moral and legal imperatives.
- The focus is on getting the local/national government to assume responsibility for its population. CA units will coordinate with NGOs/IOs in order to provide the resources and expertise as needed.
- SASO will vary in intensity in the Corps AO depending on the amount of maneuver damage/combat operations that occurred.
- Support Operations include:
 - Providing temporary shelter
 - Providing water, food, emergency medical
 - Protecting civilians/existing infrastructure
 - Restoring damaged infrastructure
- Stability Operation Considerations include:
 - Leveraging interagency, joint and multinational cooperation
 - Enhance the capabilities/legitimacy of the HN
 - Display the capability to use force in a non-threatening manner, applying force selectively and discriminately



PAO



D.5

PUBLIC AFFAIRS



Public Affairs



- **Aggressively tells the Phantom Corps Story through:**
 - **Media Facilitation**
 - Embedding and/or Escorting News Media Representatives (NMR) with Corps Troops and Subordinate Units.
 - Conduct Press Conferences.
 - Conduct Interviews with Leaders, Subject Matter Experts (SME), and soldiers.
 - Produce Print and Audio-Visual, and Broadcast products for distribution to internal and external audiences.
 - **Command Information**
 - Produce a daily Field Newspaper.
 - Maintain home station WebPages.
 - Produce Print and Audio-Visual, and Broadcast products for distribution to internal and external audiences.
 - Produce Phantom 6 Sends and other communication products.
- **Actively Supports Information Operations and Perception Management:**
 - Proactively develops Crisis Communication Response Plans
 - Executes aggressive and focused Perception Management Campaign to support Commander's and higher HQ's Information Operation objectives.
 - Participative member of IO Cell.



Public Affairs

- **Develops Public Affairs Guidance (PAG) and communication strategies for the commander, staff, and subordinate units.**
- **Public Affairs Unit Augmentation. Doctrinally, the Corps will be augmented with several Public Affairs units that provide the personnel and equipment necessary to accomplish the PA mission. These units primarily come from the Reserve Component and include:**
 - **Public Affairs Operation Center (PAOC)**
 - **Mobile Public Affairs Detachment (MPAD)**
 - **Public Affairs Detachment (PAD)**
- **Media Operation Center (MOC) The Corps MOC will be co-located with the Corps MAIN CP and operated by the PAOC.**
- **For details on News Media Ground Rules, Media Escort Procedures, additional Public Affairs Guidance, and Public Affairs Reports, refer to the III Corps Public Affairs Office, Internal Tactical SOP.**



SOCOORD



D.6

SPECIAL OPERATIONS



Special Operations



SOCOORD

Mission. To plan, coordinate, and synchronize SOF missions in support of the Corps' shaping, close, and rear combat operations.

Organization. LTC (O5), SGM (E-9), MAJ (O4), CPT (O3).

Purpose. To provide a focal point to the SOF C4I structure for synchronizing Special Operations activities in support of Corps missions.

Functions.

- Advise the Corps commander and staff regarding
 - ARSOF capabilities and limitations
 - COA for utilizing ARSOF
 - SOCCE relationship and capabilities
- Develop SOF target nominations, and staff planning mission requirements at Corps level
- Provide staff supervision for a SOCCE
- Coordinate with SOF at EAC



Special Operations



SOCCE

- SF Company (B team) acting as C2 element for SF Bn ODAs
- TACON to Corps; present at the Main CP
- Staff supervision exercised by SOCOORD
- Maintain SOF Situational awareness
- Deconflict A2C2 issues at Corps for SOF aviation assets
- Ensure ODA safety - coordinate NFAs w/ FSE / ECC OPS
- Provide limited intelligence analysis to Corps G2
- Populate Corps ASAS RWS data base with SFODA SITREPs
- Conduct Jump ECC operations
- Deploy an LNO package to divisions as required



SJA



D.7

ROE



Staff Judge Advocate TAC



- Day:
 - One Officer/One NCO
- Night:
 - One officer/One NCO
- Positions are METT-TC dependent
- SJA will task organize to support Mission



Staff Judge Advocate MAIN



- Day:
 - CMD-LSS: COL (O-6); (O-4 Ops Attny Back-up)
 - I/O LSS: Attny (O3)
 - ECC: Attny (O3)
- Night:
 - CMD LSS: Ops-Attny (O4)/(O3) back-up
 - I/O LSS: Attny (O3)/NCO
 - ECC:Attny(O3)/NCO
- Positions are METT-TC dependent
- Corps SJA will task organize to support mission



Staff Judge Advocate Rear



C-ROC DAY SHIFT

Deputy SJA (05)

Judge Advocate (03)

C-ROC NIGHT SHIFT

Judge Advocate (03)

Judge Advocate (03)

ADDITIONAL PERSONNEL (Based on METT-T-C)

Sergeant Major (E9)

Legal Administrator (W4)

Chief, Criminal Law (05)

Chief, Administrative Law (05)

Chief, Claims (05)

Paralegal NCO (E7)

Court Reporter (E7)

Court Reporter (E6)

Paralegal Specialist (E4)

Paralegal Specialist (E3)

Trial Judiciary

Military Judge (06)

Paralegal NCO (05)

Trial Defense Service

Senior Defense Counsel (04)

Defense Counsel (03)

Paralegal NCO (E5)

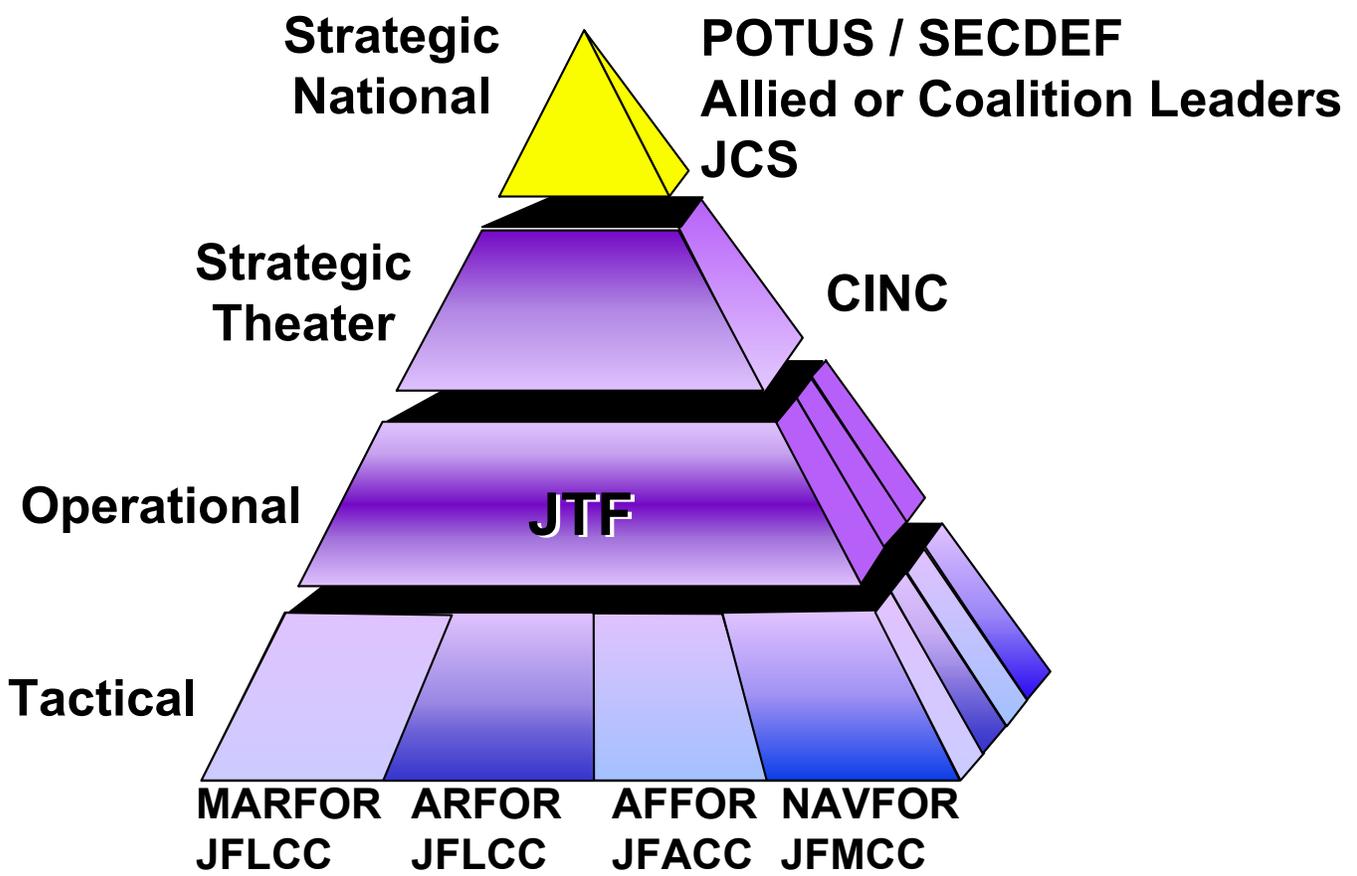
Paralegal Specialist (E3)



Rules of Engagement



ROE Process





Rules of Engagement

- ROE are mission specific: refer to base order for the rules governing the current operation
- “ROE are directives issued by competent military authority to delineate the circumstances and limitations under which its own naval, ground, and airforces will initiate and/or continue combat engagement with other forces encountered. They are the means by which the president, the Secretary of Defense, and operational commanders regulate the use of armed force in the context of applicable political and military policy and domestic and international law.”

– *Joint Pub 1-02, Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms*

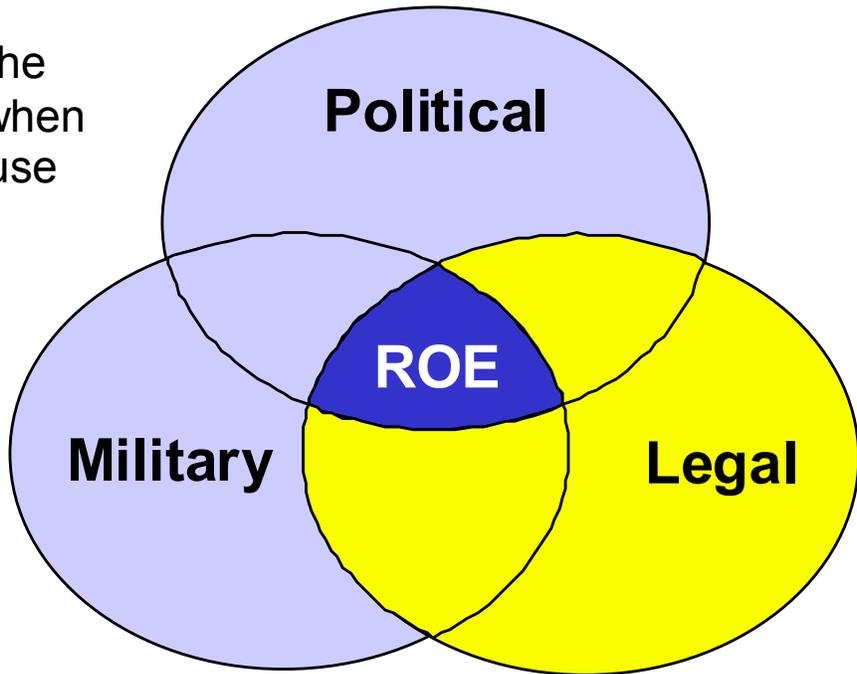


Rules of Engagement



Purpose

ROE delineate the circumstances when US forces may use force





Rules of Engagement



- The rules of engagement are usually phased dependent upon the operation.
- Typical phases include:
 - Deployment
 - Pre-hostilities/RSOI/tactical security
 - Hostilities
 - Post-Hostilities.



Rules of Engagement



- The ROE must provide (at a minimum) guidance in the following areas:
 - Weapons limitations/restrictions
 - Geographical limitations/constraints
 - Legal Basis for Operations
 - Hostile Forces/Actors (if any)
 - Entry into territorial airspace, land and waters of adjacent countries (ex: CSAR)



III ARMORED CORPS

PHANTOM FURY FH REG 525-30

PART E - REPORTS

TACSOP JUNE 2002



III CORPS TACTICAL SOP

PART E - REPORTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS



- PART C – BATTLEFIELD FUNCTIONAL AREA OPERATIONS
 - C.1 INTELLIGENCE / SURVEILLANCE / RECONNAISSANCE
 - C.2 MANEUVER
 - C.3 FIRE SUPPORT
 - C.4 AIR DEFENSE
 - C.5 MOBILITY, COUNTER-MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY
 - C.6 SERVICE AND SUPPORT
 - C.7 COMMAND AND CONTROL

- PART D – ENABLING OPERATIONS
 - D.1 NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE
 - D.2 MILITARY POLICE
 - D.3 INFORMATION OPERATIONS
 - D.4 CIVIL MILITARY OPERATIONS
 - D.5 PUBLIC AFFAIRS
 - D.6 SPECIAL OPERATIONS
 - D.7 ROE



G2



C.1

INTELLIGENCE/ SURVEILLANCE/ RECONNAISSANCE



ISR Reports



- INTSUM
- Graphic INTSUM
- INTREP
- BDASUM
- MDCISUM
- CEM
- RSR
- RFI
- Interrogation Report



Intelligence Summary (INTSUM)



1. (U) ACE, III(US)Corps

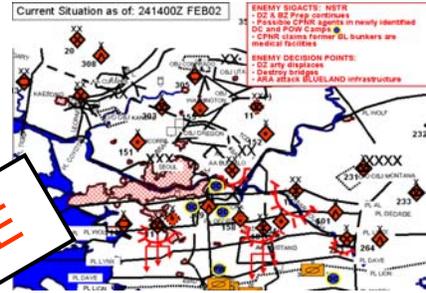
2. (U) PHANTOM LIGHTNING 02-05, INTSUM 02 DTG: 242000ZFEBO2

3. (U) Period Covered: 240800ZFEBO2 – 242000ZFEBO2

4. (U) Executive Summary: No significant changes to enemy battle plans since 0800 INTSUM. In the III Corps zone, OSC-1 (70%) continues to conduct an area defense with a purpose of defense to deny III Corps crossings of the HAN RIVER. To our east, OSC-3 (70%) is conducting a defense to deny against TROBA. To the rear of OSC-1, OSC-2 (80%) defends vicinity the former military demarcation line. Recent intelligence indicates the activation of OSC 6 in PYONGYANG IOT control militia and defend the capitol, freeing up OSC-5 (80%) for possible reinforcement of forward OSCs. In the Corps zone, OSC-1 is composed of four divisions and four separate brigades, to include 11 MID (70%), 12 MTRZD (70%), 14 ID (80%), 18 MTRZD (70%), 303 MIB (70%), 305 TB (65%), 309 ATB (70%) and the 401 ATB (70%). Additionally, the 263 IN (70%) and the 231 MIB (70%) (formerly of OSC-3) are now assessed to be reinforcing OSC-1. SPF CDO activity in the Corps zone is expected to increase as the Corps begins the EUSA counteroffensive. ARA terrorists have executed civilians in TONG DU CHON (CG2997), and are assessed to be planning attacks on BLUELAND infrastructure in the Corps zone. Several new enemy equipment capabilities have been identified, primarily associated with enemy air defense radar systems and an increased range (4 km) on thermal sites associated with enemy MANPADS. All CDO units have LTD (Laser Target Designators) and will use them for directing PGM (Precision Guided Munitions) and TBM strikes.

5. (U) Current Assessment. OSC-1 continues to conduct an area defense with a purpose of defense to deny III Corps south of the HAN RIVER. In the Disruption Zone (DZ), the 18 MTRZD and elements of 11 MECH DIV will defend south of the NAMHAN RIVER. The task is to delay and attrit enemy forces in the disruption zone to provide BZ forces 24-48 hours of defensive/battle position improvement. In the SACR/ICD zone, the 18 MTRZD continues to defend to deny (East of HWY 45) against enemy forces of the BZ. The 18 MTRZD is arrayed with the 181 BTG (70%) and the 182 BTG (70%) forward contact force vicinity YONGIN and ICHEON respectively and the 183 BTG (70%) back as the force. Infantry BNs are defensively oriented along primary LOCs (HWYs 3, 4, 5, 37, 42, 45, 33, 383) leading to the NAMHAN RIVER. The 185 ARTY REGT (70%) is dispersed in BTY-sized elements throughout the 18 MTRZD AO. In the 49AD zone, an element of the 11 MID will defend south of (West of HWY 45) in order to deny link up with CDC forces. This element consists of at least a reinforced brigade's worth of combat power and may consist of up to a Division(-). In the Battle Zone (BZ) the 14 ID will defend to deny IOT defeat enemy river-crossing operations along the NAMHAN RIVER. The 263 IN (CG8524), assessed to be task organized to the 12 MTRZD, anchors the NAMHAN RIVER defense in the east. The 231 MIB (CG9164), postured along HWY 5 to the rear of the 12 MTRZD, will likely be used as a CATK force to defeat penetrations of the BZ. The 303 MIB (CH2201) and 305 TB (CH3520) remain defensively dispersed along likely Attack Axis in order to conduct CATKs to defeat penetrations of the BZ or as an exploitation force. Additional elements of the 11 MECH Division are assessed to be located North of the PUKHAN RIVER. It is assessed OSC-1 has pushed forward CF radars in support of the disruption zone. Short-term seismic intrusion sensors emplaced prior to the evacuation of former BLUELAND command and control bunkers have reported the presence of dismounted personnel in all of those

facilities. The absence of any vehicular traffic however suggests that the intrusions are either search parties seeking intelligence or possibly efforts to establish CPA command and control facilities.



SAMPLE

6. (U) Next 24-Hour Assessment. OSC-1 continues its defense to deny as III Corps attacks the OSC disruption zone. OSC-3 continues defense to deny against TROBA to our east. Disruption zone forces (18th DTG and 11 MECH DIV elements) will continue to disrupt III Corps forces. The 154 FAB (CG 7015) and 158 MRL BDE (CG 4921) will conduct supporting fires in support of the disruption zone fight. In the Battle Zone, 14 ID and 12 MTRZD (Defend to Deny) will continue to conduct position improvement and obstacle emplacement north of the HAN and NAMHAN Rivers. Expect OSC-level engineers (321 ENG BDE) to withdraw from the DZ into the BZ to support this effort. OSC reserves will remain dispersed in assembly areas well north. The 155 MRL BDE may fire long-range artillery fires on identified HVIs in III (US) Corps AO, but we assess they will be held in reserve for future OSC-level IFC operations. The 310 ICAR may attack with one squadron of attack helicopters in support of an artillery strike or a rapid penetration of 18 MTRZD. FW assets from CPAF can also be expected to support this attack. The enemy has prepared all bridges in zone for demolition and will destroy them prior to III Corps forces reaching the rivers. Enemy SPF priority will be to identify III (US) Corps ME and possible Aviation AA. III (US) Corps can expect up to 68 SPF teams and 12 CDO platoons to already be operating in the Corps AO south of PL LION. ARA terrorists may attempt to destroy BLUELAND infrastructure IOT interdict III Corps forces by pushing DCs onto routes or by creating incidents that produce mass casualties that they will attribute to the U.S. Potential targets include the fertilizer plant via CHONGJU (CF 6755), herbicide plant via JOCHWON (CF4653), or

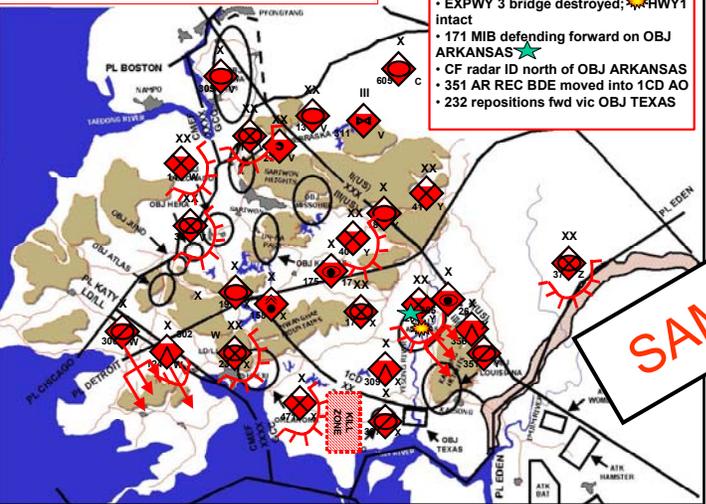
	Corps	MSC's
Published at	0800/2000	0600/1600
Produced by	IPS	
Dissemination	Homepage/ TACLAN	TACLAN
Format	MS Word	MS Word
Required info	Current Assess	
	24/48 Hr Assess	



Graphic Intelligence Summary (INTSUM)



III Corps Graphic INTSUM as of 280200JAN02



Recent Significant Activity

- EXPWY 3 bridge destroyed; HWY1 intact
- 171 MIB defending forward on OBJ ARKANSAS
- CF radar ID north of OBJ ARKANSAS
- 351 AR REC BDE moved into 1CD AO
- 232 repositions fwd vic OBJ TEXAS

ENEMY SITUATION/ SCHEME MANUEVER as of 241400Z FEB 02

OSC 1: Defend to deny crossings of the Han / Namhan River Line.
Sit: No significant changes to enemy battle plans since 0800 INTSUM. OSC-1 battle zone defense is anchored by 14ID (70%) in the Iron Triangle north of the Han River, and the 12th DTG (70%) north of the Namhan River. 303MX (70%) and 231MX (70%) brigades are positioned to the rear of the 14ID and 12th DTG respectively. IOT counterattack penetrations of the river line. 18th DTG (70%) conducts delay in the disruption zone south of the Namhan. Location of the 11 MECH Div (70%) is unknown, but the bulk of the division has been reported south of Seoul. 305 AR BDE (70%) is the OSC reserve located west of OBJ Utah. There are now four DC Camps vic SUWON (CG 250320), KWANG-JU (CG 455421), HAN-NAM (CG 427554), ICHON (CG 617272), and one POW Camp vic YONG-IN (CG 405224) which may also contain CPNR agents. CPNR claims former BLUELAND C2 bunkers will be used for medical facilities. BLUELAND police in SEOUL have detected ARA-emplaced explosives on two railway bridges over the HAN RIVER in the CDC sector.

SAMPLE

Analysis: The commander intends for the disruption zone fight against the 18th DTG and the BTG in the west to last 36-48 hours. His intent is to use IOT and BCTs so that they are incapable of massing enough combat power to force crossings of the Han / Namhan River. Buying time for the battle zone divisions to develop extensive fortifications and obstacles. All bridges in the zone are to be kept intact but the enemy has chambered them for demolition and will not allow us to capture them. IFC will attempt river crossings. SPF / CDO elements will attack HVTs throughout the Corps zone, while BLUELAND infrastructure IOT interdict III Corps by displacing civilians onto our routes. ARA terrorists and CPNR will use the camps for concealment IOT collect information on U.S. forces, incite DCs to interdict LOCs, and provide sanctuary for HVTs.

Sit: 26 DTG (70%) defends from BN strong points in complex terrain, while 23 MECH DTG(-) (70%) counterattacks penetrations of 26 DTG.

Analysis: If TROBA is unsuccessful in penetrating 26 DTG, 23 DTG can counterattack into III Corps flank vic OBJ MONTANA with approximately 6 hours of warning.

Operational Assessment:
 SHC will assess III Corps as main effort
 OSC-1 capable of delaying in the disruption zone fight >24 hours
 OSC-3 counterattack into flank unlikely until III Corps crosses Namhan River

	Corps	MSC's
Published at	1400, 0200	N/A
Produced by	SIT ASSESS OB Tech	N/A
Dissemination	-Homepage for MSC's -TACLAN for higher HQ	N/A
Format	2 slide PPT pres	N/A
Required Info	12-24 Hr Assess	N/A
	Sketch of current sit	



Intelligence Report (INTREP)



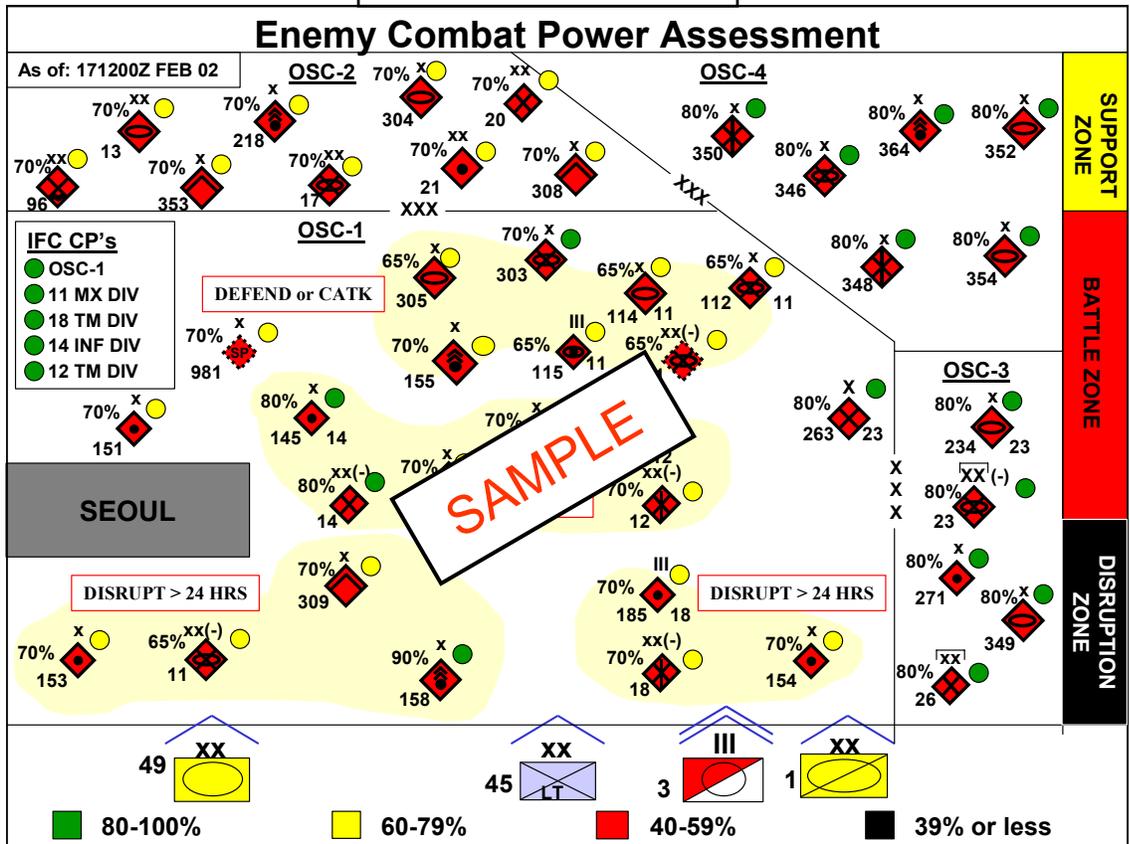
	Corps	MSC's
Published at	1400, 0200	N/A
Produced by	SIT ASSESS OB Tech	N/A
Dissemination	-Homepage for MSC's -TACLAN for higher HQ	N/A
Format	2 slide PPT pres	N/A
Required Info	12-24 Hr Assess	N/A
	Enemy Situation/ Scheme Maneuver	



Battle Damage Assessment Summary (BDASUM) (1/3)

- Four parts to BDA Summary
 - Power point slide
 - Ground forces Excel Spreadsheet
 - Air forces Excel Spreadsheet
 - Facilities Status Spreadsheet

PPT Slide





Battle Damage Assessment



Summary (BDASUM) (2/3)

Ground Forces

UNIT	SUBUNIT CA CODE	MAN	DIV	MACOM	STR	EQUIPMENT	MTOE QTY	CURRENT	STARTEX
111 MECH INF BDE	MAN	INF	11TH	OSC-1	32%	T-90 125mm (Main Battle Tank)	31	10	31
111 MECH INF BDE	MAN	INF	11TH	OSC-1	92%	BMP-3 Armored Personnel Carrier (14.5mm / 7.62 Machine Gun)	142	130	142
111 MECH INF BDE	MAN	INF	11TH	OSC-1	56%	2S23 Self-Propelled Artillery (Combination Howitzer-Mortar)	18	10	18
111 MECH INF BDE	MAN	INF	11TH	OSC-1	61%	KBR-3000 30mm AT Rocket Launcher (AT14)	18	11	18
111 MECH INF BDE	MAN	INF	11TH	OSC-1	50%	AT-13 ATGM Launcher	6	3	6
111 MECH INF BDE	MAN	INF	11TH	OSC-1	100%	SA-18 Grouse Man-Portable Surface-to-Air Missile System	6	6	6
111 MECH INF BDE	MAN	INF	11TH	OSC-1	100%	2S1 122MM Self-Propelled Artillery (Track)	6	6	6
111 MECH INF BDE	MAN	INF	11TH	OSC-1	50%	CROTALE-NG	6	3	6
111 MECH INF BDE	MAN	INF	11TH	OSC-1	82%	SA-18 Grouse Man-Portable Surface-to-Air Missile System	73	60	73
111 MECH INF BDE	MAN	INF	11TH	OSC-1	74%	AT-13 ATGM Launcher	27	20	27
111 MECH INF BDE	MAN	INF	11TH	OSC-1	94%	2S1 122MM Self-Propelled Artillery (Track)	18	17	18
111 MECH INF BDE	MAN	INF	11TH	OSC-2	79%	UNIT AVERAGE	351	276	351

SAMPLE

	Corps	MSC's
Published at	0600	N/A
Produced by	0500	N/A
Dissemination	Homepage/ TACLAN	N/A
Format	PPT	N/A
Required info	Current Enemy Unit BDA Status	
	12Hr Assess	



Battle Damage Assessment



Summary (BDASUM) (3/3)

Air Forces

UNIT	UBUNIT CA CODE	TYPE	MACOM	STRENGTH	EQUIPMENT	MTOE	CURRENT	STARTEX
310 CBT AVN RGT	AVN	CBT	OSC-1	80%	MI-24 HIND F	40	32	32
310 CBT AVN RGT	AVN	CBT	OSC-1	80%	MI-24 HIND F	20	16	16
310 CBT AVN RGT	AVN	CBT	OSC-1	83%	MI-24R (NBC RECON)	6	5	5
310 CBT AVN RGT	AVN	CBT	OSC-1	83%	MI-24K (PHOTO RECON)	6	5	5
310 CBT AVN RGT	AVN	CBT	OSC-1	83%	BO-105	6	5	5
310 CBT AVN RGT	AVN	CBT	OSC-1	AVERAGE		78	63	63
311 CBT AVN RGT	AVN	CBT	OSC-1	80%	MI-24 HIND F	40	32	32
311 CBT AVN RGT	AVN	CBT	OSC-1	80%	MI-8MT HIP	20	16	16
311 CBT AVN RGT	AVN	CBT	OSC-1	83%	MI-24R (NBC RECON)	6	5	5
311 CBT AVN RGT	AVN	CBT	OSC-1	83%	MI-24K (PHOTO RECON)	6	5	5
311 CBT AVN RGT	AVN	CBT	OSC-1	83%	BO-105	6	5	5
311 CBT AVN RGT	AVN	CBT	OSC-1	81%	AVERAGE	78	63	63
313 CBT AVN RGT	AVN	CBT	OSC-1	80%	KA-50 HOKUM	40	32	32
313 CBT AVN RGT	AVN	CBT	OSC-1	80%	MI-8MT HIP	20	16	16
313 CBT AVN RGT	AVN	CBT	OSC-1	83%	MI-24R (NBC RECON)	6	5	5
313 CBT AVN RGT	AVN	CBT	OSC-1	83%	MI-24K (PHOTO RECON)	6	5	5
313 CBT AVN RGT	AVN	CBT	OSC-1	83%	BO-105	6	5	5

Facilities Status

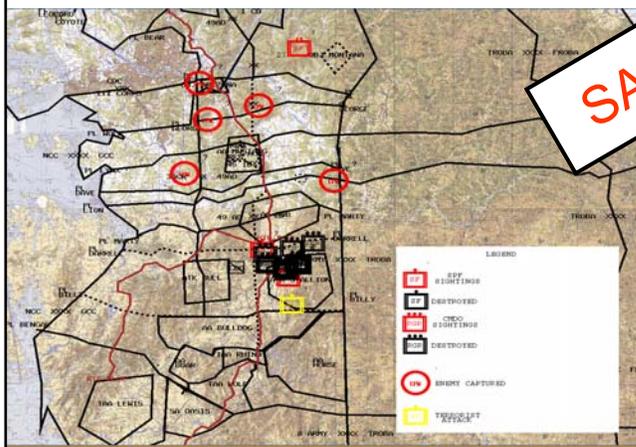
FACILITY	STATUS	LOCATION	NAI	BE#	SCHEDULED COLLECTION
SELECT BRIDGES (not an all inclusive list)					
Han River Bridges (in III Corps Zone)					
Hwy 43 to Hwy 6 Bridge and Lock	FMC	CG 450568	293	0380PFX293	
HWY 45 to Hwy 6 Bridge over Dam (co-located with Hydro-electric plant)	FMC	CG 479547	304	0380PFX304	
Namhan River Bridges (from SW to East)					
HWY 329 to HWY 6 at YANGP'YONG	FMC	CG 667495	52	0380PFX047	
Hwy 383 Bridge	FMC	CG 705405	52	0380PFX052	
Hwy 37 Bridge at YOJU	FMC	CG 800285	53	0380PFX053	Corrected Grid--Update NAI & TGT Deck
EXPWY 4 Bridge	FMC	CG 832240	54	0380PFX054	
Pukan River Bridges (from SW to NE)					
Lower Pukan River (vicinity confluence with the Han River)					
Hwy 6 Bridge	FMC	CG 505555	57	0380PFX057	
Hwy 6 N. Spur	FMC	CG 510569	58	0380PFX058	Corrected Grid--Update NAI & TGT Deck
Rail Bridge	FMC	CG 512577	59	0380PFX059	



Multidiscipline Counter Intelligence Summary (MDCISUM)



1. (U) MDCI, ACE, III (US) Corps
2. (U) PHANTOM LIGHTING 02, MDCISUM 11 DTG: 281700Z FEB02
3. (U) Period Covered: 280500Z JAN02 – 281700Z FEB02
4. (U) Executive Summary.
 - a. (U) There has been 35 SPF teams and 10 CDO platoons sighted within the last 12 hours. Of these, 7 SPF teams and all CDO platoons were destroyed. The large increases in SPF sightings was due to the insertion of 27 SPF Teams of the 3251 Separate SPF BN of OSC 1. ARA activity is continuing throughout the Corps AI. A prominent ARA financial supporter and a well known Islamic fundamentalist were seen in Bangkok, Thailand. The ARA member then boarded a plane for Incheon with a possible design to develop a RF Weapon and a Transient Electromagnetic Device.
5. (U) Summary of Enemy Activity.



SAMPLE

SIZE	ACTIVITY	LOCATION	TIME	REMARKS	
1 3 7	22 PERSONNEL	MOVING N.	CF705662	0257	1 MANPACK, 1 SA-18
1 3 8	8 TROOPS	CAPTURE D	CG412341		2 X NCO; 6 X ENL
1 3 9	12 TROOPS	CAPTURE D	CG885074		2 X NCO; 10 X ENL
1 4 3	OPS	CAPTURE D	CG321115		2 X NCO; 10 X ENL
1 4 2	13 TROOPS	CAPTURE D	CG607398		1 XOFF; 2 X NCO; 10 X ENL
1 4 3	372 PERSONNEL	RESEEDING ENEMY FLOT	EAST OF THE PUKAN TO OBJ MONTANA	0630	31 AN-2 COLTS MADE 4 INSERTION RUNS, TOTALING THE EQUIVILANT OF 1 SPF BN NATIONAL LEVEL US INTEL ORGANIZATION REPORTED A KNOWN ISLAMIC FUNDAMENTALIST TRYING TO ACQUIRE UNCONVENTIONAL WEAPON
1 4 4	ARA	SEEKING UNCONVENTIONAL WEAPONRY	BLUELAND		
1 4 4	4 CMDO PLT'S	DESTROYED	CF7069 2 X CF7472 CF6970	0905	CMDO PLTN'S ATTACKED 89TH MP'S

	Corps	MSC's
Published at	0400	N/A
Produced by	0300	N/A
Dissemination	Homepage/ TACLAN	N/A
Format	5 slides PPT	N/A
Required info	Status of Corps Rear Situation Enemy SOF SIT	
	12Hr Assess	466



Collection Emphases Message (CEM) (1/2)



III CORPS COLLECTION EMPHASIS MESSAGE

DATE: 29 JAN 2002
FROM: III CORPS
TO: 8th US Army

0000
SUBJ: EXERCISE PHANTOM THUNDER 02 III CORPS CEM, 30 JAN (ITO FD)

SUMMARY: COLLECTION EMPHASIS MESSAGE (CEM) 30 JAN (ITO FD) FOR EXERCISE PHANTOM THUNDER 02. THIS REPORT IS FOR THE PERIOD OF 300600-310559(S) JAN 02. THIS REPORT WILL BE SUPPLEMENTED AS REQUIRED.

1. III CORPS PRIORITY INTELLIGENCE REQUIREMENTS (PIRs).

- A. PIR 1 (U) Where is the OSC-Y IFC headquarters and when will it next concentrate fires against the LCD or 3ACR? LTIOW: H+96
- B. PIR 2 (U) When & what enemy chemical capable units will attack III Corps rear area/ bridge crossing sites? LTIOW H+96
- C. PIR 3 (U) What are the locations of enemy artillery/ MRL forces (158 MRL, 265 SP ARTY, & 175 ARTY) and their associated UGFs that can engage III Corps vic Kang Hts and Yesong crossing sites? LTIOW: H+46
- D. PIR 4 (U) When and what enemy units (265 ARTY, 405 SP ARTY, 18 AR BDE) will conduct a strike to defeat LCD? LTIOW: H+128
- E. PIR 5 (U) When will OSC-C (69 MECH DIV) or 13 AR DIV counterattack III Corps northern boundary vicinity Pyongson? LTIOW: H+84
- F. PIR 6 (U) Will LAGADO destroy the fertilizer plant in vicinity DC Camps at Sinchon (In order to blame U.S. for a mass casualty event)? LTIOW: H+128
- G. PIR 7 (U) Where will the 33rd MECH DIV position its' ARMOR (334 AR BDE and ARTILLERY (335 SP ARTY ARTY REGT) to block 49th AD toward OBJECTIVE COLORADO? LTIOW: H+96
- H. PIR 8 (U) What enemy forces are on air assault OBJ Kansas? LTIOW: H+96

2. III CORPS INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS (IRs).

- A. What III Corps MSRs, bridges, rail networks, pipelines and sustainment areas, airfield and ports, APOD/SPODS, APOE/SPOES are targets of direct action by SPF/CDO Forces?
- B. When and where will the enemy forces use WMD in the vicinity of the rear area/bridge crossing sites, MSRs, supply hubs and sustainment areas?

- A. When and where will displaced civilians, refugees, and enemy sympathizers impede the logistical flow and mobility throughout LOCs and built up areas with emphasis on rail, pipeline, and MSRs?
- B. When and where will the SHC commit air insertion, airborne assaults, or attack helicopter assaults onto the III (US) Corps rear area?
- C. Where will the LAPP and other anti-US organization conduct terrorist strikes?
- D. What is the status of HWY1/EXP 3 bridges?
- E. Where is the concentration of the engineer effort of the 26 IN DIV?
- F. Where will the 18th SAB be committed against LCD bridgehead?
- G. Where will the 174th AR BDE be committed against LCD bridgehead?
- H. When will the 405th and 265th ARTY REGT units leave UGFs and where is the 3rd BN of the 27th ARTY BDE?
- I. When will the SHC commit the operation reserve (13th AR DIV (OSC-V) to envelop III CORPS rear area/ bridge crossing sites? LTIOW H+72



- J. When will the SHC commit the strategic reserve (24th and 2AR Divisions) (OSC-R) to conduct a strike against III CORPS? LTIOW H+148

- HIGH PAY-OFF TARGETS (HPTS)
- A. FACILITY: UGFs: 405/265/235/175 FAR, 275/158 MRL BDE, 235/271 FAR.
 - B. C2: National Communications Node (SATCOM), OSCs V, R, U, IFCs, MCPs, FWD CPs.
 - C. RSTA: SPF, UAVs, ARK-1, BL904, LAPP, MI-24K/Rb(Photo/Chem Recon), BO-105.
 - D. EN: CM (Mine laying, Ditcher), Survivability (Dozer, Crane Shovel)
 - E. NBC: Chem Support Units
 - F. ADA: S-10 (Clam Shell), SA-11 (Fire Dome), SA-12 (Bill Board), SA-6 (Land Roll), S-60 (Flat Face), KS-19, (Fire Can).
 - G. FS: SCUD-B/SS-21 (End Tray) (156 SSM BDE), 9A52 (300mm) (275 ARTY BDE), 9P140 (220mm), IL220, G6/5 (155mm), 2A36, 2A65 (152mm) (27 ARTY DIV), BM-21/PRIMA (122mm), FARPS, Rotary Wing Assets, Airfields, OSC O, V, X FWD ARTY CPs.
 - H. MVR: T-90, IFCs, T-80, Type 99, BMP-3/2, 4P149 (AT-6), AMX-10P (HOT), OSCs V, R, W, S MCPs, FW CPs.
 - I. CSS: CL III/V bulk storage and transportation hubs.
- EN: Mobility assets (BAT-M, PMP), Pontoons, GSP Ferry, ASLT XING BNS

•Serves as tasking to CORPS organic collectors (UAV, LRS, GRCS) and as request to Higher Headquarters with taskings for collection to subordinate units



Collection Emphases Message (CEM) (2/2)



	Corps	MSC's
Published at	2359	N/A
Produced by	CMD asst CMO	N/A
Dissemination	Homepage/ TACLAN	N/A
Format	1-2 pages MS Word doc	N/A
Required info	Current Corps Collection focus	
	24Hr Assess	



Requests for Information (RFI)



Requests for Information (RFI)



- Collection, management, and dissemination (CM&D) will provide the following:
- DTG received at III Corps
 - III Corps RFI #
 - Agency tasked/DTG tasked/POC/Suspense
 - Response
 - Classification
 - DTG answer was obtained
 - DTG requester was notified
 - Individual notified
 - Means of transmission



Requests for Information (RFI)



The requester must provide the following information:

- Subject
- Requirement type (exercise or operation name)
- Requestor contact information (unit /number)
- Requestor email/phone # (if required)
- Requestor location office/date (if required)
- DTG of request
- Latest time information is of value (LTIOV)
- Area(s) of interest. (list by country/countries)
- Frequency that information is needed
- Media desired
- Highest product classification
- Narrative (be specific)
- Purpose



- Used to obtain information from higher HQ
- Generate planning and execution of a collection mission or analysis of data base information
- Submitted G2 Ops, G2 Sanct, or CM&D in Main CP
- Can be sent via : ASAS-RWS, Homepage, STU-III, TACFAX, or TACLAN



Interrogation Report



A. Name of Prisoner: _____.

B. Interrogator: _____.

C. Personal Particulars:

- Rank, full name, service number, and position, date and place of birth:
- Unit, formation, or organization, DTG/place/grid ref of capturing unit and circumstances of capture:

D. Assessment of Intelligence:

- Intelligence, experience, reliability, specialist knowledge:

E. Documents/equipment, intelligence interest carried at time of capture:

E. Summary of information obtained.

- Individual, Crew served weapons, vehicles, food/water, communications equipment medical, NBC Equipment

F. Miscellaneous.

- Radio Frequencies, call Signs, passwords
- Obstacles: _____.

SAMPLE

	Corps	MSC's
Published at	As required	As req
Produced by	IPW Team	IPW
Dissemination	1 hour after interrogation complete	1 Same
Format	Interrog Form	Same
Required info	Security class is TOP SECRET when completed	
	Completed Form	



G3 TACOPS



C.2

MANEUVER



G3 TACOPS



C.2.2

OPERATIONS



REPORTS



REPORTS MATRIX

TIME (Hood)	Higher HQ	III CORPS	MSCs
0100(S)			
0200(S)	Receive Graphic INTSUM (G2)	Publish Graphic INTSUM (ACE)	
0300(S)		Receive Medical Reports from MSCs	Send Medical Reports from MSCs
0400(S)	Receive CDR's SITREP (G3)	Submit CDR's SITREP (G3)	
		Receive Ops Update (G3)	Submit Ops Update (G3)
		Receive RSR from MSCs (ACE)	Submit RSRs (ACE/G2/S2)
0500(S)		Receive BDASUM from MSCs (ACE)	Submit BDASUM (ACE/G2/S2)
		BUB Input Due to III Corps (G3)	BUB Input Due to III Corps (G3)
0600(S)		Receive INTSUM from MSCs (ACE)	Submit INTSUM (ACE/G2/S2)
	8th Army BUB	-	-
	Shift Change (All)	-	-
0700(S)		III Corps BUB Slide Review (G3)	-
		BUB VTC Check	BUB VTC Check
0730(S)		III Corps BUB (CG)	III Corps BUB (CG)
		Receive Ops Update (G3)	Submit Ops Update (G3)
0800(S)	Receive INTSUM (G2)	Publish INTSUM (ACE)	Pull INTSUM (ACE/G2/S2)
		Shift Change (All)	-
0900(S)		Receive ACMR (G3 AVN)	Submit ACMR (A2C2)
0930(S)		Receive ITOs/NOTAMS (DOCC)	Submit ITOs/NOTAMS (FSE)
	Receive Ops Update (G3)	Submit Ops Update (G3)	-



REPORTS

REPORTS MATRIX

TIME (Hood)	Higher HQ	III CORPS	MSCs
1000(S)	Receive Ops Update (G3)	Submit Ops Update (G3)	
1100(S)			
1200(S)		Receive CRZ/UGF Report (G3) Receive Force Protection Report (G3)	Submit CRZ/UGF Report Submit Force Protection Report
		Inter-CP Conference Call (G3) (as required)	Inter-CP Conference Call (G3)
		Deep Ops Decision Brief (DOCC)	-
		Receive Ops Update (G3)	Submit Ops Update (G3)
1300(S)	Submit 8th Army SITREP to Higher (Fusion Cell)	Staff Huddle (Internal)	-
1330(S)		Corps Plans Team / LNO Update	Corps Plans Team / LNO Update
1400(S)	Receive Graphic INTSUM (G2)	Publish Graphic INTSUM (ACE) Review CG Slides for 8th Army BUB (G3)	Pull Graphic INTSUM (ACE/G2/S) -
		Issue Deep Ops WARNO (DOCC)	Receive Deep Ops WARNO (FSE)
1500(S)			
1600(S)	Receive Ops Update (G3) Publish Future Ops WARNO (Fires/Effects) Publish Deeps Ops FRAGO (Fires/Effects)	Submit Ops Update to 8th Army (G3) Receive Future Ops WARNO (DOCC) Receive Deeps Ops FRAGO (DOCC)	- - -
	Receive ITO/NOTAMS (Fires/Effects)	Submit ITO/NOTAMS to 8th Army (DOCC)	-
		Receive Ops Update (G3)	Submit Ops Update (G3)
		Receive RSR from MSCs (ACE)	Submit RSRs (ACE/G2/S2)
1700(S)	8th Army BUB (CG)	8th Army BUB (CG)	Submit BDASUM (ACE/G2/S2)
		Receive BDASUM from MSCs (ACE)	Submit BDASUM (ACE/G2/S2)



REPORTS

REPORTS MATRIX

TIME (Hood)	Higher HQ	III CORPS	MSCs
1800(S)	Publish INTEL Update (G2)	Receive INTEL Update from 8th Army (G2)	-
		Inter-CP Conference Call (G3) (as required)	Inter-CP Conference Call (G3)
		Receive INTSUM from MSCs (ACE)	Submit INTSUM (ACE/G2/S2)
		Receive ITOs/NOTAMS (DOCC)	Submit ITOs/NOTAMS (FSE)
	Publish Airspace Control Order (A2C2)	Receive Airspace Control Order (G3 AVN)	-
		Publish Airspace Order (G3 AVN)	Receive Airspace Order (A2C2)
		G2 Conference Call	G2 Conference Call
	Receive Corps BDASUM (G2)	Publish Corps BDASUM (ACE)	Pull Corps BDASUM (ACE/G2/S2)
1900(S)	Shift Change (All)	-	-
2000(S)		Receive Ops Update (G3)	Submit Ops Update (G3)
		F-2 Go/No-Go Decision Brief (DOCC)	-
	Receive INTSUM (G2)	Publish INTSUM (G2)	Pull INTSUM (ACE/G2/S2)
2100(S)		Staff Shift Change (All)	-
		Receive CEM from MSC (ACE)	Submit CEM (ACE/G2/S2)
2200(S)	Receive Ops Update (G3)	Submit Ops Update (G3)	-
2300(S)			
2400(S)		Inter-CP Conference Call (G3) (as required)	Inter-CP Conference Call (G3)
		Receive Ops Update (G3)	Submit Ops Update (G3)
	Receive CEM (G2)	Publish CEM (ACE)	Pull CEM (ACE/G2/S2)



OPERATIONS



REPORTS

- **COMMANDER'S SITREP**
- **OPERATIONAL UPDATE**
- **COUNTER RECONNAISSANCE ZONE (CRZ) REPORT**
UNDERGROUND FACILITY (UGF) REPORT
HARDENED ARTILLERY SITE (HART) REPORT
- **REQUEST FOR INFORMATION**

UNIT	6. UNIT GRID (6 digit)	7. NBC (MOPP Level)	8. CDRS EVAL (G/A/R/B)	9. BATTLE RESOURCES (G/A/R/B) Green = 100-80% / Amber = 79-60% / Red = 59-40% / Black = Less than 40%				9e. COMMO (G/A/R/B)
				CRITICAL SHORTAGES			9d. PERSON NEL (G/A/R/B)	
				9a. CLASS III	9b. CLASS V	9c. CLASS VII		
MSC								
1BCT								
2BCT								
3BCT								
AVN								
CAV								
FA								
10. COMMANDER'S ASSESSMENT (ability to accomplish mission / specific concerns / issues): N/A								
11. REPORT POINT OF CONTACT.								
11a. NAME: TBD			11b. RANK: TBD			11c. DNVT / DCO NUMBER: TBD		

OPERATIONAL UPDATE

UNIT ID: TBD	CLASSIFICATION: TBD	DTG: TBD	AS OF: TBD				
1. ENEMY ACTIVITY: TBD		2. MISSION: TBD					
3. FRONT LINE TRACE: TBD							
4. CENTER OF MASS GRID: TBD	5. TAC CP GRID: TBD	6. MAIN CP GRID: TBD	7. REAR CP GRID: TBD				
8. CURRENT SITUATION (DISPOSITION & ACTIVITIES):							
9. UNIT STATUS (G/A/R/B) Green = 100-80% / Amber = 79-60% / Red = 59-40% / Black = Less than 40%							
MAJOR SUBORDINATE COMMAND	COMMANDER'S EVALUATION	COMBAT POWER	MOBILITY	COMMUNICATIONS	PERSONELL	AMMUNITION	MOPP LEVEL
TBD	G	G	G	G	G	G	G
SUBORDINATE UNITS	COMMANDER'S EVALUATION	COMBAT POWER	MOBILITY	COMMUNICATIONS	PERSONELL	AMMUNITION	MOPP LEVEL
1BCT	G	G	G	G	G	G	G
2BCT	G	G	G	G	G	G	G
3BCT	G	G	G	G	G	G	G
AVN	G	G	G	G	G	G	G
CAV	G	G	G	G	G	G	G
FA	G	G	G	G	G	G	G
10. COMMANDER'S ASSESSMENT (NEXT 24-48 HOURS): N/A							

REQUEST FOR INFORMATION

1. DTG: TBD	2. UNIT: TBD
3. STAFF SECTION SUBMITTING RFI: TBD	
4. REQUESTED INFORMATION. TBD.	
5. DTG of LTIOV (Latest Time Information Of Value): TBD	
6. SUBMITTED RFI POC	
6a. NAME:	6b. DNVT / DCO #:

TBD

TBD

RFI ANSWER

1. DTG: TBD	2. UNIT: TBD
3. STAFF SECTION ANSWERING RFI: TBD	
4. RFI ANSWER. TBD.	
5. ANSWERED RFI POC	
5a. NAME:	5b. DNVT / DCO #: TBD



G3 AVN



C.3.3

ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL – AVIATION



AVIATION and ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND and CONTROL (A2C2)



. PART C.3.3 AVIATION/A2C2

- AVIATION STATUS REPORT
- AVIATION STATUS REPORT FORM



AVIATION STATUS REPORT (AVSTATREP)



- GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS:
 - Use to present status of aviation forces and support assets.

- SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS:
 - Submit daily at 0600 and 1800 hrs.
 - Submit through G3 Air channels to the Deputy Aviation Coordinator (D/AVCOORD) at the Corps Main.
 - Submit information for all subordinate elements performing discrete mission tasks (i.e., an entire attack battalion may have deliberate attack cross-FLOT responsibilities while a second might have two companies assigned deliberate attack missions and a third providing support by fire/conducting hasty attacks during daylight hours). In the previous case, one task is listed for the first attack battalion and two for the second. Detached platoons and companies conducting autonomous operations must be reported separately. Those detached to another aviation headquarters will report through the new supported unit.
 - Fighter management data is collected for attack battalions only as a means of ensuring the corps' shaping attacks are synchronized. Attack helicopter assets tasked as the III Corps reserve will report fighter management to company-level. It is assumed that CS/CSS assets are equally distributed to day/night operations by subordinate units.
 - Enter all grids as UTM or six-digit grid coordinate with MGRS Grid Zone Designator
 - The D/AVCOORD will obtain aircraft status from G4 Maintenance in conjunction with already-scheduled reports



AIRSPACE CONTROL MEASURE REQUEST



LINE 1 - DATE AND TIME 250900LAPR00 (DTG)
 LINE 2 - UNIT 4ID(M) (Unit Making Report)
 LINE 3 - REQUESTING UNIT 1-4 ATKHB (Agency Requesting Airspace)
 LINE 4 - TYPE ROZ (Type of Airspace)
 LINE 5 - AIRSPACE 401 (Name of Airspace)
 LINE 6 - PURPOSE Shaping Attack C2 (Purpose of Special Use)
 LINE 7 - TRANSIT establish voice communications with Dragon Tango prior to penetration on frequency in LINE 16/17 (Transit Instructions)
 LINE 8 - FROM 272200LAPR00 (DTG to be Established)
 LINE 9 - UNTIL 280200LAPR00 (DTG Disestablished)
 LINE 10- AREA circle (Description of the Area to be Defined (Boundary or Circle)
 LINE 11- COORDINATES AB11112222 (UTM or Six-Digit Grid Coordinate With MGRS Grid Zone Designator)
 LINE 12- WIDTH/RADIUS 3 km (Width or Radius)
 LINE 13- LOWER surface (Lower Altitude of Designated Area to Nearest 100 Feet or Ground Level)
 LINE 14- UPPER 1000' (Upper Altitude of Designated Area to Nearest 100 Feet)
 LINE 15- CONTACT Dragon Tango (Call Sign of Control Agency)
 LINE 16- PRIMARY FH400 (Primary Frequency or Frequency Designator)
 LINE 17- SECONDARY FH401 (Secondary Frequency or Frequency Designator)
 LINE 18- NARRATIVE none (Free Text for Additional Information Required for Clarification of Report)
 LINE 19- AUTHENTICATION CPT Patterson (Report Authentication)

- Submit daily at 0900 hrs. Daily submission on, for example, D-Day, is for requested ACMs to be effective in conjunction with the D+2 ATO/ITO (i.e., ACMs submitted at 0900 hrs during ATO/ITO A will not go into effect until ATO/ITO C).
- Submission is required for all ACMs in some theaters. At a minimum, submit ACMRs to the CAE if affected airspace crosses the FSCL, any corps-level boundary, or extends above the coordinating altitude/coordination level.
- Submit requests to the CAE via ADOCS, TACLAN, GCCS-K, MSE/STU-III, or LNO teams.
- Blank request may be found in public folders.



ADE



C.4

AIR DEFENSE

ADA CDR's SITREP (page 1 instructions)

This report is generated by all subordinate units within III Corps with organic ADA units. The report is submitted as of 0500 and 1700 hours, and submitted NLT: **0600/1800 hours daily**.

In the **ADA location and status** area, list all battery-level units and sentinel radars, their location (center mass), and their missile status color coded. Also list air defense priorities.

In the **next 12 hours** area, write a concise narrative on how your unit is supporting the higher headquarters decisive, shaping and sustaining operations. Patriot units put any planned moves for the next 12 hours in this box as well.

In the **commander's notes** area, the unit commander will write a concise narrative about the critical AD fights in association with the higher headquarters operations.

The **AMDWS shot** at the bottom of the page is optional for SHORAD units. Units should provide an AMDWS shot of radar/unit coverage at the bottom.

ADA CDR's SITREP (page 2 instructions)

In the **significant events last 12 hours** box, give a concise narrative of all enemy air attacks, TBM strikes, chemical attacks, and key friendly OCA strikes. At the bottom, color code the PIR status IAW the Corps PIRs.

In the **next 12 hours** box, provide a concise narrative on expected enemy activity in the next 12 hours by frame type (TBM, RW, FW, UAV).

In the **IPB** bottom box, give any updated air IPB and any new NAIs / TAIs, or shifts in any of the air avenues of approach. Color coding also allows engagements by type to be placed on the map overlay.

Air Attack Summary Instructions

This report is submitted by all subordinate III Corps units with organic ADA units. Report is submitted as of 0500 / 1700 and reported NLT: **0600/1800 daily**. This report does not negate engagement reporting as the engagements occur. This report summarizes attacks (not individual sorties) by time, rather than submitting individual engagements. If there is an attack at 0517 hours with 4 TBMs and 3 RW aircraft, the reporting unit will summarize the results of the attack.

In the first column put the **time of the attack**, noting that if the time of attacks are separated by <10min they are considered simultaneous.

In the next columns, put the **number of air and missile frames** involved in the attack (i.e. TBM: 3, RW: 2, FW: 5, and UAV: 1).

In the next columns, break the **number of frames destroyed** down by type (i.e. TBM: 2, RW: 2, FW: 4, and UAV: 1).

In the next column list the **engaging unit(s)**.

In the **nomenclature/remarks** column list the nomenclature of frames involved in the attack (if available), their target (i.e. DSA, 2BCT river crossing site, Aviation AA), any known friendly BDA, and/or any other pertinent information.

Use the sum function (the sigma in the toolbar) to total the columns at the bottom of the document.

ADA LOCATIONS & STATUS

NEXT 12 HOURS

TF 1-1	Missiles	TF 3-2	Missiles
A/1-1	CG701203 GREEN	A/3-2	CF514096 BLACK
B/1-1	CG760076 GREEN	B/3-2	CF505175 GREEN
C/1-1	CG755163 GREEN	C/3-2	CF868315 GREEN
D/1-1	MOVING AMBER	D/3-2	CF370500 RED
E/1-1	CG464395 GREEN	E/3-2	CF491361 GREEN

3-200 ADA
 3-200 BN HQ – CF365310 Slant 0/36/24/6 **GREEN**
4-200 ADA
 4-200 BN HQ -- CF538364 Slant 0/36/24/6 **GREEN**
3-265 ADA
 3-265 BN HQ – CF899366 Slant 0/36/24/6 **GREEN**

AMD Priorities:

SHORAD

River Crossing Sites/Bridging Assets
 Aviation (Attack and Lift)
 Q37 and MLRS
 Maneuver (Main Effort)

PATRIOT

Assembly Areas
 River Crossing Sites
 Aviation (Attack and Lift)
 CL III/V (13th COSCOM)

DECISIVE OPERATIONS: TF1-1: A/1-1 ,C/1-1 will provide TBM protection to the NAMHAN river crossing in the 1CD sector as the Div penetrates the enemy battle zone on the farside of the river.

SHAPING OPERATIONS: E/1-1 and D/1-1 will position to provide AMD to the lead BCTs of 49AD as they cross in the NAM in the North and defend the DAM.

SUSTAINING OPERATIONS: TF 3-2: provides 4xBty's to cover Corps rear area, 13 COSCOM, CL III&V, 49th ID AVN

PLANNED MOVES:

<u>Unit</u>	<u>From PAAD</u>	<u>To PAAD</u>	<u>Time</u>
A/1-1	25	32	1100

COMMANDERS NOTES

III Corps focus and the critical Air Defense fights in the next 12-48 hours of operations.

AMDWS
 picture



SIGNIFICANT EVENTS LAST 12 HOURS

NEXT 12 HOURS

- Time:**
1100: 2 X sorties of 8 x SU-39s conducted strikes against the 1st CD front line elements that crossed the NAMHAN. This, in addition to 21 x KA-50 attacking to suppress forward movement of 1CD units.
- 1400:** 8 X SCUD B and 5 SS-21 strike 3ACR locations behind 1CD and 49AD. Text text text text text, etc. Text text text text text, etc.
- 1530:** 1 Shmel UAV destroyed by D/1-1. Text text text text text, etc. Text text text text text, etc. Text text text text text, etc.
- 1700:** No activity reported Text text text text text, etc. Text text text text text, etc. Text text text text text, etc.

- FW:** Expect 12 x Tornados, 12 x SU-27 and 6 x SU-25 conducting strikes against friendly maneuver Brigade sized elements as units enter Engagement Area on the north side of Namhan River crossing.
- RW:** Expect 12 x KA-50 Hokum (OSC2) and 18 x MI-24 (OSC 2)Hind to strike against friendly maneuver units at the Namhan River crossing.
- TBM:** Expect 8-10 SCUD Bs to target III Corps rear areas. 8-10 SS-21s will target Namhan River crossing site.
- UAV:** No UAV recon missions due to icy weather.
- SOF:** SOF will designate HVTs and request for fire on Patriot units, AVN assets and bridging assets.

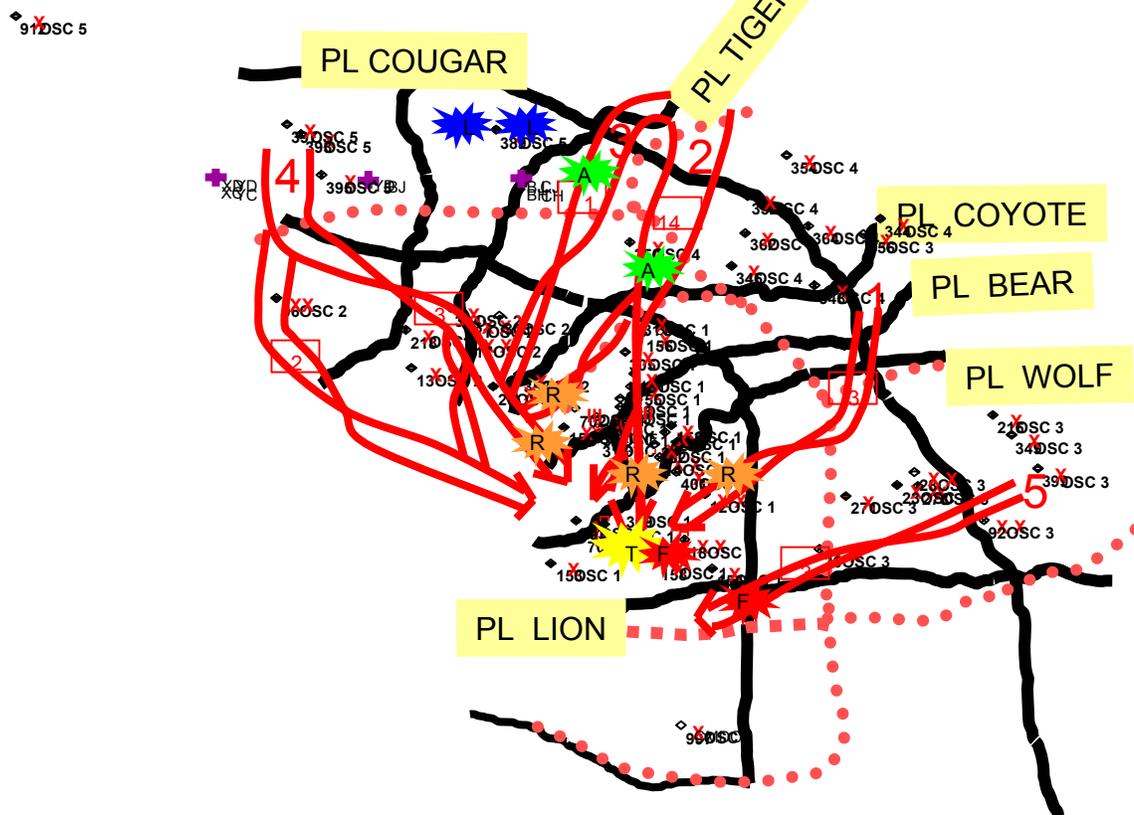
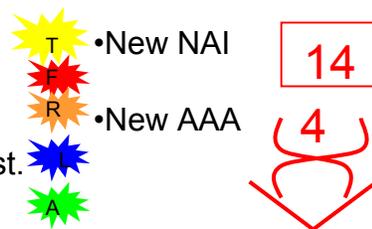
AIR Killed	In Corps	AO LAST 12 hrs.	Total Dest.	Remaining
FW		16	69	286/355
RW		29	72	155/227
TBM Engaged Dest LAST 12 hrs.		Total	Remaining	
SCUD B	8	64	UNK	
SS-21	8	46	UNK	

PIR STATUS

A	R	R	A	A	R
1	2	3	4	5	6

Legend:

- TBM Atk
- FW Atk
- RW Atk
- TBM Launcher Dest.
- En Airfield Hit
- New NAI
- New AAA





ENG



C.5

MOBILITY, COUNTER-MOBILITY, AND SURVIVABILITY



MOBILITY, COUNTER-MOBILITY, AND SURVIVABILITY REPORTS



- ENGINEER REPORT FLOW / MATRIX
- ENGINEER SITUATION REPORT (ENSITREP)
- ENGINEER SPOT REPORT (ENGSPOTREP)
- OBSTACLE PLAN / REPORT
- MINEFIELD REPORTS (MINEWARN) AND (MINEREC)
- RIVER CROSSING REPORT MATRIX
- TOPOGRAPHIC REPORT (TOPOREP)



MOBILITY, COUNTER-MOBILITY, AND SURVIVABILITY REPORTS



Report Flow

Reporting Unit:	Reports Sent To:	Information Copies To:
Corps Engineer Unit ATTACHED, DS or OPCON to MSC	MSC Engineer	420TH ENG BDE
Corps Engineer Brigade	Corps Engineer (REAR)	
Corps Engineer Unit (GS)	Corps Engineer BDE	Corps Engineer(MAIN)
MSC Engineer	Corps TAC Engineer	
Corps Topo Company	Corps Engineer Bde	Corps Engineer (REAR)
Corps Engineer (MAIN)	Engineer Higher HQ	Corps Engineer (TAC & REAR)

Engineer Reports Matrix

REPORT TITLE	SUMBMITTED		ARRIVE	
	BY	FREQUENCY	NLT	CONTENT
1. ENSITREP	MSC ENG Staff	Twice daily	0600 1800	Planning info & current status
2. ENGRSPOTREP	MSC ENG	Event Driven	ASAP	Critical event & engineer CCIR
3. OBSTACLE PLAN	MSC ENG	Daily	2400	Proposed / Emplaced & Enemy obstacles
4. MINEWARN / MINEREC	Emplacing MSC	Upon Planning and on Emplacement	ASAP	Intent to place minefield & Record of Minefield Emplaced.
5. TOPOREP	Topo units	Daily	0400	Topographical Data

Reporting Methods In Priority

- Maneuver Control System (MCS)
- All updated on the III Corps TACLAN K drive by units.
- Updated in public folder in MS Outlook under 3CENG REPORTS.
- TACLAN Email to III Corps Engineers.
- Telephonic
- Courier



MOBILITY, COUNTER-MOBILITY, AND SURVIVABILITY REPORTS



ENGINEER SITUATION REPORT

Due NLT 0600/1800

Green > 80%, Amber 60 to 79% Red 40 to 59%, or Black < 39%

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
Engineer Unit Type	COUNT	8 Digit Grid with GZ	Percent Committed	CDR's Overall assessment of mission capability.	AVAIL SOLDIERS	FMC ENG EQUIPMENT	METERS AFB	METERS MGB	AVLB	HDSB	EPACK MOPMS Reload	H-Pack MICLIC RELOAD	PACK Volc Reload
1 X DIV ENGINEERS			0%	G	G	G	0						
2 EN BN (H)			0%	G	G	G	0						
3 EN BN (W)			0%	G	G	G	0						
4 EN BN (M)			0%	G	G	G	0						
5 BRIDGE CO			0%	G	G	G	420						
6 CSE			0%	G	G	G	0						
7													
8 Commander's Narrative: Identify significant issues or problems. Include critical shortages on equipment and personnel. Give Grid Coordinates of AFB units assigned.													
9													

PART I. Force Capability.

Column A, Row 1	Unit Organic Engineer Assets
Column B, Row 1	Number of Each Type of Engineer Unit Listed
Column C, Row 1	8 Digit Grid Coordinate with Grid Zone Designator
Column D, Row 1	CDR's Subjective Estimate of Effort Committed
Column E, Row 1	CDR's Subjective Estimate of Ability to Complete Missions
Column F, Row 1	CDR's Subjective Estimate of Soldiers Available
Column G, Row 1	CDR's Subjective Estimate of Engineer (ERC A/P) Equipment FMC
Column H, Row 1	Meters of AFB Excluding Ramps (In Water and Out) FMC.
Column I, Row 1	Meters of MGB Excluding Ramps FMC.
Column J, Row 1	Number of AVLBS FMC.
Column K, Row 1	Number of HDSBs FMC.
Column L, Row 1	Number of MOPMs Reloads On Hand.
Column M, Row 1	Number of MICLICs On Hand.
Column N, Row 1	Number of Volcano Reloads On Hand.

PART II Commander's Narrative. Use to identify significant issues or problems. Include critical shortages on equipment and personnel.



MOBILITY, COUNTER-MOBILITY, AND SURVIVABILITY REPORTS



ENGINEER SPOT REPORT

MSC EN staffs submit the ENGRSPOTREP to the Corps TAC CP ASAP. The purpose is to provide information for a CCIR, PIR, FFIR or of particular EN operational importance.

CONTENT.

a. Free text messages for a major change in location, mission, resource constraint, OPFOR engagement, or failure/impending failure to accomplish any engineer mission.

b. 6-line message format as follows:

- (1) Line ALPHA. Mission/Event.
- (2) Line BRAVO. Location.
- (3) Line CHARLIE. Time of event.
- (4) Line DELTA. Unit.
- (5) Line ECHO. Supported unit.
- (6) Line FOXTROT. Free text information.

Environmental Hazards

All Environmental Hazards such as spills beyond the division level capability to remediate must be addressed in a SPOT report.

Significant potential Environmental Hazards such as Fuel pipelines, Oil Wells etc within the division AO must be reported using the commander's SITREP.



MOBILITY, COUNTER-MOBILITY, AND SURVIVABILITY REPORTS



OBSTACLE PLAN / REPORT

- **FORMAT:** Primary: MCS-L, Secondary: Spreadsheet with boundaries of both obstacle zones and obstacle belts identified by name followed by grid coordinates. Individual obstacles are identified under their respective zone/belt.
- **FASCAM:** Minefields MUST have a projected self-destruct time identified. Approval for proposed SCATMINE minefields terminates when the minefield exceeds its self-destruct time. If the FASCAM minefield is still necessary, the MSC Engineer must resubmit a new request.

1-4		5	6	7	8-9	10-11	12														
OBSTACLE #								START	END	LIFE CYCLE				LANE BREACH / BYPASS							
HQ	Zone	Belt	Grp	Type	#	STATUS	TYPE MINES	Corner Point 1	Corner Point 2	Corner Point 3	Corner Point 4	SAFETY ZONE	DTC	DURATION	Over-watch Unit	FRONT	DEPTH	FENCE	BREACH BYPASS START	BREACH BYPASS END	EMPLACING UNIT
ENOC001	A			MF	M1	/	U	CH99999999	CH99999999	CH99999999	CH99999999	U		Unknown	900m	180m			CH0999999999	CH0999999999	A/8
COO1	D			MT	M15	/	AT/AP	YC99999999	YC99999999	YC99999999	YC99999999	250	280800 Jan 02	48	B/99 EN	650	250	N			USAF

B--Bridge Demolition		W--Wire Obstacle	
BA	Abutment	WA	Double apron
BS	Span	WB	Booby-trapped
BC	Abutment and span	WF	Tanglefoot
M--Minefield/Munition Field		WG	General-purpose, barbed tape
MD	Disrupt	WN	Nonstandard
MT	Turn	WR	Road block
MF	Fix	WT	Triple standard
MB	Block	R--Road Crater	
MN	Nonstandard	RH	Hasty
MP	Protective	RD	Deliberate
MQ	Nuisance	RM	Mined
MS	Standard pattern	M--Miscellaneous	
S--Scatterable Minefield/Munition Field		AD	AT ditch
SA	ADAM	AR	Rubble by CEV gun
SP	PDM	AB	Rubble by blade
SB	Gator	AT	Abatis
SR	RAAM	AE	Rubble by explosives
SF	ADAM and RAAM	AM	Movable MOBA obstacle (car, bus)
SM	MOPMS	AN	Expedient nonstandard
SV	Volcano	AL	Log crib, log obstacle
H--Hand-Emplaced Munitions		AP	Post obstacle (hedgehog, tetrahedron)
HH	Hornet	AH	Log hurdle
HS	SLAM		

• MSC Engineer submits proposed obstacle plans to the CORPS ENGINEER SECTION at the TAC CP for Corps G3 review. Obstacle Plan consists of all obstacles proposed by the MSC during the next 72 hours for 48 hour or less. Plans must be submitted NLT 144 hours (6 days) for 15-day duration.



MOBILITY, COUNTER-MOBILITY, AND SURVIVABILITY REPORTS



SCATMIN WARN / REC REPORTS

Purpose: To advise friendly units of intent to emplace mines and a record report of mine employment--applicable to all FASCAM and conventional emplacement systems.

SCATMINWARN														SCATMINREC											
1-4 5 6 7 8-9 10-11 12																									
OBSTACLE#														LANE BREACH / BYPASS											
START														END						LIFE CYCLE					
HQ	Zone	Belt	Grp	Type	#	STATUS	TYPE MINES				Safety Zone	DTG	DURATION	Over-watch Unit	FRONT	DEPTH	FENCE	BREACH BYPASS START	BREACH BYPASS END	EMPLACING UNIT					
ENC001	A			MF	M1	X	U	CH99999999	CH99999999	CH99999999	CH99999999	U		Unknown	900m	180m		CH0999999999	CH0999999999	A/8					
CO01	D			MT	M15	+	AT/AP	YC99999999	YC99999999	YC99999999	YC99999999	250	280800 Jan 02	48	B/99 EN	650	250	N		USAF					

Character	Description
1 through 4	Alphanumeric description of the headquarters type and numerical designation that established the obstacle zone; character 1 designates the unit type with a letter: A = armor division or brigade I = infantry division or brigade C = cavalry division R = cavalry regiment Z = corps
5	Letter indicating the obstacle zone
6	Number indicating the belt number in the obstacle zone
7	Letter indicating the group in the obstacle belt
8 and 9	Letters indicating the obstacle type.
10 and 11	Two numbers indicating the obstacle number in the group
12	One of four characters indicating the obstacle status-- / = planned obstacle -- = obstacle being prepared
	+ = prepared obstacle (This sign is for reserve demolition targets and may indicate a readiness state of safe or armed.)
	X = completed obstacle



B-Bridge Demolition		W-Wire Obstacle	
BA	Abutment	WA	Double apron
BS	Span	WB	Booby-trapped
BC	Abutment and span	WF	Tanglefoot
M-Minefield/Munition Field		WG	
MD	Disrupt	WN	Nonstandard
MT	Turn	WR	Road block
MF	Fix	WT	Triple standard
MB	Block	R-Road Crater	
MN	Nonstandard	RH	Hasty
MP	Protective	RD	Deliberate
MQ	Nuisance	RM	Mined
MS	Standard pattern	M-Miscellaneous	
S-Scatterable Minefield/Munition Field		AD	AT ditch
SA	ADAM	AR	Rubble by CEV gun
SP	PDM	AB	Rubble by blade
SB	Gator	AT	Abatis
SR	RAAM	AE	Rubble by explosives
SF	ADAM and RAAM	AM	Movable MOBA obstacle (car, bus)
SM	MOPMS	AN	Expedient nonstandard
SV	Volcano	AL	Log crib, log obstacle
H-Hand-Emplaced Munitions		AP	Post obstacle (hedgehog, tetrahedron)
HH	Hornet	AH	Log hurdle
HS	SLAM		

GATOR MINEFIELDS REQUIRE NO LESS THAN 72 HOURS!



MOBILITY, COUNTER-MOBILITY, AND SURVIVABILITY REPORTS



RIVER CROSSING REPORT MATRIX

MSC's submit the River Crossing Report to the Corps TAC CP as soon as the first unit arrives at the Staging Area.

LINE #	UNIT ID		BRIDGE OR RAFT SITE	RELEASE POINT (RP)
	OR CONVOY #	STAGING AREA (SA)		
1	TIME/#VEH	TIME/#VEH	TIME/#VEH	TIME/#VEH
2				
3				
4				
5				
6				
7				
8				
9				
10				
11				

Unit ID or Convoy Number.
Self explanatory

Staging Area (SA). As soon as the first convoy enters the SA annotate the time and number of vehicles in the convoy.

Bridge or Raft Site. Confirm the time and number of vehicles that actually crossed.

Release Point (RP). Annotate the time and number of vehicles in the convoy as they clear the release point. At this time the units are no longer under the Crossing Area Commander/Engineer control.

MOBILITY, COUNTER-MOBILITY, AND SURVIVABILITY REPORTS



TOPOGRAPHIC REPORT

1. **Purpose:** Provide the Corps Engineer with accurate data on the status of topographic activities.

2. **SUBMISSION RESPONSIBILITY.** Topographic units organic, assigned, or attached to III Corps for combat operations & exercises.
 - a. Project number. Assigned by topographic unit.
 - b. Project title.
 - c. Requester.
 - d. Start date/due date. The suspense date is determined by the Corp Assistant Engineer, 555TH En Co (T) LNO, and requesting unit.
 - e. % Completed. Percent completion of the project.
 - f. Estimated time of completion. Estimated time when products are ready.
 - g. Automatic Data Processing (ADP) Equipment.
 - h. Cartographic equipment. Printing presses, cameras (by type) and linotronics digital film processors authorized/on hand/mission capable.
 - i. Terrain analysis equipment. Digital Topographic Support Systems – Heavy, Light, and Deployable. Authorized/on hand/mission capable.
 - j. Survey Equipment. Global Positioning System (GPS by type) and the Automated Integrated Survey Instrument (AIS). Authorized/on hand/mission capable.
 - k. Remarks. Address shortfalls and key issues.



G1/G4



C.6

SERVICE SUPPORT



G1/G4

SERVICE SUPPORT REPORT MATRIX

REPORT	SUBMITTED BY	SUBMITTED AS OF	ARRIVE NLT	NORMAL TRANS	NORMAL FENCE	ACTION ADDRESS
LOGSPOTREP	MSC	AS REQUIRED	ASAP	CSSCS	PP	CORPS G4 REAR CMMC
LOGSTATREP	MSC, SEPARATE BDE, CMMC, C ORPS G4	1200L & 2400L	1200 & 2400 1330 & 0130 1400 & 0200	CSSCS CSSCS CSSCS	OO OO OO	COSCOM MMC/ ACSMAT CORPS G4 (REAR, Main) USARCENT FWD AFRD- GDO
BULK POL RQMTS/FOREC AST	DMMCs, BMMCs, NON DIV MSCS	1800L	NTL 2400	CSSCS	OO	CMMC (CMMC WILL SUBMIT TO COMUSARECENT, AFRD-GDS NLT0800)
CLASS V DAILY STATUS	DIVISIONS, ACRs, ALL CSGs	1800L	2400L	CSSCS	OO	CMMC
CLASS VII GS	CMMC	1800L	2400L	CSSCS	OO	CORPS G4 REAR / MAIN
BATTLE LOSS REPORT	MSC, SEPARATES	ANY TIME	ANY TIME	CSSCS	OO	13TH CMMC
MEDICAL SUPPORT STATUS	DIV SURG, SEP BDE/REG MED BDE	1800L	2400L	CSSCS	OO	NEXT HIGHER HQ



LOGISTICAL REPORTS

LOG SPOT REPORT

- The purpose of the Logistics Spot Report (LOGSPOTREP) is to provide information of significant changes, actual or anticipated, to the current logistics/movement situation. Reports should contain information which has major impact on the short term operational capability of the reporting unit.
- LOGSPOTREPs will be submitted to III Corps G3/G4. The following circumstances are examples of situations which would warrant a LOGSPOTREP:
 - MSR DISRUPTION OR CLOSURE
 - OP. READINESS CHANGES +/- 10%
 - DS/GS SUPPLY STOCKS DESTROYED
 - AIRFIELDS ARE CLOSED
 - RAIL OR WATER WAY DISRUPTED



LOGISTICAL REPORTS LOG SPOT REPORT

- FROM:
-
- TO: Cdr, 13th COSCOM, ATTN: Corps Materiel Management Center
- III CORPS, ACofS, G4, Rear CP
- III CORPS, ACofS, G4, Main CP (Info)
- III CORPS, ACofS, G4, Assault CP (Info)
- Cdr, 13th COSCOM, ATTN: ACofS, Materiel (Info)
-
- **CLASSIFICATION:**
-
- **EXERCISE NAME:**
-
- SUBJECT: Logistics Spot Report (LOGSPOTREP)
-
- 1. Identify nature of event/critical situation. (Example: ESTIMATE LOSS OF 150,000 RDS 105MM TANK GUN AMMO BY ENEMY AIR.)
-
- 2. Indicate date/time group of event. (Example: 270100L)
-
- 3. Indicate grid location of event. (Example: DEPOT BRAVO FU777777)
-
- 4. Briefly describe the event impact and actions taken or requested. (Example: COMBAT EFFECTIVENESS OF CORPS TANK UNITS SERIOUSLY REDUCED UNTIL SUPPLY CAN BE EFFECTED. REQUEST PRE-PLANNED REALLOCATION OF AMMO BE EXECUTED ASAP.)



LOGISTICAL REPORTS

LOGISTICAL STATUS REPORT

- The Logistics Status Report (LOGSTATREP) is designed to provide III Corps Commander a daily summary of both positive and negative logistic developments which could significantly affect the conduct or outcome of current or planned operations.
- When Submitted: Twice Daily as of 1200 and 2400 hours Local, covering the previous 12 hour period. Report is due NLT 1330 and 0130 Local, following the “as of” time. The 13th COSCOM CMMC will consolidate MSC reports and submit a Corps LOGSTATREP to the Corps G4 NLT 1400 and 0200 Local following the “as of” time with an information copy to 13th COSCOM, G4.



LOGISTICAL REPORTS

LOGISTICAL STATUS REPORT -CSSCS

- **REPORT CONTENT.** Units with CSSCS capability will ensure their CSSCS Boxes are set to auto-send/forward the report at the required times IAW Message Handling Tables. Format is preset in the CSSCS box itself. If available the III(US)Corps automated Excel Spreadsheet format replaces the format below. If CSSCS or the III(US)Corps automated Excel Spreadsheet format are not available the format that follows is required:
 - ORIGINATOR
 - ADDRESSEE
 - INFO ADDRESSEE
 - CLASSIFICATION
 - LOGSTATREP/REPORT NUMBER/"AS OF" DATE/TIME
 -
 - a. PART 1: COMMANDER'S LOGISTIC ASSESSMENT.
 - b. PART 2: DATA SECTIONS.



LOGISTICAL REPORTS



LOGISTICAL STATUS REPORT 1 OF 3

- FROM: **Commander, Fictional unit (this IS an example)**
-
- TO: Cdr, 13th COSCOM, ATTN: Corps Materiel Management Center
- III Corps, ACofS, G4, Rear CP (Info)
- III Corps, ACofS, G4, Main CP (Info)
- III Corps, ACofS, G4, Assault CP (Info)
-
-
- **CLASSIFICATION: Secret when completed**
-
- **EXERCISE NAME: Warfighter I**
-
-
- SUBJECT: Logistics Status Report (LOGSTATREP) as of:
-
- 1. **Part I, Commander Assessment: I believe My unit is 100%**
- 2. **Part II, Data Sections:**
-
- a. **Subsistence Data (Applies only to units with organic DSUs/GSUs or separates):**
-
- (1) **Population Supported: 10,000**
-
- (2) **Class I Data:**
-

TYPE	BAL O/H	DS DOS	DS DOS	GS DOS	GS DOS	PROJ ISSUE	PROJ RECEIPT
RAT	MEALS	STKG	OBJ ON HAND	STKG	OBJ ON HAND	NEXT 48 HRS	NEXT 48 HRS
T	10	30,000	20	100,000	100	5	300
MRE	300	100	10	100	20	4	200



LOGISTICAL REPORTS



LOGISTICAL STATUS REPORT 3 OF 3

- g. **Status of Class IX Repair Parts** (critical shortages are identified in Commanders Assessment):

QUANTITY REQUISITION SUPPLY

<u>NSN</u>	<u>NOMENCLATURE</u>	<u>END ITEM</u>	<u>REQUIRED</u>	<u>NUMBER</u>	<u>STATUS</u>	<u>ISSUE</u>
------------	---------------------	-----------------	-----------------	---------------	---------------	--------------

—

—

- h. **Water Supply Data** (Applies only to units with organic DSUs/GSUs or separates) :

(1) Equipment Status:

<u>TYPE</u>	<u>OPERATIONAL</u>	<u>GRID</u>	<u>MAX DAILY</u>	<u>STORAGE</u>
<u>EQUIP.</u>	<u>YES / NO</u>	<u>LOCATION</u>	<u>PRODUCTION (GAL)</u>	<u>CAPACITY (GAL)</u>

—

(2) Water Status:

<u>TYPE</u>	<u>BALANCE</u>	<u>DS DOS</u>	<u>DS DOS</u>	<u>GS DOS</u>	<u>GS DOS</u>	<u>DAILY</u>
<u>WATER</u>	<u>ON HAND (GAL)</u>	<u>STKG OBJ</u>	<u>ON HAND</u>	<u>STKG OBJ</u>	<u>ON HAND</u>	<u>RQT (GAL)</u>
POTABLE						
NON-POTABLE						
BOTTLED						

3. POC for this LOGSTATREP is



LOGISTICAL REPORTS

BULK PETROLEUM REQ/ FORECAST REPORT

- PURPOSE: To provide TAMMC with status of Class III within 13th COSCOM and serve as a daily bulk requisition.
- SUBMITTED: DAILY “AS OF” 1800 NLT 2400.
- Transportation mode time frames are as shown in the table below. CSGs and divisions are the only units that can request delivery from barge or rail.

<u>MODE</u>	<u>LEAD TIME</u>
Barge	120 hours/5 days
Rail	72 hours/3 days
Truck	48 hours/2 days
Pipeline	24 hours/1 day



LOGISTICAL REPORTS



BULK PETROLEUM REQ/ FORECAST REPORT

- FROM:
- TO: Cdr, 13th COSCOM, ATTN: Corps Materiel Management Center
- III Corps, ACoFS, G4, Rear CP (Info)
- Cdr, 13th COSCOM, ATTN: ACoFS, Materiel (Info)

• **CLASSIFICATION:**

• **EXERCISE NAME:**

• SUBJECT: Bulk Petroleum as of:

• 1. **Part I - OVERALL PRODUCTS STATUS AND REQUIREMENTS**

• a. ON-HAND

<u>PRODUCT</u>	<u>GALLONS</u>	<u>DAYS OF SUPPLY</u>	<u>RECEIPT</u>
----------------	----------------	-----------------------	----------------

- JP4
- JP8
- JET-A-1
- MOGAS
- DIESEL

• b. REQUIREMENTS: FORECAST AS OF (DTG)

• (1) DAY 1 (CALENDAR DATE)

<u>PRODUCT</u>	<u>GALLONS</u>	<u>TRANS MODE</u>	<u>LOCATION</u>	<u>RECEIVING UNIT</u>
----------------	----------------	-------------------	-----------------	-----------------------

- JP4
- JP8
- JET-A-1
- MOGAS
- DIESEL



LOGISTICAL REPORTS



BULK PETROLEUM REQ/ FORECAST REPORT

(2) DAY 2 (CALENDAR DATE)

- PRODUCT GALLONS TRANS MODE LOCATION
RECEIVING UNIT
- JP4
- JP8
- JET-A-1
- MOGAS
- DIESEL
-

(3) DAY 3 (CALENDAR DATE)

- PRODUCT GALLONS TRANS MODE LOCATION
RECEIVING UNIT
- JP4
- JP8
- JET-A-1
- MOGAS
- DIESEL
-

2. PART II - REMARKS

- A general summary of the effect of product deficiencies on combat and planned operations. Provide a short narrative of mission impact, by location of any fuel damage/limitation.



LOGISTICAL REPORTS

DAILY CLASS V REPORT

- **PURPOSE:** To provide the ammunition commodity managers with the status of Class V in the III Corps.
- Initial complete report due upon declaration of military vigilance (DMV). Daily changes as of 1800L, due NLT 2400L.



LOGISTICAL REPORTS

DAILY CLASS V REPORT

- FROM:
-
- TO: Cdr, 13th COSCOM, ATTN: Corps Materiel Management Center
- III Corps, ACoFS, G4, Rear CP (Info)
- Cdr, 13th COSCOM, ATTN: ACoFS, Materiel (Info)
-

- **CLASSIFICATION:**
-

- **EXERCISE NAME:**
-

- SUBJECT: Status of Class V Stocks
-

- 1. AS OF (DTG).
-

- 2. ASP XXXX
-

- DODIC STOCK OBJ QTY REQUIRED RECEIPT ISSUES END OH

- C445

- C449

- C454
-

- 3. ASP XXXX
-

- DODIC STOCK OBJ QTY REQUIRED RECEIPT ISSUES END OH

- C445

- C449

- C454
-

- 4. REMARKS:
-

- a. ASP WILL CLOSE (DTG).
- b. NEW LOCATION NDXXXXXX.
- c. SHIP TO NEW LOCATION EFF (dtg)



LOGISTICAL REPORTS

CLASS VII GS REPORT

- PURPOSE: To provide Corps G4 with the Status of Class VII command controlled items issued and available for issue to Corps units.
-
- SCOPE: The 13th COSCOM will track and report the status of command controlled items in a timely manner. III Corps G4 is responsible for the briefing the Corps Command Group and coordinating any decision required for the issue of command controlled items.



LOGISTICAL REPORTS

CLASS VII GS REPORT

- FROM: CDR, 13TH COSCOM//LOCATION//CMMC//

- .

- TO: CDR, III(US)CORPS REAR//LOCATION//G4
- CDR, III(US)CORPS MAIN//LOCATION//G4

- .

- (EXERCISE NAME)

- .

- CLASSIFICATION

- RELEASE TO NATO ADDRESSES AS NATO
(CLASSIFICATION)

- .

- SUBJECT: CLASS VII GS STOCKS

- .

- 1. STATUS OF COMMAND CONTROLLED CLASS VII
GS STOCKS ARE LISTED BELOW:

- .

	START	24 HR	CUMM			
<u>NOMEN</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>	<u>ISSUE</u>	<u>ISSUE</u>	<u>DUE IN</u>	<u>QTY</u>	<u>RFI</u>

- .

- .

- NOTE: RFI = READY FOR ISSUE

- .

- 2. POC AND TELEPHONE NUMBER FOR THIS
HEADQUARTERS IS



REPORTS

BATTLE LOSS REPORT

- **FORMAT FOR BATTLE LOSS EQUIPMENT**
 - FROM
 - TO CDR, 13TH COSCOM, CMMC
 - CDR , III CORPS REAR, G-4
 - CDR, III CORPS MAIN, G-4

- CLASSIFICATION: CONFIDENTIAL WHEN COMPLETED.
- SUBJECT: REQUEST FOR BATTLE LOSS EQUIPMENT REPLACEMENT

- 1. XXXXXX- LINE NUMBER FOR LOST EQUIPMENT/ NOMENCLATURE
- 2. 00000 – QUANTITY LOST
- 3. QTY AUTHORIZED / QTY ON HAND
- 4. GGGGG – CUMULATIVE QTY LOST BUT NOT YET REPLACED
- 5. DDD DODAAC AND DOCUMENT NUMBER FOR THE QUANTITY REQ.
- 6. POC AND TELEPHONE NUMBER

NOTE: REPORT CAN BE SUBMITTED AT ANY TIME.



MEDICAL SUPPORT STATUS



1. DTG: TBD	2. UNIT: TBD		
3. UNIT SUBMITTING REPORT: TBD			
4. MEDICAL STATUS (G/A/R/B) Status is based upon AVAILABILITY of that Medical BOS -Green = 100-80% / Amber = 79-60% / Red = 59-40% / Black = Less than 40%			
	CURRENT STATUS	24-48 HOUR STATUS	48-72 HOUR STATUS
OVERALL STATUS	G	G	G
SURGICAL HOURS	G	G	G
HOSPITAL BEDS	G	G	G
EVACUATION ASSETS	G	G	G
CLASS VII & BLOOD	G	G	G
5. III CORPS SURGEON'S ASSESSMENT: TBD			
6. REMARKS: TBD			



UMT REPORTS

- CSSCS/TACLAN is the primary UMT reporting mechanism.
- Reports will be submitted to UMT at C-ROC.
 - #1(Theater Marshaling Report) is due NLT 12 hours after MSC UMT arrives in theater.
 - #2 (SITUATION REPORT) SITREP is due daily NLT 1800.
 - #3 (Weekly Religious Support Summary) due NLT 2400 Tuesday for the preceding Monday 0001-Sunday 2400.
 - #4 (Significant Events Report) due as soon as possible after event.



UMT THEATER MARSHALING AREA (TMA) CLOSING REPORT

REPORT #1

WHO REPORTS: All MSC UMTs closing in TMA

LINE 1: MSC UMT HQ: DTG:

LINE 2: % CHAPLAINS ARRIVED IN TMA:

LINE 3: % CHAPLAIN ASSISTANTS ARRIVED IN TMA:

LINE 4: ISSUES HINDERING RELIGIOUS SUPPORT OPERATIONS:

LINE 5: ASSESSMENT OF UNIT STATUS:



MSC UMT 24-HOUR SITUATION REPORT (SITREP)



REPORT # 2.

Report begins when MSC UMT arrives in TAO and stops when MSC UMT departs TAO. Report by line number and coded response:

LINE 1: MSC UMT HQ: DTG
LINE 2: PRIORITY OF RELIGIOUS SUPPORT NEXT 24 HOURS:
A-Nurturing the Living
B-Casualty Care E-Crisis Intervention CED
C-Honoring the Dead F-Ministry to UMTs
D-Battle G-Other

LINE 3: CHAPLAINS # AUTHORIZED/# ASSIGNED/ # PRESENT FOR DUTY

LINE 4: CHAPLAIN FAITH GROUP BREAKOUT:
PROTESTANT / # CATHOLIC / # ORTHODOX / # JEWISH / # MUSLIM

LINE 5: CHAPLAIN ASSISTANTS # AUTHORIZED/# ASSIGNED/ # PRESENT FOR DUTY

LINE 6: CHAPLAIN LOSSES LAST 24 HOURS: List the Units that lost their Chaplain

LINE 7: CHAPLAIN ASSISTANT LOSSES LAST 24 HOURS: List the Unit

LINE 8: CHAPLAIN REPLACEMENTS LAST 24 HOURS: List the Unit receiving Chaplain

LINE 9: CHAPLAIN ASSISTANT REPLACEMENT LAST 24 HOURS: List the Unit

LINE 10: ASSESSMENT OF UNIT MORALE:



MSC UMT WEEKLY RELIGIOUS SUPPORT SUMMARY (WRSS)



REPORT #3.

LINE 1: MSC UMT HQ: DTG:

LINE 2: NUMBER OF WORSHIP SERVICES CONDUCTED/NUMBER OF ATTENDEES:

LINE 3: NUMBER OF MEMORIALS CONDUCTED/NUMBER OF ATTENDEES:

LINE 4: NUMBER OF SOLDIERS COUNSELED:

LINE 5: NUMBER OF SOLDIERS VISITED:

LINE 6: NUMBER OF CASUALTIES VISITED:

LINE 7: ASSESSMENT OF UNIT MORALE:

LINE 8: MINISTRY TO NON-ORGANIC UNITS IN AOR:



MSC UMT SIGNIFICANT EVENTS REPORT (SER)

REPORT # 4.

Required when any of the following occur: Loss of UMT for more than 24 hours; A MASCAL; NBC Casualties; A Reported or Rumored War Crime; when a Unit goes RED in Personnel Status; An asymmetric threat (assessed or actual) targeting religious personnel, sites or structures in AO. Any other time that the MSC UMT deems necessary.

LINE 1: MSC UMT HQ: DTG:

LINE 2: SITUATION:

LINE 3: IMPACT ON RELIGIOUS SUPPORT OPERATIONS:

LINE 4: IMMEDIATE ACTION TAKEN:

LINE 5: REQUEST FOR SUPPORT:

LINE 6: RECONSTITUTION / REGENERATION ISSUES:

LINE 7: NARRATIVE OF UMT INTERACTION WITH CIVIL MILITARY OPERATIONS CENTER (CMOC):



PART D - REPORTS



ENABLING OPERATIONS

- **NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE**
- **MILITARY POLICE**
- **INFORMATION OPERATIONS**
- **CIVIL MILITARY AFFAIRS**
- **PUBLIC AFFAIRS**
- **SPECIAL OPERATIONS**
- **ROE**



CHEM



D.1

NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE



CHEMICAL



<u>REPORT TITLE</u>	<u>SUBMITTED BY</u>	<u>AS OF TIME</u>	<u>TRANSMIT TIME</u>	<u>ACTION ADDRESSEE</u>	<u>ADDITIONAL ADDRESSEE</u>
NBC 1	MSCs	ATTACK TIME	AS NEEDED	CORPS NBCC	ADJACENT SUBORDINATE
NBC 2-6	MSCs	AS REQUIRED	AS REQUIRED	CORPS NBCC	ADJACENT SUBORDINATE
NBC CLEAR LANE REPORT	MSCs	AS REQUIRED	AS REQUIRED	CORPS NBCC	ADJACENT SUBORDINATE
CHEMICAL DOWNWIND MESSAGE	CORPS NBCC	EVERY SIX HOURS	EVERY SIX HOURS	MSCs	ADJACENT SUBORDINATE
NBC SITUATION REPORT	MSCs	0430 1630	0500 1700	CORPS NBCC	ADJACENT SUBORDINATE
NBC SUMMARY REPORT	CORPS NBCC	0630 1830	0800 2000	MSCs	HIGHER CORPS STAFF ADJACENT SUBORDINATE



CHEMICAL

NBC SITUATION REPORT FORMAT

DTG OF REPORT	NBC THREATCON NUC BIO CML	MIN MOPP LEVEL	UNIT RES

1. OPERATIONAL IMPACT OF ENEMY NBC USE DURING REPORTING PERIOD:
2. ENEMY STRIKES OCCURRING DURING THIS REPORTING PERIOD:

<u>STRIKE SER #</u>	<u>DTG OF ATTACK</u>	<u>LOCATION</u>	<u>AGENT</u>

3. STATUS OF ORGANIC/SUPPORTING CHEMICAL UNITS
(TO COMPANY LEVEL, FOX TO SQD LEVEL)

UNIT	LOCATION	PERSONNEL STATUS	%	EQUIPMENT STATUS	%	CURRENT MISSION

4. DESCRIBE MAJOR NBC PERSONNEL & EQUIPMENT LOSSES/GAINS OCCURRING DURING THIS REPORTING PERIOD:
5. SIGNIFICANT CONCERNS/ PENDING ACTIONS FOR NEXT 24 HOURS:
6. MISSIONS PLANNED, ON-GOING, ACCOMPLISHED IN THE LAST 12 HOURS:
 - A. NBC RECON (to include BIDS):
 - B. SMOKE:
 - C. DECON:
7. ADDITIONAL COMMENTS:



CHEMICAL

NBC SUMMARY REPORT FORMAT

<u>DTG OF REPORT</u>	<u>NBC THREATCON</u> NUC BIO CML	<u>MIN MOPP LEVEL</u>	<u>RES STATUS</u>

1. OPERATIONAL IMPACT OF ENEMY NBC USE DURING REPORTING PERIOD:
2. ENEMY STRIKES OCCURRING DURING THIS REPORTING PERIOD:

<u>STRIKE SER #</u>	<u>DTG OF ATTACK</u>	<u>LOCATION</u>	<u>AGENT</u>

3. MAJOR CHEMICAL UNIT LOSSES OCCURRING DURING THIS REPORTING PERIOD:
4. NBC INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY:
 - a. NUCLEAR.
 - b. BIOLOGICAL.
 - c. CHEMICAL.
 - d. HAZFACs.
5. SIGNIFICANT CONCERNS FOR NEXT 24-48 HOURS:
6. SIGNIFICANT PENDING CHEMICAL ACTION. (NEXT 24 HOURS)
7. CORPS CHEMICAL OFFICERS COMMENTS:
8. CONSOLIDATED NBC UNITS (BDE, BN, CO, FOX/ SQD LEVEL).

<u>UNIT</u>	<u>CURRENT LOCATION</u>	<u>PROPOSED NEW LOCATIONS</u>	<u>REMARKS (LOSSES/ETC.)</u>



CHEMICAL



NBC CLEAR LANE REPORT

LINE ALPHA: (NBC STRIKE SERIAL NUMBER)

LINE DELTA: (DTG OF ATTACK)

LINE HOTEL: (TYPE OF NBC ATTACK)

LINE INDIA: (ROUTES FOR BYPASSING CONTAMINATION)

LINE JULIET: (COORDINATES OF CLEAR LANE ENTRY)

LINE KILO: (COORDINATES OF CLEAR LANE EXIT)

LINE PAPA-BRAVO: (DURATION OF HAZARD IN ATTACK AND HAZARD AREAS)

LINE X-RAY: (AREA OF ACTUAL CONTAMINATION)

LINE ZULU: (OTHER HAZARDS; E.G., MINES, BOOBY TRAPS, ETC.)



G5



D.4

CIVIL MILITARY OPERATIONS



Civil Military Operations Reports



The following is a list of reports used during CMO:

- **DC/COBs** - will be initially reported using the SALUTE Report format to the Sep Bde S5/ Division G5. The S5/G5s will use the DC Reporting and Tracking format to evaluate, monitor and report the information to Corps G5. These reports are submitted to Corps as soon as the contact/observation has been evaluated by the S5/G5 and an action taken.
- **Initial Assessment** – Used by CA Teams to report their preliminary findings/current status of population centers. This is a situational report submitted as needed.
- **Civil- Military Periodic Report** – will be submitted by the G5/S5 on a 12 hour cycle in order to update the Corps G5. The III Corps G5 will normally consolidate and forward the information on a 24 hour basis to higher.
- Instructions and the Report formats are available on the III Corps TACLAN in the G5 folder and in the G5 battlebook.

DC REPORTING AND TRACKING

MSC TRACKING# _____ III CORPS TRACKING# _____

S-TOTAL# _____

ADULT MALES: _____

MALE CHILDREN: _____

ADULT FEMALES: _____

FEMALE CHILDREN: _____

A- _____

L- _____

U- _____

T- _____

E- _____

MSC G5 DTG/RESPONSE: _____

UPDATE1:DTG/INFORMATION: _____

UPDATE2: DTG/INFORMATION: _____

UPDATE3: DTG/INFORMATION: _____

NGO/LOCAL AUTH CONTACTED: _____

FINAL DISPOSITION: _____

CIVIL-MILITARY INITIAL ASSESSMENT

CA TM/UNIT _____
LOCATION _____
VILLAGE/TOWN NAME: _____
DTG: _____

SUBJECT: CIVIL-MILITARY INITIAL ASSESSMENT

1. POPULATION:

- a. ESTIMATED POPULATION: _____
- b. POPULATION DISTRIBUTION: % MALE _____ % FEMALE _____
%CHILDREN _____ %ADULTS _____ % ELDERLY _____
- c. GENERAL HEALTH: _____
- d. ESTIMATED # OF CIVILIAN CASUALTIES: _____
- e. DISEASE OR OTHER HEALTH CONCERNS: _____
- f. ATTITUDE OF POPULATION TOWARD US MILITARY: _____
- g. KEY PEOPLE(NAME/POSITION): _____
- h. LANGUAGES SPOKEN: _____

2. ORGANIZATIONS IN AREA:

- a. IO/NGOs: _____
- b. INDICATIONS OF UNCONVENTIONAL WARFARE(UW): _____
- c. MEDIA: _____

3. STATUS OF BASIC NEEDS:

- a. FOOD: _____
- b. WATER: _____
- c. SHELTER: _____
- d. UTILITIES: _____

4. LOCATIONS/STATUS OF KEY RESOURCES (FOR MILITARY OR CIVILIAN USE):

- a. LARGE BUILDINGS: _____
- b. FOOD RESOURCES: _____
- c. WATER RESOURCES: _____
- d. MEDICAL FACILITIES/SUPPLIES: _____
- e. TRANSPORTATION EQUIPMENT: _____
- f. PETROLEUM/OIL: _____
- g. MEDIA FACILITIES: _____
- h. OTHER: _____

5. ADDITIONAL COMMENTS: _____

RELEASING OFFICER

Authentication:

Annexes:

Distribution:

CIVIL-MILITARY PERIODIC REPORT

CA TM/S5/G5 CELL _____

LOCATION _____

DTG: _____

SUBJECT: CIVIL-MILITARY PERIODIC REPORT

PERIOD COVERED: _____

REFERENCES: _____

1. PREVIOUS 12 HOURS:

a. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT CA EVENT: _____

b. Repeat Paragraph 1.a. as needed.

2. NEXT 72 HOURS:

a. PLANNED OR ANTICIPATED CA EVENT: _____

b. Repeat Paragraph 2.a. as needed.

3. ADDITIONAL COMMENTS: _____

RELEASING OFFICER

Authentication:

Annexes:

Distribution:



PAO



D.5

PUBLIC AFFAIRS



PUBLIC AFFAIRS



Daily SITREP

DTG: 230600AUG02

LINE 1: *(Unit)* 1CD

LINE 2: *(# of NMRs in MSC AO)* 2

LINE 2A: *(Name of NMR)* Ima Stud

LINE 2B: *(Media Affiliation)* AP-Print

LINE 2C: *(Location)* Vic DMAIN PV123456

LINE 2A: Lou Rawls

LINE 2B: CNN - TV

LINE 2C: Vic 2-8 Cav CP PV234567

(NOTE: Repeat lines 2A thru 2C for all changes since last report.)

LINE 3: *(Key coverage/main media queries/interest)*

LINE 3A: AP requested interview with CG on alleged fratricide in 2-8 Cav.

LINE 3B: CNN interviewed 2-8 Cav BN Cdr on alleged fratricide.

LINE 4: *(Future Media coverage/events)*

LINE 4A: Press Conference at DMAIN, 241000AUG02

LINE 5: *(Key Talking Points)*

LINE 5A: Fratricide -Concern for families of injured/killed. Under Investigation.

**See PA Internal TACSOP for further details on completion and submission of this report.*



PUBLIC AFFAIRS



Media Contact Report

DTG: 241500AUG02

LINE 1: *(Unit)* 4ID

LINE 2: *(# of any Unescorted, Noncredentialed or Unregistered NMRs in AO)* 3

LINE 3: *(Name of NMRs & Media Affiliation)*
Jesse Ventura - AP-Print Journalist
Jimi Hendrix - AP-Print Photographer
Stevie Nix - Fox News - TV Videographer

LINE 4: *(Location)* Vic 1-41IN CP, PV987654

LINE 5: *(DTG of Contact with NMR)* 240730AUG02

LINE 6: *(Reason for Detainment)* NMRs Unescorted, Unregistered, and Noncredentialed

LINE 7: *(NMR activity)* Attempting to interview soldiers and film MOUT clearing operations in the town of Farlowville.

LINE 8: *(Remarks)* NMR stated they were in the town before US Forces arrived and did not know they needed to be escorted and accredited. NMR were cooperative, and were detained until a unit escort was available to transport them to the Div PAO - approximately 4 hours. NMR were provide MREs and water.

** See PA Internal TACSOP for further details on completion and submission of this report.*